

CEF WAR DIARIES 1914 -1919

42ND CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION (ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA)

Transcribed and proofread by Michael Thierens

CEFStudies@EeMike.nl

© Michael Thierens 2012.

Introduction

This War Diary has been transcribed in order that military and family historians and future generations can study the history of the regiment. To preserve the historical significance of these documents, typographical errors in the original documents have been maintained. Square brackets [] surround information using *italics* added by the transcriber where it was felt that clarification was required, or where names and/or service numbers were misspelled. Just *italics* show where written text was inserted in typed entries. Question marks ? were used where the characters/words could not be discerned. Where possible, the formats of the appendices have been kept as close to the original as possible.

Many abbreviations are used in the War Diaries. Quite a few have been typed out in full between brackets and using *italics*. Not all though. The reader can look up any abbreviation used in this transcription at the CEF Study Group [Acronyms & Abbreviations](#).

The original documents were downloaded from the web site of the [Library and Archives Canada](#).

Michael Thierens

1915

Tue. June 1 to Fri. Oct 1, 1915

After four months' training in England final appointments of officers, prior to proceeding Overseas, were made as follows:-

Headquarters

Lieut.Col.Geo.S.Cantlie	Officer Commanding.
Major B. McLennan	Second in Command.
Capt. S.C.Norsworthy	Adjutant
Hon.Major R.Bruce Taylor	Chaplain
Hon.Capt.A.A. Mackay	Medical Officer
Hon.Capt.H.B.MacDougall	Paymaster
Hon.Capt.J.K.Beveridge	Quartermaster
Lieut.D.A.Bethune	Transport Officer

A Company:

Major H.C.Walkem
Capt. K.G.Strachan
Lieut.W.A.Grafftey
Lieut.J.A.Mathewson
Lieut.M.F.Willocks
Lieut. L. de K.Stephens.

B Company

Capt.H.Molson
Capt.L.H.Curry
Lieut.L.H.R.[R.L.H.] Ewing
Lieut.L.G.Black
Lieut.J.McNaughton
Lieut.S.M.Bosworth

C Company:

Major S.B.Coristine
Capt.H.Mathewson
Lieut.E.D.Morse
Lieut.E.B.Finley
Lieut.E.V.Evans
Lieut.P.H.Richardson

D Company:

Capt.G.H.Blackader
Capt.G.L.MacGillivray
Lieut.C.Blair Wilson
Lieut.A.J. de Lothiniere
Lieut.S.J.Mathewson
Lieut.H.G.Birks.

S.C.Norsworthy
Capt & Adj

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Fri. Oct 1, 1915 to Mon. Nov 1, 1915
OCTOBER 1915:

The Battalion crossed to France on October 9th; went into billets at FLETRE October 11th; was inspected by General Alderson October 15th; was moved across Belgium Frontier at ALDERSHOT huts October 15th. Here we were attached for training purposes for eight days to the 3rd Brigade, 1st Canadian Division and began sending two platoons daily into the trenches in company with seasoned troops. A working party of 200 men was also supplied daily for work on subsidiary line. On the night of October 18th the Battalion had its first casualty. On the following night when Captain L. H. Curry, second in command of B Company, as well as Captain Hutton Crowdy of the 13th Canadian Battalion and an officer of the 10th Battalion were killed by a shell from a trench mortar while on a visit of inspection to trench 134. Captains Crowdy and Curry were buried with military honours in ARMENTIERES cemetery [cemetery] on the 21st October.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Mon. Nov 1, 1915 to Tue. Nov 30, 1915
NOVEMBER 1915:

On 2nd November the Battalion moved into billets, huts and tents along the NEUVE EGLISE ROMARIN Road, the move being made in a downpour of rain. A good deal of wet weather was encountered during the first ten days there and working parties of which we continued supplying a daily quota of 580 men were largely employed, in repairing, draining and digging out trenches which had become flooded, or caved in, the men frequently working in water and mud over their knees.

The condition of the trenches also made it necessary for some parties to march overland to the work assigned to them and they were shelled on several occasions but without casualties. We were actually lucky when NEUVE EGLISE was shelled on November 14th, 15th, 16th, and 17th. On the 15th one 5.9 howitzer shell landed in a field about fifty feet in front of Battalion Headquarters and B Company billets giving us a shaking up.

All working parties especially those at night were exposed to considerable danger from stray bullets and the fire of setmachine guns and other batteries. In this way we lost Pte G. Johnston killed November 12th, Pte. R.S. Marshall killed November 19th and Pte Geo.Cox killed November 21st as well as five others who were admitted to hospital with wounds during this period.

On 22nd November C and D Coys. moved to a location just west of DRANOUTRE: Headquarters details, Machine Gun Section, Transport and A & B Coys following on 24th November, the entire Battalion going under canvas.

During the three weeks we were stationed on the NEUVE EGLISE-ROMERAN Road we were reinforced by two drafts from England – in all 25 other ranks – most of whom were our own men whom we had left behind in quarantine or in hospital. The following changes had taken place among the officers:

Lieut. Grafftey receiving his promotion to Captain and was appointed 2nd in command of B Company. He was succeeded in command of No. 1 platoon by Lieut.M.F.Wilcocks and Lieut.L.G Black returned to A Company.

Lieut.J.C.Stewart arrived from England on 10th November and on 20th November took command of No. 16 Platoon.

On 21st November we regretfully said good-bye to our Chaplain, Major R.Bruce Taylor?.D., whose term of enlistment - six months – limited by the leave granted by his congregation had expired. He was succeeded by Major G.W.Wood who reported to us from the 40th Bn. same day.

An important change in the appearance of the Battalion was made at this time by the adoption of the Balmoral cap for fatigue dress.

In our new location we were required to supply only 300 men daily for engineers' working parties half of whom reported to the 3rd Field Company and half to Lieut.Sweeny of the Field Troop, C.E. Canadian Corps, both parties being for work on 2nd line trenches. This forbearance on the part of the authorities was of great assistance giving us a chance to improve our camp and make ourselves comfortable.

At this time we also received issues of a second blanket, a pair of woollen mittens, a pair of trews and a fur coat for each man and 35 stoves for the Battalion. Kilts, hose tops and sporrans were called in and sent to Paris to be renovated and stored until Spring. Similar action was taken by the 3rd Canadian (Highland) Brigade.

Our four weeks stay in DRANOUTRE was entirely free from casualties excepting the accidental wounding of Piper McDonald during an inspection of arms.

In spite of continued wet weather the men's health improved noticeably. The horses suffered to some extent from having to stand in the open. One unpleasant feature was the mud which became steadily worse each day.

Training of regular machine gun section and reserve section detailed at ALDERSHOT was continued. Mr.Birks was appointed Grenade Officer on 25th November. After some time spent over materials and pits he was able to take a class of forty for one week's course in bombing and was just beginning with a second class when the formation of a Corps Troops Grenade School was announced in which Mr.Birks and 45 O.R. were incorporated as our Permanent Grenade Section.

NOVEMBER 1915 (Cont).

Apart from this the only training possible was the practice of small squads in the use of gas helmets and in rapid loading with dummies, there being no rifle pits in the district.

Sergeant W.W. de Rossiter was promoted to a Lieutenancy and appointed to command No. 6 platoon on 26th November 1915.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Wed., Dec 1 to Fri., Dec 31, 1915

DECEMBER 1915:

Two events during December which caused us a flutter of excitement but did not materialize into anything more, were:

First: The announcement on December 14th that the R.C.R., P.P.C.L.I., 49th Battalion and ourselves, then termed the Corps Troops Infantry Brigade, would hold KEMMEL DEFENCES in case of an expected attack from the Germans. This honour was transferred too the two C.M.R. Brigades by an order received two days later.

The second was the attack itself, delivered with gas on the YPRES front on Sunday morning, 19th December. It cost us half a day's liberty while we stood by, confined to camp. News was then brought that the wind had changed opportunely and the Germans had not left their trenches, and that most of the artillery fire, which sounded so alarming had been our own guns.

On 12th December General Mercer's appointment to Command the Corps Troops had been announced and on 20th December we received official news of the formation of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade composed of the – Royal Canadian Regiment, P.P.C.L.I., 49th Battalion and 42nd Battalion, the Brigade being commanded by Lieut.Col.A.C. Macdonnell, D.S.O. formerly commander of Lord Strathconas Horse.

On 21st December the Battalion moved back across the French Frontier into billets a mile and a half north east of FLETRE, the R.C.R., and 49th having moved on the two days preceding, to the same neighbourhood. The P.P.C.L.I. on 19th December were moved up to do digging for 2nd Divn.

The following drafts from England arrived at DRANOUTRE on 29th November, 31 men comprising four of the 42nd whom we had left behind in hospital, 1 from 17th Bn and 26 from 37th Bn. On 13th December a further draft of six men from the 37th Battalion.

There was, however, a more than corresponding reduction owing to Headquarters requiring men for special duties on which we had 51 men at the time of our leaving DRANOUTRE, viz:

Carpenters at Bailleul	8
Military Police at Bailleul	6
Loading Party with supply column	12
Guides to Kemmel Defences	7
Superintending civilian labour	3
Telegraphists	4
Headquarters stenographer	1
Divisional drying room	1

As well as Mr. Birks and 45 O.R. at Grenade School.

A course of training with the object of "smartening up" was begun 22nd December. It consisted of arm, squad, platoon and company drill each morning with an afternoon route march. This was varied by practice with gas helmets and rapid fire practice at rifle pits discovered just north of our billeting area.

On 29th December 500 men of the Battalion marched to La Lavrette where a very successful and instructive gas demonstration was held.

Shortly after Christmas the formation of the 3rd Canadian Division was announced and a few days later the formation of the 8th Can.Inf.Brigade under Brigadier General V.A.S. Williams. It was announced that this Brigade would be formed by reconstructing the 1st and 2nd C.M.R.Brigades. On 30th December Captains MacGillivray and Grafftey with four N.C.O's proceeded to the 5th and 6th C.M.R.Regiments to assist them with Infantry training, and at the

same time four officers and twelve N.C.O's from the 1st C.M.R. Brigade were attached to us for instruction but remained one week only. Captain Grafftey returned to duty with the Battalion on 5th January.

Lieuts. P.N.McDougall and A.Routledge joined us on Jany. 4th and 5th respectively, having been transferred from 13th Canadian Battalion.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

1916

Sat., Jan 1 to Mon., Jan, 31, 1916

JANUARY 1916:

L/Sgt Pritchard and four men, who had been selected from a total of 47 examined, were sent back to the Base as Munition Workers on 7th Jany.

The 42nd Bn. moved on 7th January from billets near METEREN into Divisional Reserve relieving the 1st Canadian Battalion at DRANOUTRE, this being an incident of the relief of the 1st Can.Infantry Brigade by the 7th Can. Infantry Brigade for three weeks.

On 8th Jany we took over from the 3rd Can.Bn. front line trenches D-3 and E-4 inclusive. (Map location N.36.a.0.8 to N.36.c.5.6. Belgium & part of France 2nd Edition, B Series Sheet 28 S.W.). During this and two subsequent tours in these trenches we had the 6th Can. Infantry Brigade on our left and the Royal Can. Regt. on our right.

The weather throughout our four days tour was fine and mild and we had practically no sickness. The enemy's attitude was quiet and at night work could be heard proceeding in his trenches. Sniping was active, however.

No minor operations were undertaken but enemy working parties were continually fired on and dispersed.

An unfortunate experience with rifle grenades on 11th January can best be described by quoting our official report to Brigade Headquarters:

"Shortly before eight o'clock this morning, the enemy opened rifle grenade fire of twelve or fifteen rifle rounds on trenches 14-A and 15-A. The officer in charge of the latter asked O.C. Mortar Battery to reply and 8 rounds were fired with apparent effect a breach being noticed in front line German trench

"After an interval of about twenty five minutes rifle grenade fire was resumed on our right sector. One fell outside dugout in the right of D-4 where the parapet is revetted with corrugated iron which threw the charge into the dugout and the 6 men sleeping there were all wounded. The other men were wounded at various points along D-4 including some of the men carrying out the wounded at the top of communication trench D-4. In all, 2 men were killed and nineteen wounded, four of the latter seriously. Owing to the congestion of telephone line there was some delay in getting artillery retaliation. The battery responded promptly as soon as communication was obtained and only 2 or 3 rifle grenades were fired after the battery opened. Our rifle grenades fired about 70 rounds. The enemy's fire activity extended over a period of about 35" including the lapse of 25 minutes referred to."

JANUARY 1916 (Cont).

On the night of 12th January the Battalion moved out of the trenches going into Brigade Reserve. During our four days in Brigade Reserve 20 men received a two days course in bombing; five men were detailed for a two weeks course in machine guns.

A beginning was made at this time in the organization of a Battalion Scout Coy under Lieut.M.P.Willcocks for patrol and other special duties. On the 16th January we relieved the P.P.C.L.I.

Our second tour was even quieter than the first – casualties four men slightly wounded.

On 20th January the Battalion went into Divisional reserve for four days devoted principally to baths and bombing. An issue of 150 steel helmets was received and distributed during this period.

Lieut. P.H.McDougall was appointed on 12th January to command the newly formed Brigade Wiring Section.

On 24th January we again took over from the P.P.C.L.I. beginning our last tour in this area. The days passed quietly until the afternoon of the 27th when a lively strafe of the enemy trenches on our front with rifle grenades and trench mortars was carried out by ourselves and the R.C.R. on our right, the hour chosen being one in which a bombardment of some houses in their rear was in progress by our artillery.

The following morning the enemy retaliated in lively fashion with rifle grenades resulting in six casualties of which three were trifling. The work of Stretcher Bearer Cassidey on this occasion is described by Captain Molson in the following report;-

“On the morning of the 29th instant when my company was being heavily shelled by rifle grenades, Stretcher Bearer Cassidy, No. 418,665 behaved with great gallantry and promptness under fire. He dressed wounds under heavy fire after being hit himself and I would like to see his behaviour recognized in some form or other. I cannot commend him too highly.

During the last tour we received official advice of the promotion of Lieut. Willcocks and Lieut. Morse to be Captains, their promotions dated December 9th and 10th respectively.

On the 29th January we came out of the trenches and after one night in Brigade Reserve moved back across the French Frontier into very comfortable billets west of WESTOUTRE.

The efforts of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade during three weeks in 1st Brigade area earned the following letter from Major General Currie, C.B., Commanding 1st Canadian Division:

“It gives me a great deal of pleasure to inform you that during the stay of the 7th Infantry Brigade in the 1st Brigade area, they behaved at all times most gallantly. Besides, they did a great deal of very necessary and useful work.

“At the time they took over the line, the trenches, owing to the very bad weather, were not in the best of shape but your fellows have made a great difference. I went over the line last Saturday morning and was delighted with what I saw had been done and so expressed myself to Brigadier General MacDonell. [*Macdonell*] I asked him to convey my thanks to all ranks of his Brigade: I know he will, but I want you to know as well how I have appreciated them. They were active in their patrolling, did a lot of wiring, greatly improved the front trenches, worked hard on supporting points and were aggressive always. While I deeply regret their casualties I do not think they were excessive.

“Brigadier General Hughes has written me in warm terms of praise of what has been accomplished by MacDonell’s [*Macdonell’s*] Brigade.”

7th Brigade total casualties during the three weeks were 13 O.R. killed, 2 Officers 69 O.R. wounded, of these 42nd Battalion total casualties were 3 O.R. killed (Ptes Matthews, E., Turner, G. and Ward, G.) 39 O.R. wounded of whom 3 O.R. died of wounds (Ptes Wells, W.B., Belhumeur, J., McKillop. A.).

Geo.S. Cantlie

.....Lieut. Col.

Commanding 42nd Battn.

Canadian Expeditionary Force

Tue., Feb 1 to Tue., Feb 29, 1916

FEBRUARY 1916:

During nine days spent in rest billets West of WESTOUTRE, squad, platoon and arm drill and bomb throwing were carried on. Major McLennan Major Coristine and Captain Molson attended a three days grenade course near METEREN and Lieut. Stewart and three O.R. a course of one week at TERDEGHEM also in grenade work. Lieut. Black and 9 O.R. received a short course on the Lewis gun and 4 O.R. a course on anti-gas measures.

On 8th February we relieved the 27th Canadian Battalion going into Divisional reserve at LOCRE our Brigade being temporarily under the administration of 2nd Canadian Division.

On 11th February we went into front line taking over trenches E-1 to F-5 inclusive, (Map location N.29.b.8.7. to N.16?.?.8, Belgium and part of France, 2nd Edition, B series, Sheet 28 S.W.). the 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade being on our right and the 49th Can.Bn. on our left.

The only incident of interest during our four days tour was described in 2nd Canadian Division Intelligence Summary, as follows:

“At 5.10 a.m. 15th February just as snow was starting to fall a German patrol approached E-1 from the right front. Rapid fire was atonce opened and flares sent up. A few men, probably three, were seen running. At the moment we opened fire part of the patrol which was over on the left of E-1 threw a bomb into the trench slightly wounding No. 418,235 Pte T.Halley. Fire was opened here atonce and bombs thrown by the sentries. These men also retired. The Officers and N.C.Os were on duty at the time but it was too dark to see during the snow that it is impossible to get any reliable information as to numbers. We observed two cylindrical stick bombs which had been short thrown just outside our parapet. These bombs were brought in the next evening.”

On 14th February we received our first weekly allotment of leave (8 days) for 3 Officers and 21 O.R.

On 15th February we were relieved by the Royal Canadian Regt. and went into Brigade at KEMMEL SHELTERS. While there 4 N.C.O's and 20 men received a 2 day course in bombing, and working parties of 140 men daily and 180 nightly were supplied the engineers.

Lieut. Richardson attended Trench Mortar course at BERTHEN February 15th to 17th and Lieut. Finley a one day's course on the Stokes gun.

FEBRUARY (Cont),

During two months under command of Brigadier General MacDonell [*Macdonell*] he had made himself respected for his tireless activity and much beloved for his interest in all of us. It can be imagined with what regret we received the news on February 17th that he had been twice wounded that morning by German snipers.

His cousin, Colonel A.A. MacDonell [*Macdonell*], Royal Canadian Regt. as the senior of the Four Battalion Commanders took over the duties of the Brigadier, Major Eaton assuming command of the R.C.R. temporarily.

On the 19th instant we again went into front line E 1 to F 5 for what proved actually a very uneventful tour although “Gas alerts” were frequent, and on two occasions we “stood to” in readiness for a German attack which did not materialize. Two Germans who exposed themselves while working were accounted for by our sentries in E 1. A fall of snow during this tour gave the landscape a homelike appearance.

Our casualties for the four days were one O.R. killed and 6 O.R. wounded of whom two remained at duty.

On the 23rd instant we moved into Divisional reserve. On the 24th instant we received the unwelcome news that leave had been stopped.

On 28th February we again took over from the Royal Canadian Regt. the E and F trenches for a four days' tour during which there were two incidents of interest. The first was a bombing attack by the enemy on E 1 at 3.10 a.m. 29th February. The enemy party we afterwards learned numbered twenty. They were driven off with the loss of one prisoner and two killed. The prisoner belonged to the 233rd Pioneer Company and the two dead men to the 157th Regiment. There [their] uniforms and effects including two letters were sent to Brigade Headquarters, and they were buried in LINDENHOEK cemetery. Our loss at the moment was NIL but about an hour later Pte McLeod of D Coy. while on listening post was killed by a bomb thrown by a man who we assume was one of the bombing party who became separated and lay in hiding after they fled. Lieut. J.C. Stewart was Officer on duty in E 1 when the attack was made. Lieut. A. Blair Wilson was Commander of Patrol which went out later to recover body of dead German.

FEBRUARY (Cont).

In connection with operation north of YPRES-COMINES CANAL which resulted in the recapture on March 2nd of the International Trench by British Troops as well as the capture of two hundred yards of German trench, the artillery in our rear participated in a bombardment on the afternoon of March 1st and in the early morning of March 2nd. The enemy's reply was noticeably feeble so far as our immediate front was concerned.

Casualties for tour – one O.R. killed and one O.R. wounded.

Geo.S. Cantlie
Lieut. Col.
 Commanding 42nd Battn.
 Canadian Expeditionary Force

Wed., Mar 1 to Fri., Mar 31, 1916

42nd Battalion C.E.F. (5th Royal Highlanders of Canada)

MARCH 1916,

On the night of March 3rd while we were moving into Brigade Reserve the Transport suffered their first casualty – one man and one horse being wounded by shrapnel.

Our losses on working parties during five days in Brigade Reserve, March 3rd to March 8th, were greater than during the previous tour of four days in front line trenches, being one man killed and another seriously wounded.

On the afternoon of March 7th five shells dropped uncomfortably near Kemmel Shelters, but did no damage.

On the night of March 8th we moved from Kemmel Shelters into Divisional Reserve at Locre, and enemy shell fire along the DRANOUTRE-LOCRE Road again cost us two casualties.

On March 9th the Battalion moved from LOCRE into rest billets north East of BERTHEN, and had the good fortune to be left there during ten days of almost perfect weather.

On March 14th General F.O.W. Loomis, D.S.O., arrived from England and assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Two drafts reached us during this period of 58 and 47 men respectively, bringing us up to strength. One drawn from the 36th and 39th Reserve Battalions made a particular favourable impression by the smart, intelligent appearance of the men.

On March 16th word reached us of the promotion to a Lieutenancy of Company Sergeant Major W.H.Thompson, dated March 4th. He was given the appointment of Works Officer.

On March 18th the Battalion paraded for inspection by Lieut. General Sir Edwin Alderson, K.C.B., Commanding the Canadian Corps. He addressed us briefly telling us that the Corps were being sent north to the YPRES Salient where we would meet more strenuous fighting and more uncomfortable conditions than we had been accustomed to, but that he felt confident the Battalion would be ready to meet them.

MARCH 1916 (Cont),

On Monday, March 20th, the Battalion moved to POPERINGHE being billeted in a convent on the Rue de Boeschepe.

On the night of March 21st we were taken by train to a point near YPRES where we de-trained and marched to front line relieving the 8th Buffs in trenches A.4. and A.10 inclusive.

The trenches were in good condition except for shortage of dugout accommodation, especially in the left sector of our front line (B Company) and at Border dugouts where our Reserve Company (C Company) was stationed.

The matter of most urgent importance appeared to be to find out the nature and object of a new German trench which was seen to be in course of construction opposite our front and considerably nearer our lines than their old front line. This was essayed on three successive nights by a patrol consisting of Lieut. Ewing, Lieut. Routledge, Sergt Price and Sergt. Jones with covering party of four. The position of the trench was such that it could only be approached under the most favourable conditions of light, as darkness afforded the only cover from view. On the night of March 24th-25th, however, our patrol succeeded in getting across unseen and after watching the trench for ten minutes, Sergeant Jones entered it at about 10.30 p.m. He remained in the trench a few minutes and made a short reconnaissance to the right and left for about five yards each way. Voices could be heard on the left some 50 yards away, and on the right about thirty yards away. On leaving, Sergt. Jones found a steel loophole plate set in the parapet which he pulled out and brought away. He described the German trench as follows:

“The new trench of the enemy is about 3 ft deep with 1½ ft of earth thrown up to the front and rear. It is 2 ft wide at the bottom and 3 ft wide at the top. It is not revetted in any way. It has no bath mats. It is not full of water, but soggy. It is of recent construction. It has been continued on to the right of the hedge and runs in rear thereof. thereof. It has no dugouts. It has no regular sentries. It is not garrisoned. [*garrisoned*] It is connected with the wood behind by a shallow and narrow zig-zag across section trench. It is sufficiently far advanced to admit of being worked on in the day time. It has no M.G. emplacement. No sap-head is under construction. No gas cylinders are installed. No sandbag work was noted.”

The party returned safely at 10.55 p.m. No enemy patrols were seen.

Up to March 25th the day of our tour we had had only eight casualties. During that morning, however, the neighbourhood of Border dugouts was heavily shelled and four dugouts were hit. Our Reserve Company “C” lost five men killed and ten wounded and a working party from “D” Company which was passing at the time had seven men wounded.

Noon brought a lull but at 3.15 p.m. the enemy started shelling our front line trenches A.7 to A.10 with 5.9 Howitzer, 4.2 Howitzer, shrapnel and 15 pounders H.E.

The shelling reached its maximum intensity at 3.30 p.m. and continued very heavy until 4.15 p.m. where/ fire began to subside and at 4.45 p.m. had quieted down.

Our parapet was broken in nine or ten places and parapets damaged considerably throughout the trench.

Our wire was slightly out along our left company frontage, i.e. A.7 to A.10 with the exception of one complete gap fifteen feet wide made in front of company Headquarters in trench A.9.

The afternoon added seven men killed and seventeen wounded to our list of casualties.

As soon as the wounded had been got out, the work of clearing the trench was begun and pushed vigorously until about 10.30 p.m. when our relief by the R.C.R. commenced. It was completed at 12.30 a.m. and we then began a long tiresome march back to Camp F on the REN-~~N~~INGHELST-VLAMERTHINGE Road. The last company did not arrive there until 5 a.m. and reveille next day at even so late an hour as 10.30 met little enthusiasm.

The following officers were attached to us for duty and instruction for a period of one month from 23.3.16.-

MARCH (Cont):

Lieut.J.P.Melrose	B Company
Lieut.G.R.M.McLean	C „
Lieut.R.J.Selbie	D „

Captain A. Alexander was attached to the Battalion as Chaplain 29.3.16, vice Major Wood evacuated, sick.

Lieut.C.B.Topp arrived from Shorncliffe and was taken on strength 29.3.16, and posted to A Company.

An inspection of the 42nd Battalion was held on March 31st by Brigadier General F.O.W.Loomis, D.S.O., G.O.C. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Geo.S. Cantlie

.....Lieut. Col.

Commanding 42nd Battalion C.E.F.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Sat., Apr 01 to Sun., Apr 30, 1916

42nd Battalion C.E.F. (5th Royal Highlanders of Canada) WAR DIARY, APRIL 1916.

During our stay in Camp F the usual routine was followed – squad, platoon and company drill 9 to 11.30 a.m. and company route marches 1.30 p.m. to 3.00 p.m.

Grenade throwing competitions between teams of five men per platoon were held on April 1st. Men from Battalion Permanent Grenade Platoon were not eligible. The semi-final and finals were thrown on April 3rd, No. 5 platoon winning the finals.

On April 4th the Battalion, with the exception of B Company moved to ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS. On the march through YPRES we were subjected to some shelling and suffered four casualties slightly wounded.

We left ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS on night of April 5th for the front line, relieving the 5th C.M.R. B Company moving up to ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS from Camp F. C and D Companies went in to front line trenches GOUROCK ROAD to APPENDIX (Map location J.19.a.3.8. to J.13.c.2.8, sheet 28) A Company in supports and B Company in reserve at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS. The 49th Canadian Battalion were on our left and the 43rd Canadian Battalion on our right.

A despatch from the Battalion on our left that the enemy were rushing bombing posts in the gap, received about 7 a.m. 6th April caused some little excitement, but it proved to be an isolated operation of a small raiding party.

APRIL (Cont).

On night of April 9th we had an inter-company relief A and B Companies occupying the front line trenches, C Company in Support and D Company in reserve at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS.

On night of 12th-13th D Company moved to Belgian Chateau and on the following night the balance of the Battalion moved to the BELGIAN CHATEAU being relieved by the Royal Canadian Regiment. A Coy. remained at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS.

During the first two or three days of the tour, enemy's snipers were particularly aggressive, but during the remainder of the tour, there was a marked decrease in their activity. With the exception of one day, when our front line and support trenches were heavily shelled, enemy's artillery on our area was slight.

During the tour we had the following casualties – 4 O.R. killed, 19 O.R. wounded, one of whom died of wounds.

Captain G. L. MacGillivray left on April 15th for England, having obtained an appointment as Musketry Instructor on the staff of the 10th Canadian Reserve Infantry Brigade.

A draft consisting of twenty one men reported to us on 7th April.

The eight days at the BELGIAN CHATEAU were most depressing. The neighbourhood was shelled intermittently and the weather was continuously bad. We were called upon to furnish about three hundred men nightly for working parties which were marched long distances and worked for short periods. On the night of 21st April we were relieved by 58th Canadian Battalion both at BELGIAN CHATEAU and at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS, and the entire Battalion went to Camp B, about two miles S.E. of POPERINGHE. The night was wet and disagreeable but

APRIL Cont).

we had the good luck that no part of our route was shelled during the march. Our casualties during the eight days were one killed and nine wounded.

On 19th April Lieut. E. R. Pease was appointed Second in Command of D Company.

Captain M. F. Willcocks was struck off our strength on 23.4.16 on being attached to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.

Lieuts. J.P.Melrose and C.R.M.McLean ceased to be attached to the Battalion for duty and instructions on 24.4.16 on their returning to England.

Nearly a year had elapsed since the Battalion had been inoculated just before leaving Montreal. During our stay at Camp B a beginning was made at again inoculating the Battalion against typhoid and para-typhoid.

We furnished daily working parties of 39 men. We also supplied one night party of 300 men and another night party of 150 men.

Lieut. Col. D. D. Cameron, Commanding 17th Canadian Reserve Battalion, was attached to us for one month beginning 27th April 1916.

Lieut. R. J. Selbie ceased to be attached to the Battalion for instruction on 28th April on returning to England.

The Battalion was inspected by the Commander-in-Chief, Sir Douglas Haig on 28th April 1916.

Bartlett McLennan
.....Lieut. Col. Major
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Mon., May 1 to Wed., May 31, 1916 **MAY, 1916.**

On 29th April we relieved the 5th C.M.R. in front line trenches 52 to 57 (Map location I.30.b.1.4. to I.24.d.8.9.) the 49th Battalion being on our left and a Battalion of the 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right.

On two occasions our front was shelled but few shells fell in our trenches and these caused no casualties. On the whole the tour was particularly fortunate. We "STOOD TO" on two occasions -once when the enemy attacked with gas on the British Front near KEMMEL and again when, after lively artillery fire, they attacked with a small raiding party on the two Battalion frontages to the left of us.

After two preliminary excursions a patrol consisting of Lieut. A.Routledge, Sergt.price, Sergt.Jones and Ptes. Bellers, Pitt and Blough went out at 10 p.m. on the evening of May 6th-7th and returned at 1.30 a.m. after entering German advanced trench. They brought back a German sniper's plate and samples of German wire.

During the tour our casualties were – 2 killed, 11 wounded, two of them died later.

The fine weather enabled us to make important progress in betterments in trenches. About 400 yards of new wire were erected, a new beehive dugout for signallers at Battalion Headquarters was completed, and substantial improvements made in front parapet, and at both ends of St.peter Street communication trench.

MAY,1916 (Cont).

On May 7th we were relieved by the R.C.R. and moved in to Brigade Reserve at Camp E on the VLAMERTINGHE-RENINGHELST ROAD.

On May 8th we received a draft of 58 men – 8 of whom were our own men returning from hospital. The majority of the new men came from the 55th Battalion recruited in New Brunswick.

On May 6th Brigadier General A.C.Macdonell,C.M.G., D.S.O., assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, having recovered from his wounds received about three months earlier.

The amount of training in Camp E was limited by working parties and bad weather.

On May 9th, Lieut.K.Turnbull, 73rd Canadian Battalion was attached to us for one month's training.

The reissue of our kilts which had been stored over the winter, and a new issue of Bal-morals about this time did much to improve the appearance of the Battalion.

On 12th May, Captain E.D.Morse proceeded on duty with 177th Tunneling Company, and on the 15th May Lieut.S.M.Bosworth was attached to Headquarters 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade for training.

MAY 1916. (Cont).

On 15th May on our Brigade going into Corps Reserve, the 42nd Battalion moved about half a mile along the road to Camp D, exchanging places with the 58th Canadian Battalion. Here training was resumed although on two nights we were still called upon for working parties of 250 to 300 men.

Major Walkem, Captain Norsworthy and about fifty others (N.C.Os and men) received a four days grenade course under Captain MacDonald, Brigade Grenade Officer. A class of 20 N.C.Os and men received three days instruction in squad, ~~Company~~ and arm drill under Sergt.

Gibson of the 2nd Battalion Scots Guards and Sergt. Shum was able to obtain the use of a range on which some good practice was done by snipers.

On 22nd May we relieved the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion in HOOGE Sector of the front line, trenches 70/74, the 49th Battalion being on our right and a Battalion of the Oxforbs - 60th British Brigade – on our left.

We were fortunate enough to have good weather a matter of more than ordinary importance in this sector where living conditions in the front line were exceptionally poor. The left company frontage consisted of eight isolated posts, inaccessible by daylight, the intervening space being both open to view and waist deep in water and slime. The right company frontage consisted of a wet trench whose parapet had been badly knocked about in places by shell fire, with a long, dilapidated exposed communication trench leading to it; There were practically no dugouts in either area and previous heavy fighting on this site had left the ground in a very foul condition. The enemy was not specially active although we were shelled intermittently.

MAY, 1916. (Cont).

The work of L/Cpl Jupe and of Stretcher Bearers Smith and Barrett, all of A Company, in caring for wounded during one such period of shelling was very favourably reported on by their Company Commander. No. 418,034 Pte Ward, H.J. of the Signal Section also did good work in keeping open telephone communication to HOOGE CELLARS. Sergeant Tank reports as follows regarding Pte. Ward:-

: During the eight days he repeatedly left his station and repaired wires in places exposed to enemy sniping. He did his work together with his duties as an operator.”

Our snipers, under Sergeant Shim, also did well.

The tour was devoid of special incident until 30th May when we suffered a serious loss in the death of Sergt.F.J.Price from shell fire. This N.C.O. had been in charge of his company's patrols since the Battalion Scout Company disbanded and had done such good work in this and other directions that he had been recommended for a Commission.

Total casualties for the tour were 3 O.R.killed and 26 wounded.

On 30th May we were relieved by the Royal Canadian Regt. and went in to Brigade Support with our Headquarters, Lewis [Lewis] Gun Section and two companies (A and C) at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS, D Company at BELGIAN CHATEAU, 3 platoons of B Company at YPRES RAMPARTS and the remaining platoon manning defended posts I.H. and I.K.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Thu., Jun 1, 1916 to Fri., Jun 30, 1916

42ND BATTALION. ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA.

JUNE 1916. The action of 2nd June being the first of any importance in which we took part will probably justify our quoting in full Lieut. Col. Cantlie's report regarding it:-

“On the morning of 2nd June the 42nd Canadian Battalion were acting as Brigade Support for the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade frontage comprising HOOGE and NORTH and SANCTUARY WOOD. Battalion was disposed of as follows:-

Hqrs. & 2 companies, (A&C)	-	ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS.
1 Company (D Coy)	-	BELGIAN CHATEAU.
1 „ (3 platoons) (B Coy)	-	YPRES RAMPARTS.
1 platoon „	-	DEFENDED POSTS I.H. & I.K.

“A heavy bombardment by the enemy pf SANCTUARY WOOD frontage and frontage of 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right continued all day.

“At 2 p.m. orders were received to send one company to MAPLE COPSE to reinforce the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade and one company to mann ZILLEBEKE SWITCH. Our remaining two companies were despatched about one hour later to mann the R.Line behind HOOGE and to affect a Junction with the P.P.C.L.I. who were still holding support trenches in NORTH SANCTUARY WOOD Area. In the evening our Headquarters details joined C Company in ZILLEBEKE SWITCH.

“During the night of 2nd June and whole of 3rd June the companies were detached and their experiences will have to be recorded separately.

JUNE 1916.

(Cont).

“A Company, on arrival at MAPLE COPSE, reported to Colonel Baker, 5th C.M.R., who instructed them to hold the North West corner of MAPLE COPSE. The Company lined a trench at this point but shell fire forced them to draw back to ZILLEBEKE communication trench, about fifty yards distant. There they received a message from the P.P.C.L.I. saying they were cut off in SANCTUARY WOOD. Leaving one platoon in ZILLEBEKE Trench Major H.C. Walkem, the O.C. Company moved his company up BORDER LANE connecting with the P.P.C.L.I. in LOVERS LANE, having informed Colonel Baker of his action. They held this point from about 6.30 a.m. until the following morning although subjected to very heavy shell and rifle fire. On the morning of the 3rd instant, Major Walkem took the remainder of his three platoons – reduced to about thirty – back to join his platoon in support in ZILLEBEKE communication trench.

“B Company arrived in R.Line about 3.30 p.m. 2nd June reporting to O.C. P.P.C.L.I. About two hours later D Company arrived under Lieut. Pease, (Captain G.H. Blackader having been wounded by shrapnel on the way up) and strengthened up the R. Line which up to this time was very thinly held. At 10 P.M. a verbal message from Major Gray Commanding the P.P.C.L.I. was received asking for reinforcements. One Sergeant and forty men were despatched from B and D Cpys. [Coys] up to LOVERS LANE. Heavy shelling, at times of very great intensity, continued throughout the night. The account may be continued in the words of O.C. B Company:-

"At about 2 a.m. Colonel Griesbach arrived and advised me that the 49th Battalion assisted by the 52nd and 60th Bns. would make a counter attack, but he had not yet connected with the two latter Battalions.

"At this time small groups of men were observed coming towards us across the Gap who, on arrival turned out to be No. 2 Company P.P.C.L.I. who were evacuating trenches 65 and 66.

JUNE 1916.

(Cont).

"Colonel Griesbach interviewed the officer in charge and in discussing the situation with me asked me to write the Brigadier as per following letter:-

FROM CAPTAIN MOLSON. TO; BRIGADIER GENERAL MACDONELL.

'I have just seen Col. Griesbach and had a conference with him and he wishes me to advise you as follows. The remnants [*remnants*] of No. 2 Coy. P.P.C.L.I. have just come in, about sixty in all, and advise him that they had left their trench and APPENDIX as they were being surrounded, and Germans being on both sides, Col. Griesbach wishes you to know that the situation is different from what he believed from previous information and as the 52nd Battalion have not arrived he cannot commence the counter attack at the moment. The R. Line is being strongly held and he will advise you more fully himself when he finds out the situation on the right flank where we are given to understand the Germans are pushing ahead in MAPLE COPSE. Apparently the front is entirely in the hands of the enemy from the GAP to trenches 52-57 which we are also advised are lost. It is possible that some of No. 1 Company P.P.C.L.I. may be holding out in trenches 62 and 63 (LOOP) but it is extremely difficult.'

"Lieut. Col. Griesbach then left to join Major Gray.

"At about 3.30 a.m. Lieut. Col. Gascoigne arrived at head of POND STREET and R. Line looking for Col. Griesbach. He was followed a little later by Major Weaver 49th Bn. and Col. Hay, 52nd Bn. These officers all endeavoured to get in touch with Col. Griesbach as promptly as possible but there was some delay. Lieut. P. McDougall also tried to locate Col. Griesbach but without success.

"At about 6 a.m. the 60th Bn. proceeded to the right, some having come up Regent Street and others up Pond Street and then along R. Line.

"At 10 a.m. I received a message reading as follows:-

Major Gray: The 49th Bn. is now ready to make a counter

JUNE 1916.

(Cont). attack but as I am unable to find the 52nd and 60th Bns. who were to assist, will ask you the companies of the 42nd on your left to co-operate. Sgd. Col. Griesbach.

Capt. Molson: Will you co-operate in above attack?

(sgd) Major Gray.

To this message which had no time marked on it, I replied:

Major Gray:- The 60th Bn. passed through us and is now on our right and the R. Line is blocked with men. The 52nd Bn. are also here. If you wish us to co-operate in addition, I am at your orders.

(Sgd) Herbert Molson, Capt.

"Nothing developed during the day but at 7 p.m. the 60th Bn. proceeded back through our lines despite of my protests so that I was compelled to halt them till darkness as they were drawing heavy shelling.

"At 8 p.m. a heavy shelling took place which lasted about half an hour, and was followed by an attack, which, however, was easily repulsed as in addition to the 42nd, the 60th Bn. were in the R.Line.

"Another heavy shelling took place at 12.45 a.m. with machine gun and rifle fire."

C Company, which occupied ZILLEBEKE SWITCH lost its Company Commander, Major S.B. Coristine on the way up. Major B. McLennan immediately went up and took charge. About 5.30 p.m. 2nd June, Captain S.C. Norsworthy brought up Hqrs. details to the SWITCH. All night and the next day were spent in improving the trench which was in very bad condition when occupied. 10,000 rounds S.A.A. and a supply of Very Lights and reserve water supply were brought up.

JUNE 1916.

(Cont). "I was called to 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Hqrs. at 6 p.m. 3rd June and after some discussion orders were issued at 8 p.m. authorising me to relieve the P.P.C.L.I. and 49th Battalions in trenches. – LOVERS LANE, GOUROCK ROAD, WARRINGTON AVE., BYDAND AVENUE and R. LINE 63 to 68, with the following troops 60th Canadian Battalion already in R. Line, two companies of 52nd Can. Battalion, one company in R.Line and one supposed to be near YPRES, also some details about ZILLEBEKE BUND.

"There was considerable delay in getting in touch with the 52nd Battalion but finally got about forty men of this Bn. and their Scout Officer and runners were sent to the company near YPRES. These forty men were taken up to ZILLEBEKE SWITCH and relieved C Company of 42nd Bn. who were sent to R.Line under Captain Norsworthy.

"I atonce started for YEOMANRY POST accompanied by Major McLennan and a runner.

"When crossing between ZILLEBEKE ROAD and YEOMANRY POST there was a heavy enemy bombardment and we were forced to lay on the ground a considerable time.

"As soon as possible we started again and on reaching YEOMANRY POST, after one o'clock, we found that Lieut. Col. Griesbach and Major Adamson had left.

"Major McLennan had brought up orders for the 60th and 52nd Bns. with him as we felt we would get through as quickly as any runners and fully expected to find some means of communication.

JUNE 1916

(Cont).

" Major McLennan atonce went to the P.P.C.L.I. Hqrs. and advised them it would be impossible to relieve those portions of the Regiment and the 49th Bn. in LOVERS WALK, GOUROCK ROAD and vicinity that night as it was then almost dark.

"The platoons of the P.P.C.L.I. who were in the R.Line were relieved that night. Our orders were to take over R/63-68 but we garrisoned R.69 and R.70 as well, in order to keep in touch with the R.C.R. and to thin out the R.Line.

"I advised the 52nd and 60th Bns. that balance of relief would be carried out the evening of the 4th June and also received a relief order by wire. This was carried out and completed 12.45 a.m. 5th June, Major McLennan acting as requested in this order.

"On 5th June we received an order that we would be relieved by the 31st Canadian Battalion on that night.

"We arranged to have guides at YEOMANRY POST from all trenches. The relief was carried out as arranged with the exception that the company of the 31st Battalion which was to relieve on the right and had been started off first, was the last to arrive, owing to guide mistaking the most direct route. However, it was handed over to guides of the 60th Bn. and these men lost their way between YEOMANRY POST and LOVERS WADE.

JUNE 1916.

(Cont).

"Major McLennan had taken two companies of the 60th over this route the previous night and when guides reported at YEOMANRY POST he had personally asked them about their route and if they were confident about the return trip.

"The last twenty-four hours of our tour in the trenches were notable for two patrols, both most creditable performance – the first carried out by Lieut. S.J. Mathewson, L/Cpl Emo and four men who covered the ground between GOUROCK ROAD and DUCK WALK TRACK and C.I.R. Dugouts. It should be mentioned that Lieut.Mathewson who led the party had been under heavy shell fire in the trenches for 48 hours previously and had been slightly wounded. The second was an exceptionally daring daylight reconnaissance carried out by Sergt. O.H. Jones and Cpl. W.A.Thompson It is reported in Canadian Corps Intelligence Summary dated 5th June, as follows:-

"Crawling up to the enemy's block about I.24.b. 81.2. they found it deserted but another one built beyond it toward which they worked and dug through the side of WARRINGTON AVENUE trench into an old dugout. They burrowed a hole through the back of this below the roof large enough to get head and shoulders through, thus having an observation post within a few yards of the enemy's trench. They remained there for an hour and three quarters keeping his working party under close ob-

servation. The trench enemy is digging here is at right angles to WARRINGTON AVENUE trench and they estimate that there were 250 men at work in the stretch within view. The whole trench was being dug very deep, a man's head barely showing above it. a strong point (M.G?) was being built just north.

"It was apparent from enemy's attitude that they were not expecting a counter attack as only three snipers were covering the part of front in view. From their [their] attitude of firing into the wood and from the quiet manner in which enemy worked it appears that he is not certain of our exact position and thinks we are closer than we really are; this mistake is possible because of the fallen trees and thick undergrowth.

"Enemy seems to be improving WARRINGTON AVENUE as a communication trench. On the south the new line is wired double thickness in some places, with concertina barbed wire staked down with iron cork-screw standards.

"From close observation of ground on the hillside running up to our old front line no movement could be detected or any position where he could have immediate reserves.

111. Co-operation of Artillery:

Major Arthurs, 64th Lahore Battery was continually through the lines observing and gathering information. He ran an independent telephone line to YEOMANRY POST on the 4th June so as to keep in touch with us. The line, unfortunately, stood only a few minutes.

iv. Signal Service.

The necessity of using visual signalling when telephone lines break, the number of runners required and the difficulty of using them under certain conditions as they may bring heavy shelling on others, are points to be noticed.

The Signal Service with YEOMANRY POST and through the lines held was very bad. Although everything was done to try and keep it up, we were out of touch with Brigade and the Units under my command most of the time. The problem of sending runners was difficult as any movement during day light almost always brought shelling.

I wish to thank Lieut.Col.Hill and the R.C.R. for the great assistance they gave in forwarding messages through HALFWAY HOUSE and in endeavouring to keep communications open to YEOMANRY POST.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

V. Supplies of Ammunition,Food,Etc.

There was a good supply of ammunition in the line and at YEOMANRY POST. On the 4th June additional S.A.A., Bombs and Very Lights were sent up by Brigade and we were given all possible help in this way. On the afternoon of 2nd June we sent up from ZILLEBEKE BUND ammunition for Lewis Guns and companies going up to the front line. That evening Brigade sent up 200,000 rounds S.A.A. to TRANSPORT FARM and 100,000 rounds of to Gordon House.

A carrying party for the above and some water and rations to both YEOMANRY POST and LOVERS WALK were supplied by Brigade.

VI. Medical Arrangements – Evacuation of wounded.

One realized what a serious problem the evacuation of the wounded is – the area adjoining LOVERS WALK was not clear until the evening of Monday 5th June when a large party of Stretcher Bearers were sent up. Many of these men were there for 48 hours and some of them 72 hours. The night before, the stretcher bearers cleared YEOMANRY POST and over towards MAPLE COPSE.

If some places could be designated as clearing points for wounded it might be a help. The small number of men available in a unit holding front line makes it impossible to furnish carrying parties to any distant point but they might collect wounded to some known point where they could be sent for.

Supply of stretchers NIL. Casualties had to be removed on bath mats which caused much suffering and necessitated double the number of men to carry, in addition to damage to trench.

Shortage of blankets also rendered work of M.O. in keeping the wounded warm, difficult.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

VII. Casualties:

Our casualties were: Officers killed 2, Lieut. Laurence de K. Stephens and Lieut. Paul Hus Richardson. Officers wounded and admitted to hospital 3 – Major S.B. Coristine, Captain S.H. Blackadder and Lieut. P.H. McDougall.

Officers wounded continuing at duty 5 – Captain Herbert Molson, Lieut. E.R. Pesse, Lieut. R.L.H. Ewing, Lieut. S.J. Mathewson and Lieut. H.G. Birke.

Other ranks killed - 29.

„ „ wounded - 228.

„ „ missing - 30.

We are still receiving evacuation returns which will no doubt account for many of these men.

VIII. Special Mention – Officers.

Major Bartlett McLennan for general efficiency and capacity to command.

This officer exercised constant vigilance day and night over the situation in the front lines and directed the operation of the companies under his charge with outstanding ability. He also rendered valuable assistance in personally guiding in to their positions the details and companies of the units coming up to support and for relief, during heavy bombardments and at times when guides were not available.

Captain Herbert Molson, for efficient services and capable direction of the operations in the R. Line under his command. He brought his company safely through two heavy barrages of artillery fire in its position in support on the left flank and gave most valuable assistance and direction to the companies of the

52nd Bn. and 60th Bn. which came up subsequently to their positions in the R. Line.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

Although wounded in the head by shrapnel, Captain Molson refused to leave the line and remained with his company throughout the action.

Lieut. Royal L.H. Ewing who, after being wounded and having his wound addressed at the dressing station, returned to the trenches and carried on his duties in a very creditable and efficient manner. This was particularly remarked on by many of the N.C.Os. and men and did much to put heart in to them.

Lieut. S.J. Mathewson who took out a patrol on the night of 4th June after having been almost continuously on duty for 48 hours under shell fire, and slightly wounded.

Captain J.K. Beveridge for efficient and most valuable service rendered in maintaining a full and regular supply of rations and water for the Battalion during this action and on all occasions when it has been in the front line trenches.

IX. Special Mention – N.C.O's and Men.

169,014 Cpl (Act Sgt) Jones, O.B. who conducted the particularly daring daylight reconaissance, mentioned above.

418,020 Coy. Sergt. Major Wolferstan (deceased) for coolness during infantry rush by Germans while defending MAPLE COPSE area.

418,598 Sergt McIntyre, R. (Lewis Gun Section) who continued on duty after having been twice wounded and did excellent work and set a splendid example.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

418,016 Coy. Sergt. Major J. Dawson, who set a splendid example and performed his duties in a most cheerful and courageous manner.

50,754 Pte (A/Cpl) J. Urquhart, water corporal. He made his way up to A Company near MAPLE COPSE, to YEOMANRY POST and the R. Line to make arrangements for water supply and he was always ready to act as guide, taking many casualties to the dressing station at the Mill under heavy shelling.

418,010 Sergt C. Owston (Medical Sergeant) for coolness and devotion to duty in evacuating wounded.

418,743 L/Cpl F.H. Emo and 418,924 Pte Tew, F. who accompanied Lieut. S.J. Mathewson on patrol mentioned above.

418,799 A/Cpl Thompson, W.A. who accompanied Sergt O.B. Jones on the exceptionally daring daylight reconnaissance, mentioned above.

Four guides from 42nd Battalion supplied by Brigade Hqrs. to Rifle Brigade, We have not yet been able to ascertain their names.

Stretcher Bearers: 419,038 Pte Byrt, A.W.
419,007 „, Glazier, C.P.
135,925 „, Kay, F. , for coolness and devotion to duty.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

"In addition I would also like to mention Major H.C. Walkem, Commanding A Company, Captain S.C. Norsworthy, Adjutant, Captain A.A. MacKay, M.O., and R.S.M. P.W. MacFarlane, who rendered valuable services in their respective capacities, also Transport Sergeant J. Hunter.

X. Special points.

"Ross Rifles: The Ross rifles jammed badly in the attack when rapid fire was ordered and many rifles were discarded. Extra rifles were borrowed from the Divisional Wirers to replace same and our men secured Lee Enfield rifles whenever possible.

"This weapon is a serious danger to troops armed with it. It unquestionably jams whenever subjected to such severe tests under service conditions. The men know this better than anyone else and absolutely lack confidence in this rifle.

"Sand Bags: It was some little time before a steady supply of these could be obtained. Machinery should be arranged by which a steady supply will immediately begin going up to front line in case of shortage.

"Guides: The importance of having guides who know the district thoroughly; also that trenches and locations in the area must have definite names – so often there seems to be alternative names.

"Route control: The necessity of having some thoroughly posted guides to stand at Junction points and control traffic passing in both directions, and be of general assistance to parties moving about the area.

JUNE 1916.
(Cont).

On the night of June 5th the Battalion, on relief, proceeded to Camp A where we remained until the afternoon of the 7th when the Brigade moved back to the rest billets near STEENVOORDE. On the 6th June when at Camp A we were ordered to be ready to move up to the line to assist the 20th Division on the left of HOOGE, but the order was cancelled later the same day.

Training at STEENVOORDE was commenced on June 9th – arm, squad and company drill 9 to 11.30 a.m. and route march 1.30 to 3.30 p.m.

On June 10th Drill Sergeant C.Karradine of 2nd Bn.Irish Guards and Drill Sergeant C. Hearn of 3rd Bn.Grenadier Guards were attached to the Battalion.

On June 11th we received a draft of 295 men, who were distributed as follows:-

A Company	-	97.	C Company	-	48.
B	„	63.	D	„	87.

On June 11th the following transfers and appointments in Officers were made:-

Lieut. J.A.Mathewson	Transferred to C Company.
Lieut. R.L.H.Ewing	„ C „
Lieut. E.B.Finley	„ D „
Lieut. C.B.Wilson	„ B „
Lieut. A.J.de Lothiniere	„ B „

To be Actg. O.C. C Coy.	Lieut. R.L.H.Ewing.
„ „ O.C. D „	Lieut. E.R.Pease.
To be Actg.2nd in Command B Coy.	Lieut. C.B.Wilson.
„ „ „ C „	Lieut. E.C.Evans.
„ „ „ D „	Lieut. S.J.Mathewson.

JUNE 1916.

(Cont).

On June 12th we received a draft of 106 O.R. who were distributed as follows:-

A Company	-	31	C Company	-	25.
B	„	- 25	D	„	- 25.

Also Lieut. Ralph Willcock, from 71st Canadian Battalion, who was posted to B Company.

On June 14th Lieut.A. Joly de Lotbiniere [*Lothiniere*] proceeded to Headquarters Canadian Corps, for special duty.

The following N.C.Os. were included in the King's Birthday Honours, having been awarded the Military Medal:-

	418,258 Sgt Kingman, W.J.	A Company.
[418506]	418,386 „ Moore, C.	C „

In accordance with ruling made by the French Government, all clocks were put forward one hour, at 11 p.m. 14th June.

On 19th June the following Officer reinforcement arrived:-

Lieut. H.E.Hilton.	posted to A Company.
--------------------	----------------------

Lieut. E.MacDonald,	„	C	„
Lieut. R.F.Studd,	„	D	„

During our stay in rest billets the personnel of the Signal Section was brought up to a total of twenty-five, being augmented by men from the new drafts.

On the night of 21st-22nd June the Battalion relieved the 3rd Bn.Grenadier Guards, taking over area from GOUROCK ROAD to VIGO STREET inclusive, the Royal Canadian Regiment being on our left and the 7th Canadian Infantry Battalion on our right.

JUNE 1916
(Cont).

This portion of the line has seen very severe fighting both on 2nd June and in the successful Canadian counter attack on 13th June. The trenches were in bad shape, the burial of the dead not completed and the positions occupied by the enemy on our front not exactly known. During our five days, progress was made in all three directions and with regard to the last named, some very creditable patrolling was carried out by Lieuts. S.J.Mathewson and A.Routledge, Sergt O.E.Jones and Corporal W.A.Thompson. As a result, the old Canadian front line which had not been held by the Battalion whom we relieved, was occupied from its junction with VIGO STREET to a point forty yards North of WARRINGTON AVENUE while our Advanced post on GOUROCK ROAD was pushed forward from near WARRINGTON AVENUE to a point where it overlooks CHARING CROSS.

The 7th Canadian Battalion was relieved during our tour by the 13th Canadian Battalion who had been an object for our emulation since we were formed and our first school masters on arriving in France. That we were holding the line side by side with them seemed to mark a new chapter in the history of the 42nd.

Casualties for the tour – Officers wounded two – Captain S.C. Norsworthy and Lieut. W.H.Thompson. O.R. killed 8, wounded 38.

On night of 26th-27th June the Battalion was relieved by the 49th Canadian Battalion and moved in to Brigade Support, at ZILLEBEKE DUGOUTS, where we furnished nightly working parties of from 400 to 470 men.

We moved on night of June 30th-July 1st in to Divisional Reserve at Camp D (OTTAWA) being relieved by the 58th Canadian Battalion.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Sat., Jul 1, 1916

We moved on night June 30th/July 1st to Divisional Reserve, Camp "D" (OTTAWA), being relieved by the 58th. Canadian Battalion. Here we remained for 11 days, during which the following Officers received courses: -

Lieut. Routledge – ~~Bombing~~ *Stokes Guns* – TERDEGHEM. Lieut. Topp – Bayonet.

Lieut. Studd - Bayonet.

Lieut. S. McDonald, (not completed owing to a sprained ankle.)

Mon, Jul 3, 1916

On July 3rd. Lieut. Evans proceeded on a month's general Course at 2nd. Army Central School of Instruction.

On 2nd. July Lieut. J. C. Stewart was appointed Acting Grenade Officer and on 3rd. July Captain Grafftey, who had rejoined from Hospital the day previous, was transferred to "A" Company as 2nd. in Command.

Captain Norsworthy and Lieut. H. G. Birks also rejoined at Camp "D".

Lieut. Bosworth, who had been attached on 15th. May to Headquarters, 1st. Canadian Infantry Bde., for Instruction was confirmed in his appointment as Orderly Officer on that Staff on June 30th. The following new Officers arrived from SHORNCLIFFE:- They were posted to Companies set opposite their names:-

Lieut. A. J. Perks (64th. Bn.) & Lieut. J. K. Mathewson – "C" Company.

Lieut. C. B. Reilly (82nd. Bn.) – "B" Company. Lieut. C. S. Martin () – "D" Company.

Lieut. J. D. McLeod (82nd. Bn.) - "A" Company.

The Anglo-French offensive on the SOMME which began about this time was followed on all fronts with the keenest interest.

Tue., Jul 4, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Jul 5, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu, Jul 6, 1916

On July 6th. the Battalion suffered its most serious loss since coming to France, Maj. McLennan being seriously injured by having his horse fall with him while taking part in the 7th. Brigade Sports.

Fri., Jul 7, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Jul 8, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Jul 9, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon, Jul 10, 1916

On 10th. July the Battalion, with the exception of "D" Coy., moved to YPRES where we were quartered in the CAVALRY BARRACKS.

Tue, Jul 11, 1916

On the night of the 11th. we relieved the 43rd. Bn. and also the two left Coys. of the 1st. Can. Bn. taking over front line trenches 56 to 60 inclusive (Map Location I.24.d.6.1. to J.19.a.1.3. - ZILLEBEKE). The R.C.R. were on our left and the 49th. Battalion on our right for the first four days, after which the latter were replaced by the P.P.C.L.I.

Our 8 days tour is chiefly notable for the splendid patrol and other work done by Sergeant O.B. Jones, N.C.O./c. Scouts, and the valuable observation reports of Pte. B.S. Jackes. Their work culminated in a slight demonstration on the night of July 17th/18th. consisting of the building of a barricade and the removal of a strip of enemy's wire entanglements. The following is a report made by Sgt. O.B. Jones:- I have the honor to report that I conducted a patrol of four men from the Head of ST. PETERS STREET at Trench 56 into No Man's Land at 11.40 p.m. The patrol proceeded through our wire about 20 yards from trench (56) and moved along the frontage of trench (56) about 30 yds. until encountered enemy sap, leaving from I.24.d.6½.1½. , Approximate, to I.24.d.8½., approximate. This trench was entered and found to be very badly damaged by artillery fire, being almost obliterated for about 30 yards. The patrol moved slowly in single file up this sap and found it to be in fairly good shape, only occasional shell-holes breaking it here and there. The trench was dry and bore marks of recent shovelling. (This began about 45 to 50 yards from trench 60). It is narrow and varies from 4½ to 5½ feet in depth. Condition of Sap. :- Hostile parties could quite easily come up it unobserved by day. Progress was of course slow, as it was thought that enemy listening posts would be encountered, so that extreme caution had to be taken. No such obstacle was encountered however, and one of the patrol succeeded in getting up to and through the enemy's wire until the enemy's flare-light firers, 2 in number, were uncomfortably close.

Work on Sap. - It has been stated that the good part of the trench bore signs of having been recently shovelled and, while this is supported by the fact that picks and shovels had been seen in the trench, it should be noted that no attempt has been made to clear those few parts of it that have been blown in. Furthermore, although it would be almost impossible to see footprints in the darkness, yet I felt my way along very carefully and could feel no marks of that nature. It should be added however, that the sifting of dirt from the sides of the trench was noticed, and this would conceal footprints. It must remain problematical however therefore, as to whether the enemy sends patrols out beyond his wire. (My own opinion is that he does not. Enemy Occupation. Judging from the map it would seem that the enemy sentries (firing flares) were in their forward line. I cannot state this definitely. After passing through his

wire I poked my head around a corner and, seeing a sentry some 2 or 3 yards away, decided that the information gained had better not be risked by a bout with him. Enemy Sentries. On my left was another sentry about 20 yards away. At this time the night was cloudy and a faint drizzle of rain falling, so that surface marks could not be plainly distinguished. Wire.- The enemy's wire is of the familiar concertina barbed type. Two lines have been put out touching one another. At the point where it crosses the sap it can be passed without much difficulty. Hostile Patrols. Not hostile patrols were encountered. . Work.- No enemy parties were seen outside his trench working. Work was, however, heard to some extent in his front line, while considerable hammering and some sawing of wood was heard to be taking place in his support line well back. Flares. He was active with his flares; fives of these "failed". This, in my experience, is unusual. Machine Guns.- Machine Guns disconcertingly active. No definite locations can be reported. Flanks.- The patrols kept a sharp watch on the flanks, more particularly the left flank, which was hurriedly scouted for some 50 yards. Nothing to report thereon save some "nervous" bombing opposite trench 60. Wiring.- Excellent opportunities offer for concealed

Wed. Jul 12, 1916

Wiring.- (Cont).- wiring in the shell holes immediately in front of our line. The *value* of such wiring would be to bunch the enemy in an attack, thereby creating favorable M.G.targets. I was impressed with the fact that the enemy was strengthening his present line at top speed and in depth and wiring himself in; thereby anticipating danger of contemplated attack. Patrol returned at 2.35 a.m. (Sgt.O.B.Jones. Ref:- Map Y.G.16-5 (No Man's Land) R.F. 1/5000. ~~Another patrol under Sgt. Jones~~— Observations by Sgt.Jones were as follows:/ O.P's. established at the following points:- SACKVILLE ST – I.24.d.8.8. -Approx. PINCHER ST. – I.24.d.8¼.7¾,approx., and CRAB CRAWL – I.24.d.8¼.4.approx. A german Officer with a private was observed at about 3 pm. at J.19.a.5.2.(approx.) Dress: - Officer – Light blue tunic with black braid on seams at back- trousers blue – cap peaked, predominant colour black. Private's dress unobserved. At J.19.a.4½.5. at 3.30 a.m. 5 Germans observed following a footpath, and not using the trench at this point. Pte. Jackes killed one of them. Dress:- Blue uniforms – blue caps (no red band noticed.) Shovelling noticed during the day at J.19.a.4.2. and J.19.a.5.2. approx. It is thought that a Headquarters might be situated here. Following uniforms observed from time to time :- (1) very light blue (2) field grey caps.- (3) plain field grey.- (4) same with red band.) Pte. Daniels at 2 p.m. wounded a German at J.19.a.4.2, wounded man wearing an all RED cap. Men also observed wearing red cap and blue uniform, also blue caps with white bands round them. At 12.30 p.m.working party observed at J.19.c.3.1½.approx. General attitude of enemy very bold, moving about with considerable nonchalance. Our snipers succeeded in making this practice unhealthy. Enemy machine guns were active by [*but*] snipers inactive. 3 German Planes went over our front line during the day. Enemy artillery was inactive.

Fri, Jul 14, 1916

Patrol conducted by Sgt.Jones failed in its objective which was to capture a prisoner. The failure was not through lack of efforts. The patrol went out from Trench 56 to left of St. PETERS ST., and followed down the enemy sap. The patrol continued through two lines of barbed concertina wire up the sap for about 35 yards until a barbed wire block was encountered in the sap. It was then about 2.30 a.m., and patrol had not the time to cut through this block. Beyond this block a

large shell-hole about 20' in diameter was observed; beyond this hole was further wire entanglements extending to right and left along the front of enemy trench and about 3 yards from parapet. This wire seemed continuous, and is very intricate, though not more than 3' in depth: barbed concertina wire and straight barbed wire "aproned" to iron standards was used. The wire appeared very hard to penetrate. The enemy has also two thicknesses of barbed concertina wire about 50 yards from his trench, making 2 separate lines in all. The enemy were heard sawing hammering and patting sandbags all night, and was very industrious. No enemy patrols were encountered or seen. Enemy machine guns were less active than the previous night.

Sun, Jul 16, 1916

A patrol under Sergeant O.B.Jones and consisting of Ptes. Bellers, Jackes and Marquard went out from Trench 56 at 2.30 a.m. on the 15th. They went down enemy sap at this point, remaining out for 20 hours, returning at 10.40 p.m. Pte. Marquard, who speaks German fluently, was posted under enemy's wire about 20 yards from his trench. He listened to conversations taking place in enemy's lines throughout the day, but heard nothing of military importance. Enemy were noticed to cease work at 3.30 a.m., when they indulged in recreation and slept until 10 am. Enemy work parties were noticed between 3.30 am. and 6 am. going southward, returning between 6 pm. and 10.30 pm. Observation was rendered practically impossible by the tall grass, which waved back and forth in the wind, thereby blurring the vision. Pte. Jackes, however, who was appointed observer, managed to obtain some observations to the right of the position occupied by the patrol. Behind SHREWSBURY FOREST between points J.31.a.7.4. and J.31.b.1.1. (approx.) high grass-grown mounds, about 5 in all, possibly gun emplacements, were sighted. It was the opinion of the members of the patrol that our artillery, both light and heavy, was very effective. Before withdrawing from the sap the patrol collected 17 German cylindrical bombs and 10 Mills hand grenades. At 10.20 pm., judging congestion to have taken place in the enemy's trench, these bombs were thrown, and it is thought considerable losses were sustained by the enemy. A machine gun which had been noticed firing about 30 yards right of where sap enters enemy's lines was also bombed, and it is thought that this gun was put out of action. The patrol returned in safety, encountering practically no retaliation for the bombs thrown. At I.30.b.4.1. (approx) an N.C.O. apparently directing a working party, was observed. Dress - light blue black peaked cap with red band - uniform light blue - belt and bayonet scabbard black leather.

Mon, Jul 17, 1916 & Tue., Jul 18, 1916

Between 12m. and 3 am. a patrol under Lieut. Routledge, consisting of Sgt.O.B.Jones, Sgt. Wright and Pte.Bellers examined the sap leading out from Trench 58. This sap is about 5 feet deep, and is muddy. Earth is thrown up on each side to afford cover to a man standing in the sap. It was the intention to garrison this sap the same morning. The patrol advanced along to the enemy's wire, which was examined with a view to cutting out operations, and a sample obtained. The wire is thick and strong and would form a formidable obstacle to advancing infantry. Patrol reported enemy's machine gun fire extremely limited. At about 11 pm. Captain Grafftey proceeded out over parapet at head of CRAB CRAWL for a distance of about 30 yards. He carefully taped out a barricade about 30 yards wide, and then called out a party of 35 men. 5 of these were detailed to fill sandbags, the remainder being employed to pass forward sandbags. A barricade 30 yards long, 2 feet 6 inches thick and 2 feet

high was erected, and behind this a trench 1 foot 6 inches deep and 2 feet wide was dug. The party was not discovered by the enemy, and returned about 1.15 am. without casualties. It was planned that on return of the working party a wiring party, with concertina frames, should go out and wire in front of the barricade. Owing to activity with bombs and machine guns on the part of the enemy this project had to be abandoned, and instead the wiring party wired a gap in our own wire. This wiring party also returned without casualties.

A party under Mr. Birks worked on three saps, cleaning them out and deepening them, until 1 am. when they were recalled by the Engineer in charge.

A stretcher system had been organized with considerable detail for the working parties. 12 men were detailed from the Support Company to act as Stretcher Carriers and were held in readiness in WINNIPEG STREET. 4 guides were also present, the whole being under a competent N.C.O. The duty of these guides was to lead Stretcher Carriers by the most direct route to the head of the Trench Tramway, where empty trucks were in waiting. Two Stretcher Bearers had been told off to barricade party, two to the working party under Mr. Birks, and three others were available, being stationed in the Front Line close to CRAB CRAWL.

While the barricade was in process of erection Lieut. Routledge and Sgt. O.B. Jones left Trench 58 at 12.05 am. and proceeded up Sap at this point. They thoroughly examined enemy's wire and cut same at weak and tactically important points, and dislodged iron standards anchoring this wire. A rope was passed out from our trenches and fastened around this wire. When the barricade was completed a party of men in our own trench pulled this section of wire over to our own wire, much to the disquietude of the enemy, who used a considerable number of rifle grenades bombs and Very lights ineffectively.

It was intended to duplicate this scheme on the left flank of the enemy's first line wire opposite Trench 56, but investigations proved that enemy had been warned by previous operations on this Sector and had garrisoned. The only alternative was to attack this garrison, and this was carried out by our Bombers.

During the work of building this barricade and cutting the wire the enemy was very quiet.

Bright moonlight, however, made the work extremely difficult, and extreme caution was necessary.

Enemy working party was heard opposite barricade. Enemy Transport was heard at approximately J.19.b.2.5. at 12.30 am.

Wed, Jul 19, 1916

The Divisional Commander made an inspection of our area and we learned through our Brigadier that evening that he had expressed high appreciation of the progress made in improving the trenches.

The close of this very successful tour was marred by the wounding of Sgt. Hunter and Pte. B.S. Jackes, both most competent men in their respective positions of Transport Sergeant and Chief Battalion Observer and Sniper.

Total Casualties for the Tour were only . This included a very slight wound of Lt. Topp.

On the night of July 19th/20th the Battalion moved down to Divisional Reserve at "B" Camp, where they remained until July 23rd.

Sun, Jul 23, 1916

The Battalion moved down to rest billets in STEENVOORDE. Consistent work was done at our training, which, however, had no particularly outstanding feature. Lieut. Topp rejoined us at Camp "B".

Mon., Jul 31, 1916

The Battalion moved to "A" Camp. The weather had turned oppressively hot and the long march in marching order about midday caused many prostrations.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Tue., Aug 1, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Aug 2, 1916

The Battalion moved up from A Camp to Ypres, Headquarters at Ramparts, three companies occupied the Cavalry Barracks, remainder of the Battalion were in the Monastery and A.B.C. Billets.

Thu., Aug 3, 1916

At 9. am. just previous to working parties falling in, a direct hit was made by a H.E. shell of heavy calibre which struck the quarters occupied by C Company with most unfortunate results, causing extraordinary heavy casualties – 59 men of whom ten were killed outright and six subsequently died of wounds, the list included eight lance-corporals.

Fri., Aug 4, 1916

The Battalion moved into line and relieved 43rd. Canadian Battalion, taking over front line trenches 56 to 60 inclusive and Warrington Ave to Gourock Road. (Map location I.24.d.6.1. to J.19.a.1.3. Zillebeke) The R.C.R. Battalion on our left and the 49th on our right who were relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. for the last four days of this tour. The first half of the eight day tour was comparatively uneventful except for daring patrols including a daylight reconnaissance by Lt. Routledge and Sergt. Jones, also some minor bombing operations. The later half of our tour was marked by increased activity in the enemy's artillery and trench mortars. On the morning of the 12th August a very heavy bombardment affecting our right company and along Observatory

Ridge, opposite Hill 60 – which resulted in cutting all our communications, fortunately very few casualties were suffered, largely due to the work that had been done strengthening the trenches.

Sat., Aug 5, 1916

Following Officer reinforcements were received:

Supernumerary—Major McArthur, A.	(64th Can. Bn.)	posted to	C	Company
„ „ McClellan, C.C.	(65th „ „)	„	B	„
„ „ McConnell, C.A.	(65th „ „)	„	D	„
„ Capt. Lucas, A.	(66th „ „)	„	A	„
„				
„ Lieut. Savage, G.H	(5th C.M.R.)	„	D	„
„ „ McTaggart J.A.	(Fort Garry Horse)	„	B	„

During this tour two of the new officers were wounded. Lieut G.H.Savage on the 9th inst., and Lieut. McTaggart, J.A. on the 12th inst., and L/Cpl.Bellers a valued N.C.O., who had done special patrol work and was of great service to the Battalion was killed.

The following are reports of some of the Patrols carried out:

Sun., Aug 6, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Mon., Aug 7, 1916

Aug. 7th. Lieut. Routledge, Sergt. Jones and Pte. Brown left Tor Top at 4.45 pm. entering enemy's sap, reached point in sap about 25 yards from enemy's front trench. Sergt. Jones crawled forward under enemy's wire to within 20 yards of bombing post. This post is in a bend in the trench and has a steel sniper's plate set in it, seeing no signs of the enemy Sergt. Jones proceeded to the right for the purpose of examining the wire. With the exception of a small dip where the wire has been damaged by enemy bombing, it is very formidable – barbed concertina type from 20 – 30 ft. thick. Enemy then observed Sergt. Jones and fired upon him twice through a loophole at a range of 12 yards – one bullet passing through his hair, he dropped and scrambled back to the sap.

Tue., Aug 8, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Wed., Aug 9, 1916

Aug. 9th. Patrol under Sergt. Jones went out from our bombing post in Trench 60 to investigate enemy activity in front of Loop, they found themselves almost enveloped in a screen of enemy scouts of whom they counted eleven in different places and more were heard in the neighbourhood. Thinking the enemy might be raiding they sent back word warning the post,

possibly the enemy were trying to catch patrol as it followed the same route as the previous night. The patrol returned safely but were unable to get the desired information.

Thu., Aug 10, 1916

We received reinforcements of 40 men, made up of 14 from 17th Bn. 23 from 92nd. Bn. and 3 from 79th Bn. Canadians. All of which were posted to C Company.

Following were total casualties during this tour: 23 in all:

OFFICERS WOUNDED: 2 O.R. WOUNDED: 19 O.R. KILLED: 2

Fri., Aug 11, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Aug 12, 1916

Battalion was relieved by R.C.R. on the night of the 12th/13th. and moved down, two companies to Zillebeke Bund, two companies to Infantry Barracks, Ypres; and Headquarters to the Ramparts, Ypres. Here we spent six days furnishing working parties nightly. This was without special incident.

Sun., Aug 13, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Aug 14, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Aug 15, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Aug 16, 1916

Advice of the award of the Military Medal to the following for special services they had performed on June 24th. was received,

419043 LanceCorporal .Bellers, J.V.H.	(killed during previous tour)
427024 private Maquard, A.	
418997 ,, Jackes, B.S.	

Thu., Aug 17, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Aug 18, 1916

Battalion moved into the line on the night of the 18th/19th, relieving RC.R. and occupying front line trenches 56 to 60 inclusive and Warrington Ave. to Gourock Rd. (Map location I.24.d.6.1. to J.19.a.1.3. Zillebeke) On our left were the 49th Can. Bn., and on our right the 43rd. Can. Bn. This four day tour was marked by special activity of the enemy's artillery and heavy trench mortars, including a heavy shoot of over two hours duration on the afternoon of the 19th affecting all our front line and concentrating on our right flank opposite Hill 60 to the Dump, causing a number of casualties including Sergt. Hicks, E.T.B. No. 419071 platoon Sergt. of "B" Company, severely wounded.

Sat., Aug 19, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Aug 20, 1916

Enemy attacked our Advanced Bombing Post in sap leading out of Tor Top with a small party. We suffered three casualties and remained in possession of the sap.

The usual patrolling was carried on and there was no special incidents to record.

Casualties were heavy for a short tour; 30 O.R. of which 9 were killed.

Mon., Aug 21, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Aug 22, 1916

The Battalion was relieved on the night of the 22nd./23rd. by the 1st Hampshires, 11th Brigade, 4th Division, and proceeded to Camp C.

The move from the Salient, where we have endured much, and lost many a good man, during a period of over five months, was an event in the history of the Battalion which will long remain in the memory of those spared during our period of service there.

Geo.S. Cantlie

.....Lieut. Col.

Commanding 42nd Battn.

Canadian Expeditionary Force

Period from August 21st/to Sept. 7th. Battn. moved down via Busseboom and Poperinghe to billets North West of Steenvoorde, where we remained until September 7th, spent in hard training, which included Company and Battalion in Attack, Night Operations, Brigade Route Marches, and Lectures to the Officers in preparation for the work to be undertaken in the SOMME. During our stay:

Captain A. Grafftey was appointed Actg. O.C. "A" Company

Lieut. J.S.Mathewson ,, ,, Actg. O.C. "C" ,,

., A.J.Perks ., ., M.G. Officer.

28th Aug. Thirty two O.R. reinforcements were received. Same date following Officers were promoted temporary Captains: Lieuts. E. R. Pease, and R. L .H. Ewing, dated 2nd July. Lieut. C. Blair Wilson dated 12th July.
Lieut. J .C. Stewart proceeded to England as Bombing Instructor

31st Aug. Major Walkem proceeded to Base for two months, to be attached to O.C. Reinforcements.

Fri, Sep 1, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Sep 2, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Sep 3, 1916

3rd. Sept. Thirty-six O.R. reinforcements were received
Captain S. C. Norsworthy appointed 2nd.in Command, Capt. R.L.H. Ewing, appointed Actg. Adjutant.

Mon, Sep 4, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue, Sep 5, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed, Sep 6, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu, Sep 7, 1916

7th Sept. 7th C.I.B. made its first step for the SOMME. Battn. proceeded to ESQUELBEC where they entrained, spent the night on the journey, detraining at CONTREVILLE the following morning, and marched to DOMLEGER where they were billeted for three days.

Fri, Sep 8, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Sep 9, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Sep 10, 1916

10th. Sept. Battalion left Domleger at 9 am. and marched via MASNIL-FRANSU-FRANQUEVILLE-DOMART-ST LEGER-BERTEAUCOURT- to HALLOY-LES-PERNOIS, and went into billets for the night.

Mon, Sep 11, 1916

11th. Sept. Battalion left HALLOY at 6.50 am. and marched via HAVERNAS-NAOURS-TALMAS-REBEMPRE- to HERISSART, spent the night in billets.

Tue, Sep 12, 1916

12th. Sept. Battalion left HERISSART 8.30 am., and marched via CONTAY-VADENCOURT to the VADENCOURT WOOD AREA. Here they Bivouaced on the side of a hill over-night.

Wed, Sep 13, 1916

Sheet 2

Sept. 13th. Battn. left VADENCOURT Sheet 2 6.45 am., marched via WARLOY and Tracks of SENLIS to the BRICKFIELDS where they were in Corps Reserve.

Thu, Sep 14, 1916

Sept. 14th. Lieut. R. R. Morris taken on strength, and seconded for duty with 7th C.I.B. M.G. Company

Fri, Sep 15 to Sun, Sep 17, 1916

Sept. 15th/17th. Here follows report of O.C. on Operations NEAR COURCELETTE:

On the morning of the 15th Sept. [Sept.] the Battalion was in bivouac at the BRICKFIELDS – ALBERT.

9.00am. Orders received to prepare to move at once – taking ammunition and water wagons, and to assemble the Brigade at USNA HILL.

9.45am. Battalion marched out, arriving at USNA HILL about one hour later.

1.30pm. Orders were received to move forward at once and assemble in the low ground under cover North of the POZIERES ROAD.

3.00pm. Operations Orders were received for the attack at Zero Hour 6 pm. These were read over to Company Officers and carefully explained.

4.30pm. The Battalion moved off to take up position of assembly in and behind SUGAR TRENCH. the jumping off point.

DISTRIBUTION Attacking Companies.

A Company	Captain	Grafftey,	on	Right.
C	„	Lieut. S.J. Mathewson,	on	Left.
B	„	Captain C.Blair Wilson,	in	Support
D	„	Lieut. J.A. Mathewson,	in	Reserve

ATTACK The position of assembly was reached and all in readiness for the attack at 5.50 pm.

The attacking companies went over the parapet exactly at Zero Hour.

OBJECTIVES The first objective SUNKEN ROAD was reached – also the 2nd. i.e. FA-BECK GRABEN TRENCH without heavy casualties, and immediately steps were taken to clear the trench, reverse the parapet and consolidate. 2 Trench Mor-tars and a quantity of "Rum Jar" ammunition were found in FABECK GRABEN.

Sheet 3

Report to that effect received from the front line dated 0.18 O'Clock and communicated to Brigade Headquarters.

ARTILLERY The artillery barrage in the second objective was splendid the enemy could be seen leaving his trenches hastily as the assault waves approached.

DISPOSITION The disposition over-night of 15th/16th and on the 16th was as fol-
Night of lows:

15th/16th. A Company (Capt. S.J.Mathewson,
C „ (in FABEK GRABEN R.29.a.3.½ to R.28.d.4.7.
B „ (Lieut. Topp.)
D „ („ J.A.Mathewson) In SUNKEN ROAD.

PATROLS On the night of 15th/16th a patrol under Lieut. S. J. Mathewson, L/Cpl. Field and ten men, went out and reconnoitred the ground between FABEK GRA-BEN and ZOLLERN GRABEN (the next objective) They covered a distance of 400 yards – no intermediate trench was found, and the line occupied by the en-emy was seen not to be protected by wire.

ENEMY PATROL An enemy patrol of 1 N.C.O. and 4 men came to within 100 yds. of our trench – a Lewis Gun was turned on them, 1 N.C.O. and two men surren-dered, the others ran and were probably killed. The prisoners were about 20 years old and had recently come from St. Eloi

The night of the 15th/16th passed without special incident apart from con-tinued heavy shelling which caused considerable casualties.

A ration party guided by Captains. Norsworthy and Ewing got through to FABECK GRABEN bringing in rations on stretchers and carried out a number of our wounded.

OPERATION 16TH

The morning of the 16th passed without incident except for the continued heavy shelling on FABECK GRABEN and SUNKEN ROAD and area in rear.

Sheet 4

About 4 pm. the enemy developed active machine gun and rifle fire.

At this time orders were received respecting the attack on ZOLLERN GRABEN at Zero Hour 5 pm.

DISPOSITION

The disposition of our companies was then as follows:

A Company) Lieut. S. J. Mathewson,
C ,,) in FABECK GRABEN R.29.a.3.½. to R.28.d.4.7.
B Company) Lieut. Topp)
D ,,) J.A. Mathewson) in SUNKEN ROAD

Bearing orders, Capt. Norsworthy went forward to explain them to Company Officers, so that there would be no misunderstanding. On reaching FABECK GRABEN he delivered instructions to O.C. Companies and made everything clear for coming attack.

ATTACK

The first wave went over the parapet at 4.55 pm., the hour designated to start. The instructions were to go as far as possible before the barrage lifted. the distance to be covered being about 450 yards distance.

Lieut. Macdonald and Lieut. J. K. Mathewson went over with the first wave on the flanks, and Lieut. S. J. Mathewson with the second wave in the centre.

The Artillery Barrage on the ZOLLERN GRABEN to be attacked utterly failed. The trench farther to the right and the enemy's support trench was more heavily shelled.

When the second wave left our parapet (about 4.56 pm.) the the enemy was plainly seen standing almost shoulder to shoulder in his trench. There was no artillery of M.G. fire from the flank to keep him down and the unit attacking on our Right was not then in sight.

The men realized the position as quickly as the Officers and N.C.Os., but in view of the coming attack at 6.30 pm. on our Left by the 9th Brigade, and definitive orders to secure ZOLLERN GRABEN beforehand; there was no alternative – Before the first wave

Sheet 5

had gone 100 yards half the effectives were lost and the 2nd. wave was brought up to help to carry them through.

Lieuts. J. K. Mathewson on the left, and S.J. Mathewson on the right managed to get within 100 yards of the enemy trench when they were the only two left, the nearest to them were dead and wounded, about twenty-five yards in their rear.

An hour later about 25% of the attacking force returned to FABECK GRABEN to which D Coy. under Major McConnell had come up.

When the attacking companies left FABECK GRABEN the Supporting companies moved up from SUNKEN ROAD "B" Coy. on the right and "D" Coy. on the left – Two platoons of "B" Coy. were subsequently withdrawn in order to thin out the trench.

ARTILLERY The artillery barrage in preparation for this attack was faulty and meagre – It held for a few minutes only and was directed behind ZOLLERN GRABEN trench and on Support trenches in rear which seemed to be heavily shelled.

LEWIS GUNS Lewis Guns were distributed - 6 to the Attacking companies (front line) and three to the Support companies. They did some good execution early in the attack of the 16th, but the crews were soon put out by shell fire.

2 Lewis Guns were destroyed by enemy's artillery
6 were brought back, 3 of which were damaged and have been turned into Ordnance.
1 was loaned by the 60th. Bn. together with Drums.

COLT GUNS 4 Colt Guns advanced in rear of D Company in reserve and were set up on the parapet of SUGAR TRENCH from which positions they opened overhead fire on ZOLLERN TRENCH about 6 pm. on 15th inst. In this position 1 gun was put out of action and subsequently repaired - At 7 pm. 15th inst. two guns were advanced to a position on our left flank in SUNKEN ROAD from which they carried on indirect fire. On the 16th the other two guns were advanced to a position on the Right Flank about halfway between SUNKEN ROAD and ZOLLERN GRABEN.

Sheet 6

All guns were in good positions to withstand counter-attacks

RELIEF. About 12.30 pm. 17th Spet. [Sept.] orders were received that the 7th Brigade would be relieved that night – the relief to be effected before daylight. The last of our platoons left the lines about 4.30 am.

WOUNDED As far as can be ascertained, all of the wounded in the action of the 15th were removed without undue delay. Also most of the wounded in the action of the 16th.

Our M.O. Sergt. remained behind to assist in the evacuation of any of our men who might not be located during the relief – To the best of his knowledge they were all taken out that night – Three parties were engaged in this work – i.e., from pioneer, 43rd Bns. and Field Ambulance.

ROLL CALL The Roll Call on TARA HILL on the morning of the 17th Sept. was 266 all ranks.

PRISONERS

I hold receipts for 1 Officer, 31 O.R. in addition to which a party of 20 men were handed over to C.M.R. and a number of wounded sent out, and others who had to be left behind.

CASUALTIES

The following are the total casualties during these Operations:

OFFICER CASUALTIES:	Capt. C. Blair Wilson.	KILLED
	Capt. A.A.Grafftey.	WOUNDED
	Lieut.Allan Routledge	„
	„ J.A. Mathewson,	„
	„ J.T.L. Shum	„
	„ C.E. Reilly	„
	Capt. A. Lucas	„
	Lieut. C.B. Martin	„
	Capt. S. C. Norsworthy,	„

Sheet 7

CASUALTIES Cont.

Total Casualties	ORTHER RANKS	“KNOWN KILLED”	73
„	„	“WOUNDED”	290
„	„	“MISSING”	66 (either killed or not reported <i>wounded</i> yet.

Total Casualties [*Casualties*] All Ranks – 437.

AWARDS

I have submitted, under separate cover, recommendations for Immediate Award, in connection with these Operations.

Captain	Stanley C.	Norsworthy
„	Royal L.H.	Ewing,
Lieut.	S. J.	Mathewson,
„	Allan	Routledge,
„	R.	Willock,
„	J. K.	Matheson,
„	S.	Macdonald.

and a number of N.C.Os. and O.R.

In addition I have reported the distinguished services rendered to my Battalion throughout our whole time in France by Captain C. Blair Wilson, Killed in Action, while gallantly leading his company on September 15th.

Sun., Sept 17 & Mon, Sep 18, 1916

Sept.17th/18th.

Battalion bivouaced on TARA HILL.

Mon, Sep 18, 1916

Sept. 18th.

Moved into billets in ALBERT. The men having been exposed for thirty-six hours in pouring rain. From here we furnished Working Parties.

Tue, Sep 19, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed, Sep 20, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu, Sep 21, 1916

Sept. 21st.

Following appointments were made:

Lieut. E. C. Evans, Actg. O.C. "A" Company

Sheet 8

SEPT. 21st. APPOINTMENTS Cont.

Lieut. C. B. Topp Actg. O.C. "B" Company

„ S. Macdonald, Bombing Officer

Fri, Sep 22, 1916

SEPT. 22nd.

Thirty-four O.R. reinforcements, were received.

Sat, Sep 23, 1916

SEPT. 23rd.

Battalion marched via BOUZINCOURT-SENLIS-to WARLOY, spent the night in billets.

Sun, Sep 24, 1916

SEPT. 24th.

Battalion marched via VADENCOURT-TOUTENCOURT-PUCHEVILLERS-VAL-DE-MAISON- and went under canvas. Here we received following Officer reinforcements:

Lieut. Robinson, E.A.

„ Montgomery, L.C.

„ Gifford, C.F.

„ Wattam, R.J.

„ Arcand, L.

„ Waller, J.L.

„ Banwell, E.

„ Small, D.F.

„ Grenier, D.

„ Taylor, L.

„ Tinling, C.B.

„	Cole,	J.E.
„	Campbell,	G.
„	Fanteaux,	S.A.
„	Cohen,	M.T.
„	Campbell,	K.A.
„	Lyon,	R.E.

Mon, Sep 25, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue, Sep 26, 1916

SEPT.26th. Marched via VERT-GALLAND- FRAM- BALHEUREUX-
BONEVILLE-to ????? and went into billets.

Sheet 9

Wed, Sep 27, 1916

SEPT.27th. Marched via BONEVILLE-FERME-DU-BOSEL-VAL-DE-MAISON-
HERESSART-to CONTAY, and went into billets. Here word was received of the
death of our Bombing Officer, - Lieut. Allan Routledge, in hospital, on the 23rd.,
as a result wounds received on the 15th in operation near COURCELETTE. This
Officer gave repeated evidence of great gallantry, both in the Ypres Salient, and
in the action in which he was wounded. He had been recommended for a Military
Cross before word of his death was received.

Thu, Sep 28, 1916

SEPT.28th. Marched via SENLIS- to BRICKFIELDS, thence to billets in ALBERT

Thu, Sep 28 to Sat, Sep 30, 1916

SEPT.28th/30th. Furnished working parties. Casualties on the 29th 1 O.R. killed 2 O.R.
wounded.

Fri, Sep 29, 1916

SEPT.29th. Lieut. Bethune D. A., proceeded to VADENCOURT to take charge of
Baths. Captain R. H. Ewing appointed Actg. 2nd. in Command.

Geo.S. Cantlie
.....Lieut. Col.
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force

Sun., Oct 1, 1916

OCTOBER 1st. The Battalion was in billets in ALBERT and furnished Working Parties on the Contal Maison , Ovilliers, and La Boisselle-Courcelette Road.
Lieuts. C. B. Reilly and C. S. Martin, were transferred to England, wounded.

Mon., Oct 2, 1916

OCTOBER 2nd. The Battalion left ALBERT at 10 am., and marched to TARA HIL, and at 3.30 pm. moved forward and went into Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, arriving there about 5 pm.

Tue., Oct 3, 1916

OCTOBER 3rd. In Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, supplying Working and Carrying Parties to the front line.

Wed., Oct 4, 1916

OCTOBER 4th. In Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, supplying Working Parties. Major McConnell, C.A. proceeded on Command as Camp Commandant of Forward Area with Headquarters at ALBERT.
34 O.R. Reinforcements were received.

Thu., Oct 5, 1916

OCTOBER 5th. Orders were received to take over front line and relieve the 43rd. Battalion. The O.C., a party of Company Officers, N.C.Os. and Scouts proceeded to the front to look over the ground and obtain information. While some of the party were at Battn. Hdqrs. a shell burst near the entrance to the dug-out and our Scout Officer, Lieut. Percy Ross, who had just obtained his commission was killed, and three Actg. Company Commanders, Lieuts. E. C. Evans, C. B. Topp, and J. K. Matheson, were wounded.

The same evening the Battalion relieved the 43rd. Battalion in the Sector from the West Miraumont Road to 23 Road inclusive.

Fri., Oct 6, 1916

OCTOBER 6th. In the line. Early in the morning of the 6th a German attack was made on our Bombing Post in Kenora Trench which was repulsed. On the same night a Bombing Party was sent out West Miraumont Road proceeding a distance of 200 yards but found no trace of the enemy.

Sat., Oct 7, 1916

OCTOBER 7th. Relieved by the Royal Canadian Regiment and the 49th. Battn. and proceeded into Brigade Reserve CHALK PITS.

Sun., Oct 8, 1916

OCTOBER 8TH. At 9 am. urgent orders were received to return to Forward Area and to go into close Support in FABEC [*FABECK*] GRABEN TRENCH. The Battalion moved immediately and reached SUNKEN ROAD when orders were received to occupy MACDONNELL ROAD and CENTRE WAY. The same evening the Battalion took over the front line relieving the R.C.R. and 49th. Battn.

On the previous night a Bombing Post in KENORA TRENCH had been driven in and our bombers immediately pushed forward and reoccupied it again.

Mr. R. Willcock, Actg. O.C. "B" Coy. and Mr. D. F. Small were wounded.

Mon., Oct 9, 1916

OCTOBER 9th. An unusual incident happened [*happened*] in that the enemy sent out three parties bearing Red Cross flags and as there were a number of our wounded between the lines Mr. Montgomery took out a party of Stretcher Bearers and proceeded in bringing in eleven casualties belonging to the R.C.R. 49th, and 43rd. Battns., including Captain purvis of the 43rd. Battn. whose foot had been shot off, and who had been dressed by enemy Stretcher Bearers.

On the evening of the 9th the Battalion was relieved by the 1st and 2nd C.M.Rs. relief being completed by 7.45 pm., and marched back to TARA HILL.

CASUALTIES during period 2nd. to 9th October, were as follows:

	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>		
Officers-----	1	5		
O.R.-----	23	65		
	<hr/>			
TOTAL	24	70	TOTAL	94

OCTOBER 9TH. PROMOTIONS

Continued.

Captain S. C. Norsworthy	to be Major
Lieut. S. J. Mathewson,	„ Captain
„ J. A. Mathewson,	„ „
„ E. C. Evans,	„ „

HONOURS & AWARDS

The Battalion received the following awards for the Operations near Courcellette 15th/16th September.

Awarded: Military Cross.

Captain	S. C. Norsworthy,
„	R. L. H. Ewing,
„	S. J. Mathewson,
Lieut.	R. Willoock,
„	J. K. Matheson,

Awarded: D.C.M.

418794	A/CSM. Riddell, G. T.
419010	Sergt. Owsten, Chas.

Awarded: Military Medal.

[418628]	419628 Sergt. W. Jamieson.	135376 L/Sgt. Jupe, E.
	418096 " H.E. Cook,	418753 Cpl. Morrison, L.A.
[418126]	418125 " H. Conlan,	418737 Pte. Papps, V.
	419091 A/CSM. W. Westwood,	418427 A/CSM. Mein, P.
	418557 Cpl. H. T. Clark	418018 A/Sgt. Hamer, H.
	418437 Sergt. K. Matheson.	

Tue., Oct 10, 1916

OCTOBER 10TH. Marched via SENLIS to WARLOY and spent the night and the following day in billets.

Lieut. J. M. Forgie was taken on Strength of the Battalion, but left On Command at Base acting as Conducting Officer.

3 O.R. reinforcements were received.

Wed., Oct 11, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Oct 12, 1916

OCTOBER 12TH. Battalion left WARLOY AT 1 pm. and marched via VADENCOURT – CONTAY – HARRISART – to VAL DE MAISON. Spent the night under canvas

Fri., Oct 13, 1916

OCTOBER 13TH. Battalion marched via TALMAS – HAVERNAS – CANAPLES – HAL-LOY to BERTEAUCOURT where we remained in billets for three days.

Sat., Oct 14, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Oct 15, 1916

OCTOBER 15TH. Officer reinforcements: Lieut. F. D. Macfie.

Mon., Oct 16, 1916

OCTOBER 16TH. Battalion left BERTEAUCOURT at 8 am. and marched to RIDEAUCOURT via ST. LEGER and DOMART. Remaining there until October 20th. 31 O.R. reinforcements were received.

Tue., Oct 17, 1916

OCTOBER 17TH. Sergeant O. B. Jones was granted a commission dated 15th Sept.

Wed., Oct 18, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Thu., Oct 19, 1916

OCTOBER 19TH. The following officer reinforcements were received.

Lieut. McNaughton, J.	appointed	Machine Gun Officer
„ Stewart, J.C.	„	Scout Officer
„ Trout, C.B.	attached to	"B" Company

Fri., Oct 20, 1916

OCTOBER 20TH. Battalion left RIDEAUCOURT and marched to BEALCOURT via PROUVILLE and MAZICOURT and went into billets.

Major S. C. Norsworthy, (wounded) Lieut C. B. Topp, (wounded) and Lieut. J. M. Forgie, (Sick) were transferred to England.

Sat., Oct 21, 1916

OCTOBER 21ST. Marched via FROHEN LA GRAND – VILLERS L'HOPITAL – VACQUERIE DE BOUCQ – LIGNY SUR CHANCE – NUNC and went into billets at MONCHEUX.

Sun., Oct 22, 1916

OCTOBER 22ND. Battalion left MONCHEUX at 9 am. and marched to MINGOVILLE via MAIZIERES – PENIN – TINQUES, and went into billets.

Mon., Oct 23, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Tue., Oct 24, 1916

OCTOBER 24TH. Lieut. E. W. Auld reported to Battalion and was appointed Signalling Officer.

Lieut. R. Willcock was transferred to England- wounded.

Wed., Oct 25, 1916

OCTOBER 25TH. Battalion moved to Divisional Reserve at BOIS DES ALLEUX and were billeted in huts, remaining until October 28th.

Thu., Oct 26, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Oct 27, 1916

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Oct 28, 1916

OCTOBER 28TH. Lieut. J. L. Waller, Lieut. E. G. Campbell, transferred to England, Sick. Lieut. Montgomery appointed Scout Officer.

Battalion left BOIS DES ALLEUX and moved up to NEUVILLE ST. VAAST, and spent the night in caves and in cellars.

Casualties 1 O.R. wounded.

Sun., Oct 29, 1916

OCTOBER 29TH. Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. on Left Sector of Brigade Frontage, on front of the village of NEUVILLE ST.VAAST, taking over the line from La Salle Trench on the Left to Vernon Trench on the Right. B, D, and C Coys. in the front line, A Company in Support. Relief was completed by 3 pm.

Casualties 1 O.R. wounded.

Mon., Oct 30 & Tue., Oct 31, 1916

OCTOBER 30/31st. In the line. The following officers were transferred to England.

Lieut. A. J. Perks (sick)

„ S. M. Bosworth, transferred to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.

Geo.S. Cantlie

.....Lieut. Col.

Commanding 42nd Battn.

Canadian Expeditionary Force

Wed., Nov 1 & Thu., Nov 2, 1916

NOVEMBER 1st & 2nd. In the line. 10 O.R. Reinforcements were received. Major C.A.McConnell appointed Major of Aubigny and Savy.

Fri., Nov 3, 1916

NOVEMBER 3rd. The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. in left Sub-section, and moved to Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaast.

Sat., Nov 4 to Wed., Nov 8, 1916

NOVEMBER 4th to 8th. In Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaast, and furnished working parties. Casualties 1 O.R. Killed and 4 O.R. wounded. Took over the Front Line on the night of the 8th, relieving the P.P.C.L.I.

Wed., Nov 8, to Sun., Nov 12, 1916

NOVEMBER 8th to 12th. In the trenches. Lieuts. Grenier and Fauteaux (?) were transferred to 22nd Battalion. Lieut. H.E. Hilton, 7th Canadian Trench Mortar Battery, struck off strength of Unit. 7 O.R. Reinforcements were received.

Mon., Nov 13, 1916

NOVEMBER 13th. The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved to Divisional Reserve at Bois-des-alleux. Casualties on preceding tour, 1 O.R. Killed, and 2 O.R. wounded.

Tue., Nov 14, 1916

NOVEMBER 14th. 3 O.R. Reinforcements were received.
promotion. Capt. S.J. Mathewson to be Actg/Major

Wed., Nov 15 to Fri., Nov 17, 1916

NOVEMBER 15th/17th In Divisional Reserve.

Sat., Nov 18, 1916

NOVEMBER 18th. The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the left sub-section.
Promotions. Capt. R.L.H. Ewing to be Temp/Major 3-7-16.
Capt. E.R. Pease to be Temp/Major 3-7-16.
Capt. C.B. Wilson (deceased) to be Temp/Major 3-7-16

Sun., Nov 19, 1916

NOVEMBER 19th. Received 1 O.R. Reinforcement.

Mon., Nov 20, 1916

NOVEMBER 20th. Lieut.Col.Cantlie proceeded on a course to Can. Corps. Headquarters.
Major R.H.L. Ewing appointed acting C.O. in his absence.

Tue., Nov 21, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Wed., Nov 22, 1916

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Thu., Nov 23, 1916

NOVEMBER 23rd Relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. in the left Sub-section, and moved to Brigade Reserve, Neuville St Vaast.

Fri., Nov 24 to Mon., Nov 27, 1916

NOVEMBER 24th./27th Furnished working parties from Neuville St Vaast. 22 O.R. Reinforcements were received.

Tue., Nov 28, 1916

NOVEMBER 28th. Moved from Neuville St Vaast and took over left sub-section, relieving the P.P.C.L.I.

Promotions. Lieut.C.B.Topp to be Captain, 16-9-16.

Lieut.E.B.Finley, to be acting Captain, 16-10-16.

Wed., Nov 29 & Thu., Nov 30, 1916

NOVEMBER 29th & 30th In the line. Lieut.C.S.Martin returned to Battalion, and was posted to "D" Coy. Lieut.Stewart,R.W. reported, and was temporarily posted to "B" Coy.

Geo.S. Cantlie

Lt.Col,

42nd Bn. R.H.C.

Sheet 1

Fri., Dec 1 & Sat., Dec 2, 1916

DECEMBER 1-2nd 1916. In the trenches – Left sub-section- LA FOLIE SECTOR
Casualties for the tour:-

2 O.R. wounded.

Sun., Dec 3, 1916

DECEMBER 3rd. 1916.

The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and moved back into Divisional Reserve at BOIS-DES-ALLEUX. Lieut.P.Macdougall reported back to the Battalion, and was posted to Headquarters.

Mon., Dec 4 to Wed., Dec 6, 1916

DECEMBER 4-6. 1916.

In Divisional Reserve. Training was carried on during period of rest, special attention being given to instructions in bombing, about 100 O.R. attended the four day course at the Brigade Bombing School. 12 men per Company were also detailed daily to take special course in wiring.

Thu., Dec 7, 1916

DECEMBER 7th. 1916.

In the morning the Battalion was inspected by Act. Brigadier. Lieut-Col.W.Griesbach. The following Officer reinforcements were received.

Lieut.A.S.Cole.	Lieut. J.T.Downey.
Lieut.F.C.Gillingwater.	Lieut.A.J.McIntyre.
Lieut.F.H.Pond.	Lieut.F.L.Phillips.
Lieut.M.A.Orford.	

Fri., Dec 8, 1916

DECEMBER 8th 1916.

The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the trenches on the night of the 8th taking over left sub-section. 150 un-trained O.R. Reinforcements were received, and were attached to the 7th Brigade Training Battalion for instruction.

Sat., Dec 9 to Wed., Dec 13, 1916

DECEMBER 9-13. 1916.

In the trenches. All available men were employed on constructing deep dug out in P.75 and clearing and revetting trenches, in addition to their regular duties. On the night of the 11th Lieuts.Montgomery and MacDonald with a small party proceeded out and bombed the enemy post between Duffield and Durand craters. The enemy retaliated with hand grenades and Lieut Montgomery was slightly wounded.

On the following night an organized attack continued.

was made on the same post. [Inserted: *in co-operation with the Stokes.*] A few bombs were thrown by our party and the sentries immediately retired. Lieut. MacDonald, Bombing Officer, and 1 Other Rank then entered the post and followed for a short distance.

Casualties for the tour:- Lieut L.C.Montgomery
& 5 Other Ranks.

Wed., Dec 13, 1916

DECEMBER 13th.1916.

The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Brigade Reserve,Neuville-St-Vaast.
Capt.A.A.McKay transferred to No. C.C.C.S. [*Canadian Casualty Clearing Station*] Poperinghe and Capt.W.Hale reported and was attached as Medical Officer.

Thu., Dec 14, 1916

DECEMBER 14th 1916.

Lieut.Col.G.S.Cantlie ,proceeded on leave; MajorR.L.H. Ewing taking command of the Battalion in his absence.

Fri., Dec 15 to Mon., Dec 18, 1916

DECEMBER 15-18.1916.

In Brigade Reserve ,Neuville-St-Vaast. Furnished working parties for the left section.
Casualties:- 4. O.R. wounded.

Tue., Dec 19, 1916

DECEMBER 19 – 1916.

In the afternoon Battalion took over front line trenches in the left sub-section,relieving the P.P.C.L.I.

Wed., Dec 20, 1916

[*Transcriber: there is no entry for this date*]

Thu., Dec 21 to Sat., Dec 23, 1916

DECEMBER 21-23.1916.

In the trenches. Work was carried on clearing and revetting the P.Line and saps leading to craters. On the night of the 22nd – 75 O.R. from the Training Battalion came up to the trenches for instruction,remaining for 48 hours. During their tour good progress was made in consolidating the new crater between Tidza & Birkin.
Casualties for the tour- NIL.

Sun., Dec 24, 1916

DECEMBER 24-1916.

The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Divisional Reserve at BOIS-DES-ALLEUX

Mon., Dec 25 to Thu., Dec 28, 1916

DECEMBER 25-28.1916.

The usual training was carried on during this period. Christmas was observed on the 25th. The afternoon was given over to the

Battalion as a half holiday, and all companies had their Christmas Dinners in the huts, ~~and~~ In the evening all ranks attended a most enjoyable performance given by the P.P.C.L.I. Concert Company.

continued.

Sheet 3

Fri., Dec 29, 1916

DECEMBER 29th-1916.

The Battalion relieved P.P.C.L.I. and took over the trenches from left sub-section.

Sat., Dec 30 & Sun., Dec 31, 1916

DECEMBER 30-31.1916.

~~Lieut~~ In the Line. Lieut.Col.Floyd 36th Reserve Bn reported and was attached for instruction. The following day he was admitted to hospital,suffering from a sprained wrist.
Casualties:- 1 O.R. killed. 1 O.R. wounded.

Geo.S. Cantlie

.....Lieut. Col.

Commanding 42nd Battn.

Canadian Expeditionary Force.

1917

Mon., Jan 1, 1917

At 1.55 am. an organized raiding party consisting of Lieuts. MacNaughton and Martin, Sergts. Bealer, Smith, and Corporal Plowe, Ptes. Maquard, Sedgwick, Richardson and Hepburn left Common Sap. Lieut. MacNaughton went out in advance and placed a covering party of bombers about five yards in front of the German wire in the centre of the gap between Common and Birkin craters. Lieut. Martin, followed by Sergt. Bealer, Sergt. Smith and Pte. Maquard, and on reaching the covering party they were joined by Lieut. MacNaughton. The party then proceeded round the lip of Common Crater. They worked their way through the enemy wire and entered his trench at approximately S.28.a.45,948. They proceeded along the trench for a short distance, and on account of the mud being so heavy it was decided to split the party, and move along the parapet and parados. Lieut. MacNaughton and Sergt. Bealer followed the parados, and Lieut. Martin, Sergt. Smith and Pte. Maquard the parapet, until they got to a point near a junction with a communication trench immediately to the right of Birkin Crater where an enemy post was suspected. After waiting at this junction for about 20 minutes, two enemy sentries were observed, one in an improvised shelter, the other in the trench, the latter a moving patrol. As the sentry approached the raiding party, Sergt. Bealer slipped into the trench, held him up at the point of a revolver and forced him to surrender. At the same time Pte. Maquard assuming to be the Sergt. Major called the second sentry from his shelter. The latter came to the entrance and finding himself surrounded dropped his rifle, and threw up his hands. The party then proceeded back and reached our trenches with two prisoners at 3.05 am. without casualties. Both prisoners belonged to the 23rd. R.I.R.

Among other the following congratulatory messages were received:

From Canadian Corps Commander:-

"The Corps Commander wishes to congratulate the 42nd. Battalion on its most successful and enterprising raid"

From G.O.C. 3rd. Canadian Division:-

"Please convey to O.C. 42nd. Battalion and to those who took part hearty congratulations and good luck".

Tue., Jan 2, 1917

Major S. C. Norsworthy returned from England and took command of the Battalion.

Wed., Jan 3, 1917

The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaaste.
[Neuville St. Vaast]

Continued

Lieut. R. Wilcock returned to the Battalion from England and was posted to B Company. Lieut. L. C. Montgomery was discharged from hospital.

250 O.R. Reinforcements were received.

Thu., Jan 4, 1917

[Transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Jan 5 to Sun., Jan 7, 1917

In Brigade Reserve. Furnished working parties for left section.
1 O.R. wounded.

Mon., Jan 8, 1917

The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the trenches taking over the left sub-section. B.S.M. Macfarlane was slightly wounded, and admitted to hospital.

Tue., Jan 9 & Wed., Jan 10, 1917

In the trenches. All available men, over and above those required for sentry duty were used as working parties, building dug-outs and clearing and revetting trenches.

2 O.R. Slightly wounded.

Thu., Jan 11, 1917

About 5.30 pm. a patrol consisting of Lieut. Studd and 4 O.R. proceeded out from gap between Birkin and Patricia craters and worked their way through three lines of German wire and entered a sap leading to the enemy post on Patricia Crater. The party rushed this post but found it unoccupied. They remained in the sap about an hour and were forced to return on account of the bright moonlight.

Fri., Jan 12, 1917

Decorations were awarded to the undermentioned O.R. for the part they took in the raid on the morning of January 1st., as follows:-

MILITARY MEDAL

418710 Sergt. H. V. A. Bealer,
418372 „ G. Smith,
418698 Corpl. A.W. Plowe,

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

427024 Pte. A. Maquard,

Sat., Jan 13, 1917

The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and went back into Divisional Reserve at BOIS DES ALLEUX.

Casualties for the preceeding tour 5 O.R. wounded.

Sun., Jan 14, 1917

The usual clean up parades were held, deficiencies. and Church Parades in the morning, and bath and pay parades during the day.

Mon., Jan 15 to Wed., Jan 17, 1917

January 15th, 1917 to 17th. Training was carried on daily. Special classes were organized for instruction in Bombing and Wiring.

Thu., Jan 18, 1917

On the afternoon of the 18th the Battalion took over the trenches from the P.P.C.L.I. The same day 11 N.C.O. reinforcements arrived from England and were taken on strength supernumary to the establishment.

Fri., Jan 19 to Mon., Jan 22, 1917

In the trenches. Special attention was paid to wiring the Battalion frontage. The saps leading from the observation line to the craters were wired on both sides and the post made more secure. The weather was cold and work was also carried on repairing and revetting trenches.

January 20th. Lieut. G.H. Savage arrived from England and was taken on strength.

January 21st. Lieut. G. S. Ashby reported to the Battalion on transfer from the 14th Canadian Battalion, and was taken on strength.

Tue., Jan 23, 1917

The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. on the night of the 23rd. and moved into Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaaste. [*Neuville St. Vaast*]

Lieut. K.A. Campbell was shot through the head by an enemy sniper on the morning of the 23rd. and was instantly killed, while standing in the Vernon post.

Lieut. Col. G. S. Cantlie and Major S. J. Matthewson were struck off strength on transfer to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe, for the purpose of going on leave to Canada.

Casualties for the tour.	Killed	1 Officer	2 O.R.
	Died of wounds		1 O.R.
	Wounded		7 O.R.

Wed., Jan 24 to Sat., Jan 27, 1917

In Brigade Reserve. Furnished about 400 men per day for Brigade working parties, on the left sub-section.

On the 26th. Captain C. B. Topp and Lieutenant J.T.L.Shum arrived back from England, and were taken on strength. The same day Major C.C.McClennan was struck off strength on transfer to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.

Sun., Jan 28, 1917

The Battalion moved into the trenches taking over the line from the P.P.C.L.I.

Mon., Jan 29 to Wed., Jan 31, 1917

January 29th-30th-31st. Work was carried on wiring the "P" Line, and repairing wire on the Battalion frontage. Other parties were furnished re-building and enlarging deep dugouts on the left company frontage. Special work was also carried on repairing and revetting P.74 and P.75.

January 31st. The following additional decorations were awarded to the undermentioned Officers for the part they took in the raid of the morning of January 1st.1917.

THE MILITARY CROSS.

Lieut. J. McNaughton,
,, C.S.Martin,

Casualties for the 3 Days	Killed	2 O.R.
	Died of wounds	1 O.R.
	Wounded	2 O.R.

(Signed) *S.C. norsworthy*

Thu., Feb 1, 1917

In the trenches. Left Sub-section of LA FOLIE Sector, North-East of Neuville St.Vaast.

Lieut. C. F. Gifford proceeded On Command as Instructor, Infantry Training School,Harve

Lieut. R. G. Arcand, struck off strength, detached to General List,Headquarters, C.T.D.
[*Canadian Training Depot*] Shorncliffe.

Fri., Feb 2, 1917

The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I., and moved back to Divisional Reserve, BOIS DES ALLEUX.

Total casualties for the tour:	2 O.R. Killed
	1 O.R. Died of wounds
	4 O.R. Wounded.

Sat., Feb 3 to Tue., Feb 6, 1917

Training was carried out during the period we were in reserve. Usual Pay and Church Parades were held. Baths were not available being out of order owing to extreme cold weather.

418455 L/Cpl. Aldridge, (Attached to Brigade Bombers) was awarded Military Medal for "Bravery in the Field"

Wed., Feb 7, 1917

On the evening of the 7th the Battalion moved into the trenches relieving the P.P.C.L.I.

Thu., Feb 8 to Mon., Feb 12, 1917

In the trenches. Work was carried on enlarging and improving deep dugouts, repairing trenches, etc. Due to the extreme cold weather and frozen condition of the ground little work could be done revetting. Special parties were engaged nightly in wiring the P Line and entrances to the Tunnel.

Major Bullock Webster of the 54th Reserve Bn. was attached for six days Course of Instruction.

On the afternoon of the 12th 1 O.R. was killed and 4 O.R. wounded by a direct hit on trench P.75. The same night 1 O.R. was killed and 2 O.R. wounded while wiring along P 78 by an enemy dart.

Tue., Feb 13, 1917

At 9.15 O'Clock on the morning of the 13th, the Battalion carried out a successful raid on the enemy's trenches.

Continued.

OBJECT:- To inflict casualties, destroy dugouts and obtain identification.

Frontage covered 275 yards.

Enemy wire and crater posts were damaged by organized shoot with Stokes and 2" Trench Mortars for several days previous, and our wire was cut on the night previous to the raid, and left in position ready to be withdrawn.

At 9.13 am. a barrage of No.23 Mills Rifle Grenades was opened by 19 Rifle Grenadiers stationed in our Crater Posts.

At 9.15 am. Artillery barrage opened and 2 Officers and 48 O.R. divided into four parties raided enemy crater posts and observation line trench opposite Durand, Duffield, Grange, and Patricia Craters.

Party "D" Lieut. Gillingwater and 14 O.R. crossed between Durand and Duffield Craters. While crossing Lieut. Gillingwater was wounded in the side by a bomb but continued with his party which, on reaching the enemy Observation Line divided as arranged, a party of 7 under Corpl. Baird moving to the right, the balance – Lieut. Gillingwater and 7 O.R. – to the left. The latter met with determined resistance from an enemy party using rifle fire and cylindrical stick bombs. Lieut. Gillingwater, pushing past his bayonet man, led the attack on this party, two of whom he killed with his revolver before being again severely wounded in the foot, leg and arm, by a bomb. The enemy then fled leaving two dead in the trench. No. 193598 Pte. C. L. Myles carried out Lieut. Gillingwater on his back, while Ptes. Whitehead, C.A. Myles, Scout Sedgwick, and one other remained as covering party. As the covering party were withdrawing a party of Huns who had just emerged from a dugout in a cross trench attacked them with cylindrical stick bombs but very fortunately they were joined at this moment by Lieut. Smythe, C.F.A., who, after reporting the correctness of the barrage to his Group Headquarters, had pushed forward in order to gain better observation. Lieut. Smythe led the party in an attack on the Huns killing two and wounding another with his revolver. The remainder of the Huns fled. The dugout, which proved to be a large one with five entrances, and plentiful evidence, in the shape of movement inside, and rifles stacked outside, of being occupied, was then dealt with, with No. 5 Mills Grenades and two Stokes Bombs. The party then withdrew by point of entry.

Casualties ... Lieut. Gillingwater and 2 O.R. wounded.

The right section of the party under Corpl. Baird pushed forward around the rear of Duffield Crater to enemy post which they found unoccupied, but smoke was seen coming from the Chimney of a nearby dugout. Mills bombs were dropped down the chimney and Stokes in the entrance. After establishing touch with the party on their right, the section withdrew by point of entry,

Continued.

Cpl. Baird carrying out Lieut. Gillingwater, who had been handed over to him by Pte. Myles.

Party "C" 9 O.R. under Sergt. Rowland, crossed between Duffield and Durand Craters and turning right proceeded along trench until they reached a large dugout with three entrances. One Hun was emerging with a rifle in his hand, and as he failed to respond quickly to an order to surrender, Sergt. Rowland shot and killed him. The dugout was then thoroughly bombed with "P" bombs, Mills No.5 Grenades and three Stokes Bombs. Party then proceeded along trench until touch was effected with parties on both flanks, after which they returned by point of entry, after exploding a fourth Stoke bomb in the trench.

Party "B" 12 O.R. under Sergt. G. Smith, leaving from Patricia Post No.2 entered enemy lines at S.28.a.30.98 and proceeded left until a junction was effected with party "C" on their left. They passed 3 dugout entrances, in all of which "P" bombs followed by Stokes bombs were thrown. They encountered no enemy in the trench, there were no enemy in the stairways of the dugouts, and they are unable to state definitely that they were occupied, although they appeared to be good deep dugouts with timbered entrances. Party returned to our lines by Patricia No. 2 at 9.23 am. There were no casualties.

"A" party consisting of Lieut. Small and 13 O.R., leaving from Patricia No.1 Post entered enemy line at about S.28.a.45.85 where the party divided. Party of 5 under Sergeant Muxworthy proceeded to the right as far as fork in trench where two entrances to deep dugouts, which had every appearance of being much used, were bombed with "P" bombs and Stokes. This party as arranged halted at this point, forming a covering party until 9.27 (2 minutes after the hour fixed for general withdrawal) when they returned to our lines through point of entry.

Balance of party under Lieut. Small proceeded left to a point where a loop in the trench exists (dimly shown in aeroplane photograph, dated 23.1.17 and which had not been expected). Party consisting of Scout Wilson, Pte. C. Dion and Bomber McAndrew went to the right, and the remainder under Lieut. Small to the left. The party under Scout Wilson came upon two Huns standing in a small shelter off the trench, one of whom Pte. Dion, who was leading, shot and wounded in the leg, immediately after which both surrendered. A little further on the party came upon a deep dugout which was dealt with by No.5 Mills bombs and Stokes. The party under Lieut. Small also came upon a deep dugout with one Hun taking shelter in the entrance. He was summoned to come out but appeared to reach for a bomb and Lieut. Small shot him. The dugout which had several entrances was treated with P bombs, Mills, and Stokes.

Continued.

Lieut. Small's and Scout Wilson's parties re-united at the North end of the loop, and almost immediately afterwards came in touch with party "B" under Sergt. Smith. They then returned to our lines through Grange Crater. No Huns were seen in the trench by this party except the two who were made prisoners, and the one killed in dugout entrance.

Casualties 2 O.R. slightly wounded.

Total Casualties:	Lieut. Gillingwater, Severely wounded
	„ Small, Slightly wounded
	4 Other Ranks Wounded
	4 Other Ranks Slightly Wounded (Remained at duty)

Following recommendations were submitted:

For MILITARY CROSS

Lieut. F. C. Gillingwater,
 „ D. F. Small,

For VICTORIA CROSS

193598 Pte. C. L. Myles,

For D. C. M.

418316 Sgt. H. Rowland,
 418372 „ George Smith, M.M.,
 427567 Pte. W. G. [D] Whitehead,
 193455 „ C. A. Myles,

For M. M.

141158 Pte. (Act.Cpl.) W.H. [R] Baird,
 736129 „ (Act.Sergt) R.D. Muxworthy,

Recommendations submitted continued:

For M. M.

441875 Pte. F. H. Wilson, (?)
 794262 „ C. Dion,
 409583 „ A. M. McAndrew,
 418723 Cpl. J. W. Cave,
 [418240] 418244 Pte. W. Handley,

Wed., Feb 14, 1917

On night of the 14th the Battalion was relieved in the trenches by the 22nd. Can. Battalion, and moved into new huts at BOIS DES ALLEUX.

Total casualties for the tour:	3	O.R.	Killed
	1	O.R.	Died of wounds
	Lt. Gillingwater and 17	O.R.	Wounded
	„ Small	„ 4	O.R. Slightly Wounded
			(remained at duty)

Thu., Feb 15, 1917

Battalion left the huts at BOIS DES ALLEUX at 11. am. and marched to training area at DIVION, via CAMBLAIN L'ABBE – EXTREE – CAUCHIE – RANCHICOURT, and HOU-DAIN, arriving in billets about 5 pm.

Fri., Feb 16, 1917

General Nivelle, Commander-in-Chief of the French Armies of the North and North-east, visited Canadian Corps and inspected the Battalion along with the other Battalions of the Brigade, at 11 am.

Sat., Feb 17, 1917

Usual parades were held for deficiencies etc.

Sun., Feb 18, 1917

Church Parades were held in the Y.M.C.A. Hut, DIVION, B and C Companies at 10 am. A and D Companies and Headquarters at 10.45 am.

The following decorations were awarded: The Distinguished Conduct Medal

418710 Sergeant Bealer, H.V.A.

418239 C.S.M. Kennedy, G.W.

Continued.

Major Bullock Webster ceased to be attached and returned to England.

Mon., Feb 19, 1917

Special training was begun in accordance with Syllabus. Training hours daily 8.45 to 11.45 am. in the morning, and 1.30 to 4.30 in the afternoon, special attention being given to the new platoon organization, and a certain portion of each days training devoted to its formation

Major E. C. Weyman reported from England and was taken on strength of the Battalion as Supernumerary.

Following honours were published;

Mentioned in Sir Douglas Haig's despatches dated 13.11.16, for "Distinguished and gallant services, and devotion to duty"

Lieut. Col. Cantlie, G. S. D.S.O.

Major McLennan, B. D.S.O.

Captain Wilson, C.B. (Killed in Action)

Lieut. Routledge, A. (Died of Wounds)

Tue., Feb 20, 1917

In the morning training was carried out in accordance with Syllabus. Bath parades to HOUDAIN were held in the afternoon.

Wed., Feb 21, 1917

On completion of the Bombing Pit, instructional classes were commenced in throwing Hand and Rifle Grenades, under the supervision of the Bombing Officer.

Thu., Feb 22, 1917

The Motor Machine Gun Coy's. range was placed at our disposal and Lewis Gun Crews from all companies were given instruction and practice in firing the Lewis Gun while on the move.

Fri., Feb 23, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sat., Feb 24, 1917

Undermentioned decorations were awarded for the raid of the 13th inst.

MILITARY MEDAL

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

418316 Sergt. H. Rowland,
427567 Pte. W. Whitehead,
193455 „ C.A. Myles,

418372 Sgt. Geo. Smith,

Continued

In the afternoon of the 24th we defeated the Royal Canadian Regiment in the Divisional Football Competition. Score: 4 – Nil.

Sun., Feb 25, 1917

Brigade parade was held for the purpose of presenting decorations. Corps and Divisional Commanders were present. The following members of the 42nd. Bn. were presented with ribbons by the Corps Commander:

	Major	S. C. Norsworthy,	M.C.
	„	R.L.H. Ewing.	„
	Captain	J. K. Beveridge,	„
	Lieut.	J. McNaughton,	„
	„	C. S. Martin,	„
	„	R. Willcock,	„
418239	Coy. S.M.	Kennedy,	G.W. D.C.M.–M.M.
418010	Sergt.	Owsten,	C.A. M.M.
418009	„	Tank,	R. M.M.
418372	„	Smith,	Geo. M.M. & Bar to M.M.
418316	„	Rowland,	H. M.M.
418698	A/Sergt.	Plowe,	A.W. M.M.
50754	A/Corpl.	Urquhart,	J. M.M.
427024	Private	Maquard,	A. Bar to M.M.
427567	„	Whitehead,	W. M.M.

Sun., Feb 25, 1917

In the afternoon our Football team defeated the 49th. Battalion in the Divisional Football Competition. Score 3 – 0.

Mon., Feb 26, 1917

In the morning Training was carried out in accordance with Syllabus. In the afternoon the Battalion marched to MARLE-LES-MINES and attended football game between our Battalion Football Team and the winner of the 9th Brigade. The game ended in our favour after 20 minutes overtime. Score: 2 – 1.

Tue., Feb 27, 1917

Lieut. D. W. G. Hale arrived as Reinforcement from 148th Battalion and was taken on strength.

Wed., Feb 28, 1917

In the morning the Battalion attended demonstration by the special platoon at the practice trenches near BRUAY. In the afternoon a route march was held to the football field near MARLE-LES-MINES for the final game in the Divisional Football Competition. The game was hotly contested and resulted in a win for our team after 20 minutes overtime play. Score 1 – 0
After the game the team was presented with a silver Bugle by the Divisional Commander.

Lieuts. G. Sheffield and A. W. Haldimand arrived as Reinforcements from the 148th Battalion and were taken on strength.

(Signed) *S.C. Norsworthy*

Major

Comdg 42nd Can Bn

Thu., Mar 1, 1917

At DIVION. During our stay here the companies were formed up into three platoons each, according to the new platoon organization. The training consisted of tactical exercises over taped trenches in the morning, the afternoon being devoted to Squad Drill, Platoon Drill, Route Marches, and Specialists' training. Lewis Gunners were trained at Eaton Machine Gun Coy. range La Cauchiette, and Bombers and Rifle Grenadiers had practice on alternate days at bombing pit dug in rear of our Transport Lines.

Two football matches between Officers were played in the afternoon, the P.P.C.L.I. defeating the R.C.R., and the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion defeating the 49th Cdn. Bn. Score: 2-1

Lieut. Pond, F.H. and Major McConnell, C.A. were struck off strength, being transferred to England, sick.

Fri., Mar 2, 1917

Captain J. A. Mathewson rejoined Battalion from England.

Sat., Mar 3, 1917

A football match between the Officers of the P.P.C.L.I. and the 42nd. Cdn. Bn. resulted in a win for the former, score 2-0.

The undermentioned decorations were awarded:

THE MILITARY CROSS

Lieut. F. C. Gillingwater,

THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

193598 Pte. Myles, C.L.

Sun., Mar 4, 1917

Church parades were held at Y.M.C.A. Hut and R.C. Church in DIVION.

Mon., Mar 5, 1917

The Battalion carried on usual training.

Tue., Mar 6, 1917

Major E. C. Wyman (Supernumerary) struck on strength on proceeding to 3rd. Cdn. Entrenching Battalion.

1 O.R. Reinforcement arrived.

Wed., Mar 7 & Thu., Mar 8, 1917

The Battalion carried on the usual training.

Lieut.Col. A. A. Magee, O.C., 20th Reserve Bn., Shoreham, [Inserted: *is attached*] for a months tour.

Fri., Mar 9, 1917

In the afternoon the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was reviewed by Sir Robert Borden, Premier of Canada. The Brigadier commended the Brigade on its showing.

Sat., Mar 10, 1917

The Battalion carried out the usual training.

Sun., Mar 11, 1917

Church Parades were held at the Y.M.C.A. Hut and R.C. Parish Church, DIVION.

Lieut. E. J. Donnelly (148th Cdn. Bn.) and 43 O.R. reinforcements reported and were taken on strength.

Mon., Mar 12, 1917

Lieut. L. H. Biggar (148th Cdn. Bn.) reported and was taken on strength.

Tue., Mar 13, 1917

Major General L. J. Lipsett, C.M.G. Cmdg. 3rd. Canadian Division, inspected the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in attack over taped trenches.

Wed., Mar 14, 1917

Sir Julian Byng, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., M.V.O. cmdg. Canadian Corps, inspected the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in attack in the morning. In the afternoon the Battalion marched to BRUAY Theatre to attend a Cinema Programme.

Lieut. H. L. Hoyles (1st Reinforcing Coy. 5th R.H.C.) reported and was taken on strength.

Thu., Mar 15 to Sat., Mar 17, 1917

Usual training was carried on by the Battalion.

Sun., Mar 18, 1917

Church parades were held as usual.

Mon., Mar 19, 1917

Lieut. J. deLotbiniere proceeded on temporary duty as Town Major of CALOUNE-RICOUART.

Tue., Mar 20, 1917

The Battalion (less C and D Coy.) had received orders to move to Dumbell Camp, South of VILLERS AU BOIS, but at the last moment these were cancelled owing to lack of accommodation.

Wed., Mar 21, 1917

The Battalion (less C and D Coy.) marched to Dumbell Camp, South of VILLERS AU BOIS via RUITZ – BARLIN – BOIS D'OLHAIN – GRAND SERVINS, moving off at 10 am. and reaching destination at 5 p.m.

53 O.R. Reinforcements were received.

Thu., Mar 22, 1917

The Battalion (less C and D Coys.) relieved part of the 58th Cdn. Battalion in the front line LA FOLIE SECTOR.

Fri., Mar 23, 1917

C and D Companies marched from DIVION to Dumbell Camp via route taken by balance of Battalion two days previously.

3 O.R. Reinforcements reported.

At 3 a.m. the enemy blew a large crater on our front to the North of and adjoining DURAND. Captain C. B. Topp, Lieut. D. F. Small, and a party of Lewis Gunners immediately rushed out and occupied the highest point of our lip. The party was subject to heavy enfilade rifle fire from the vicinity of BROADMARSH, and after having remained for some time and suffered a casualty they withdrew to a less prominent position. Owing to lack of time it was impossible to put out a sap and establish posts before dawn.

The blowing of the mine itself caused us no casualties although thirty yards of our front line trench was destroyed. A party was immediately set to work to clear it out.

Lieut. L. C. Montgomery was slightly wounded while making observations of the crater, and Lieut. D. F. Small was also slightly wounded while making a reconnaissance of our lip.

During the day careful observations of the new crater were made and it was found that it extended from DURAND in a Northerly direction to a distance of about 250 yards.

At dusk our lip was scouted by a party under Lieut. A. J. McIntyre, who reported that it consisted of a series of four separate craters which merged into one. This was afterwards confirmed.

At dusk also work was begun on its consolidation. All available men from the front and support line companies, in addition to 120 men which were brought up from our reserve companies in BOIS DES ALLEUX, were put to work under the supervision of Captain Topp and Lieut. Trout. "Topp Sap" was dug, extending from our old Observation Line to the foot of the new crater. A post was also established near the Southern end.

Sat., Mar 24, 1917

On the night of the 24th 100 men were again brought up from our reserve companies to assist our Support and Front Line Companies in continuing the work of consolidation.

A large party under Lieut. H. B. Trout were distributed along under our lip and commenced the new LONGFELLOW Trench. Four further post were also got under way.

A party under Capt. E. B. Finley started on the new Communication Trench running from our old front line to a point on the new crater about 150 yards North of its Southern edge. The enemy kept up a heavy rifle fire from the vicinity of BROADMARSH and work was carried on under very trying conditions. The work was however, pushed forward with all possible speed and the consolidation was well under way before dawn.

Lieut R. W. Stuart was mortally wounded while carrying a wounded man to a place of safety, 3 O.R. were killed and 4 O.R. wounded during the operations.

Sun., Mar 25, 1917

At 3.30 in the afternoon Lieut. Stewart, R.W. died of his wounds at the 42nd. Casualty Clearing Station, Albigny.

On the night of the 25th work was continued in the consolidation of LONGFELLOW Crater. A party of 100 men were brought up from the reserve companies at BOIS DES ALLEUX to assist. All trenches and saps were deepened and the posts were more firmly established.

Lieut. McIntyre and a small party of Scouts made a reconnaissance of the Northern end of the crater and found it was unoccupied by the enemy. Wiring parties were sent out and our extreme left post and dangerous points of the lip were wired.

Mon., Mar 26, 1917

Our Snipers were very active in the early morning. Snipers plates had been put in LONGFELLOW Post No.1 during the night which enabled our Snipers to enfilade BUMP Trench, where seven hits were made in the early morning. At night consolidation of the crater was carried on large parties being again brought up from out reserve companies. The trenches and saps were deepened and improved and the new posts more firmly established. Notwithstanding the bright moonlight wiring parties managed to make our wire more secure.

Summer time came into force, the clock being advanced one hour at 11 p.m.

Tue., Mar 27, 1917

C. Coy. relieved B. Coy. in EMPIRE REDOUBT. B Coy. moving back to reserve in BOIS DES ALLEUX.

Consolidation work was carried on and posts improved. Snipers plates were set up in post No.3.

Wed., Mar 28, 1917

From No. 3 LONGFELLOW Post Snipers were able to enfilade BLURT Trench and several hundred yards of the ARTILLERIE WEG, where they had numerous targets and claimed several hits.

In the afternoon D Company moved up from Divisional reserve and relieved A Coy. in the front line, A Coy. going back to DUMBELL CAMP, BOIS DES ALLEUX.

The enemy heavily bombarded the SOMBART and P.S. Lines and LA SALLE Ave. with 77.mm. and 4.1s between 8.30 and 9. p.m. but inflicted no casualties.

Thu., Mar 29, 1917

Work was continued on the consolidation of the new crater and was commenced on a new Observation Post on LONGFELLOW Crater, between posts 2 and 3. A party of 60 men from the reserve companies were brought in and put to work under Lieut. Ewart, 7th F.C.C.E. [*Field Company Canadian Engineers*] on the new Assembly Trench extending from DUFFIELD Trench to Sap 4.

Parties were also employed in clearing out LA SALLE Ave. which had been blown in by the enemy's bombardment of the night before.

Between 11.15. and 11.45 p.m. enemy put up a heavy barrage of 77.mm. and 4.1s on our LOMBARD and P. Lines, and LA SALLE Ave., but inflicted no casualties.

Fri., Mar 30, 1917

In the early morning our Snipers were very active and made many hits from the new posts in LONGFELLOW Crater. At night work was continued on EWART Trench and in clearing out and repairing the new trenches in the vicinity of LONGFELLOW Crater which had caved in on account of heavy rains.

Sat., Mar 31, 1917

EWART Trench was completed and an old sap extending from Sap No. 1 to FINLEY Trench was reclaimed.

In addition to the work of consolidating LONGFELLOW Crater and digging Assembly trenches, parties of about 100 men were furnished daily to Brigade for completing Trench Mortar Emplacements, digging communication trenches, etc.

The following congratulatory messages were received in connection with the consolidation of LONGFELLOW Crater:

FROM: Major General Lipsett, C.M.G., Cmdg. 3rd. Canadian Division.

TO: 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade.

" Judging from the sketch it seems that the 42nd. carried out the work of consolidation with energy and success. Please convey to the C.O., 42nd. Bn. my appreciation of the way he has taken the matter in hand.,,

FROM: Brig.General A. C. Macdonell, C.M.G., Cmdg. 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade.

TO: 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

"The courage and devotion to duty of all ranks of this fine battalion has never been displayed to better advantage than in coping with the emergency created by the blowing unexpectedly of LONGFELLOW Crater. In spite of casualties the work was pushed through to a successful issue.

(Signed) *S.C. Norsworthy*

Major

Comdg 42nd Can Bn

Sun., Apr 1, 1917

At 6.45 a.m. a raid was carried out by Lieut.R.Willcock.M.C.and 30 O.R. with the object of obtaining identification and inflicting casualties. They entered the enemy lines at S.22.c.1½.2. between DURAND and DUFFIELD Craters and covered a square of trenches op-

posite LONGFELLOW Crater, formed by BATTER Trench, BUMP Trench, front line trench and a trench not named.

The 63rd Divisional Artillery furnished a box shrapnel barrage with which our Stokes Guns, Rifle Grenadiers, Vickers, Colt and Lewis Guns co-operated. The barrage continued ?????? until 7.10 a.m. rate of fire being gradually slackened. The Artillery then "stood to" until 7.20 a.m. when the Artillery barrage was put on again for one minute of intensive fire, with the object first, of inflicting casualties on enemy who might have come out of dugouts thinking everything over, and second, mystifying the enemy regarding our intentions.

The raiding party was divided into 4 small parties.

Party No.1. to form a protective block.

„ No.2 to deal with enemy front line.

„ No.3 to proceed round the S.E. and N.sides of the square.

„ No.4 to follow in rear of No.3 party as far as trench junction S.22.c.3.4 deal with dugout, return to trench junction and form protective block.

Lieut. Willcock to be between No.3 and 4 parties and to follow No.3 round the square.

Party No.1. met no enemy and encountered no dugouts. On returning however they destroyed an enemy bomb store by exploding a Stokes bomb in it. Remaining parties all encountered dugouts. In two cases enemy sentries attempted to escape [*escape*] down dugout entrances and were shot; in a number of other cases enemy had been driven into dugout entrances by our shrapnel barrage. They were all killed by the raiding party and dugouts wrecked with Mills and Stokes bombs.

Party No.3 under L/Cpl. Kelly had just returned up communication trench at junction S.22.c.2.3½. when one of our 4.5 shells exploded close by. Mr Willcock was knocked down, and one other member of the party suffered slight internal haemorrhage. This caused the party to become somewhat demoralised, seeing which, Mr Willcock took the lead.

No enemy dugouts were encountered, until turning into BATTER Trench. Under the parapet of BATTER Trench there is a large dugout with numerous entrances; Mr Willcock thought at least 8 entrances of which two had been blown in but not completely closed by our Artillery. On the stairway of each entrance there were several Germans, on whom severe casualties must have been inflicted, as revolvers, rifles and Mills bombs were fired in each. Mr Willcock is un

continued.

SHEET. 2.

able to say how many entrances were treated with Stokes Bombs, as the Stokes carrier was in rear and found it extremely difficult to keep up owing to the heavy going through the mud. BUMP Trench was found to be in very bad shape, with no revetting or bath mats. The party were prevented from proceeding far along it, owing to our left Stokes gun shooting short. They therefore left the trench and proceeded overland to front line. The four parties then returned through point of entry at 7 a.m. (exactly as planned)

One prisoner of the 3rd Coy. 262nd R.I.R. was taken.

A novel feature of the raid was the fact that a number of our men were armed with the cut down rifle, not for use in shooting rifle grenades, but with the idea that they could be used more readily in the trench for bayonet work or rifle fire, than rifles of standard length.

8 Battalion Snipers were posted in LONGFELLOW No.1.2. and 3 and in DUFFIELD post. Sniper Corporal Cave reports that during the first shoot no targets presented themselves, but he saw a Hun in addition to the one who got into our lines making his way towards us. Unfortu-

nately this man went too far to the left and was struck by a Stokes bomb. After the 10 minute interval when our Artillery opened again, a number of men were observed making their way along BATTER turning right up BUGGY towards STAUBWASSER WEG. They could be observed at 4 or 5 different points in that distance. Sniper Hale fired 24 shots from No. 3 LONGFELLOW. Sniper McGregor had 12 shots from the same post. These men are both expert snipers and had a good view [view] of their targets so there is every reason to believe that a large percentage of their shots scored hits. The Trench being blocked in several places it was necessary for these men to climb out and expose themselves. Corporal Cave reports that the shrapnel barrage on BLURT was particularly good. There was smoke emerging at 5 or 6 places presumably from dugouts. During the time the raiding party were over, there was practically no Machine Gun or Rifle fire, but between first and second shoot the enemy opened intermittent rifle fire on our crater posts. The Lewis Gun on post No. 5 our extreme north post on LONGFELLOW scored 3 hits with Lewis Gun during the raid.

The personnel of the raiding party was drawn entirely from one company ("C") commanded by Lieut. Willcock M.C.

The greatest credit is due to him for the fact that the raid went almost exactly as planned, in spite of the very heavy mud which made movement slow, and the temporary demoralisation caused by one erratic 4.5 shell. With this exception the Artillery barrage was excellent. The two Stokes Guns on the right were very satisfactory, but the left Stokes gun

Continued.

SHEET 3.

shot very short, some shots falling on our side of the crater lip.

Our casualties. 1.O.R. (walking case).

ENEMY S.O.S. At 6.45 a.m. as our party went over a white flare was put up from enemy front line, and repeated from his support line, but no Artillery or Trench Mortars responded.

The prisoner proved to be intelligent and very ready to talk, and the information obtained from him provided our Artillery with several new targets.

For this action Lieut. Willcock M.C. was later awarded a Bar to his Military Cross, and No. 193455 L/Cpl. C.A. Myles a Bar to his Military Medal. The following also received the Military Medal.

No. 419040	Corpl.	E. Greaves.
No. 418606	Pte.	M.L.E. Gordon.
No. 192222	"	J.F. Gates.

The following congratulatory messages were received:-

From. Lieut. Gen. Hon. Sir. Julian. H.G. Byng. K.C.B., K.C.M.G., M.V.O.,
Commanding Canadian Corps.

To. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.
"Please convey to all ranks of Brigade my great appreciation of their repeatedly successful raids"

From. Major General Lipsett. C.M.G. 3rd Canadian Division.

To. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

"Please convey to the 42nd Battalion my hearty congratulations on their successful raid this morning".

On the night of April, 1st the Battalion was relieved in the line by the 43rd Canadian Battalion and moved to bivouacs in BOIS des ALLEUX (DUMBELL CAMP). Very wet weather had made this camp a sea of mud, and we were far from comfortable there although some slight improvements were made with straw and bath mats.

Mon., Apr 2, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Tue., Apr 3, 1917

SHEET 4.

As an emergency measure Lieut. C.B. Tingling, assistant Adjutant was transferred to "C" Coy. to replace Lieut. R.W. Stewart (died of wounds).

Lieut. Charles Watt reported for duty and was posted to "C" Company.

Wed., Apr 4, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Thu., Apr 5 & Fri., Apr 6, 1917

The Battalion, less B and D Coys, proceeded from DUMBELL CAMP, VILLERS au BOIS, and relieved part of the 43rd Battalion, 9th Canadian Inf. Brigade in the front line, occupying left subsection of LA FOLIE SECTOR, Northern Lip of GRANGE Crater to No. 5 Post LONGFELLOW Crater, S. 22.c. 15.15 to S. 21.d. 8.6.

"C" COMPANY. FORWARD.

"A" COMPANY EMPIRE REDOUBT.

BATTALION HEADQUARTERS.....MACHINE GUN FORT.

The weather was wretchedly cold and wet. The men were put to work cleaning out assembly trenches, which had fallen in badly owing to the wet weather.

Assembly trenches consisted of two lines, one following old Observation Line from north of GRANGE to about the northern end of LONGFELLOW Crater, the second 50 yards in rear and extended from DUFFIELD Communication Trench to FINLEY Trench.

On the 6th inst., the following Officers rejoined the Battalion.

Major.B.McLennan.D.S.O. Who assumed command of the Battalion.

„ S.J.Mathewson.M.C. From Canadian Base Depot.

Lieut.L.C.Montgomery. From Hospital.

„ H.L.Hoyles. From Course of instruction at Canadian Corps School.

Major McLenna's arrival did not interfere with personnel of Officers arranged to take part in the attack on the 9th inst., organization for which had been completed.

On the evening of the 6th Battalion Headquarters moved up to the Advanced Headquarters in the GRANGE Tunnel at Junction with P.Line(P.76).

From Thursday to Saturday normal shelling took place, in addition to three trial barrages . Enemy's Artillery becoming more intense. During these shoots our casualties were remarkably low.

Sat., Apr 7 & Sun., Apr 8, 1917

SHEET.5.

On the night 7/8th "B" and "D" Coys., moved up from VILLERS au BOIS,"B" Coy., going into GRANGE Tunnel while "D" Coy., moved into EMPIRE REDOUBT, which had been vacated by "A" Coy., the same evening.

"A" Coy. moved forward to the upper part of the Tunnel running towards LONG-FELLOW Crater.

"D" Coy.,came under shell fire shortly after passing BETHUNE-ARRAS Road,suffering 2 casualties.

Saturday to midnight was spent in getting the platoons into their proper places for moving into their assembly trenches and distribution of material to be carried over with the attacking waves. By Sunday midnight,final preparations were completed,and the men were waiting the order to move out.

Mon., Apr 9, 1917

Orders were issued for the Battalion to start for the assembly trenches at 4 a.m.

"A" and "B" moved out of the tunnel.

"C" left dugouts in "P" Line.

"D" Coy. came up overland.

The assaulting companies assembled as follows:-

"A" Coy., on the right in the Observation Line from the Northern Lip of GRANGE Crater to TOPP Sap-TOPP Sap-LONGFELLOW

Trench to Sap 1 exclusive.

"C" Coy., on the left, LONGFELLOW Trench from Sap.1. to LONGFELLOW Post 5, both inclusive.

"B" Coy., on the right, EWART Trench from DUFFIELD Trench to OBSERVATION Line exclusive.

"D" Coy., Reclaimed Trench from DUFFIELD Trench to FINLEY Trench and OBSERVATION Line, both inclusive.

Carrying party for S.P.7P.78.

OBJECTIVES.

"A" and "C" Coys., to capture and consolidate Intermediate Objective – S.22.d.35.55 – S.22.b.00.15.

STRONG POINT 7 to be established in BLUE Trench at S.22.b.4.0.

continued.

SHEET 6.

"B" and "D" the Ultimate Objective S.22.d.90.95 – S.22.b.70.35.

"On our right were the P.P.C.L.I. and on the left the 102nd Canadian Battalion supported by the 54th Battalion of the 4th Division.

Strength of the Battalion was 722 All Ranks.

Officers taking part in the engagement.

HEADQUARTERS.

Major.S.C.Norsworthy.M.C.	O.C.
„ R.L.H.Ewing.M.C.	2 i/c.
Lieut.J.D.MacLeod.	Adjutant.
„ L.C.Montgomery.	Asst.Adjutant.
„ A.J.McIntyre.	Scout Officer.
„ E.W.Auld.	Signal Officer.
„ C.S.Martin. M.C.	O.C. Batt.Dumps.

"A"Company.

.Captn.E.B.Finley.

Lieut.R.J.Wattam.

„ J.T.Downey.

"B"Company.

Lieut.R.F.Studd.

„ D.F.Small.

„ H.B.Trout.

"C"Company.

Lieut.J.T.L.Shum.

„ C.B.Tinling.

„ G.Sheffield.

"D"Company.

Major.E.R.Pease.

Lieut.S.Macdonald.

Lieut.G.S.Ashby. continued.

SHEET 7.

WORKING PARTY FOR S.P.7.....	Lieut.M.T.Cohen.
ENGINEER OFFICER FOR S.P.7.....	Lieut.Ewart(7th F.C.C.E)
OFFICER i/c STOKES GUNS.....	Lieut.H.E.Hilton.
OFFICER i/c BDE.MACH.GUNS.....	Lieut.E.R.Morris.
BATTALION.M.O.....	Captn. W.Hale.
CHAPLAIN.....	Captn.G.Kilpatrick.

a.m. 3.55

Major Ewing left Battalion Headquarters to make certain everything was ready, and the Companies in their proper places.

5.11

Message received from him that the Coys., were all in position at 4.45 a.m. This message was immediately forwarded to Brigade. Zero hour for the barrage was 5.30 a.m. Artillery opened exactly on time, both Machine Guns of our Division and those of the Left opened up one minute before zero.

5.35

Word was received that the Battalion had crossed the craters, and at 5.40 a.m. Lieut. McIntyre 'phoned in from the O.P. on LOGFELLOW Crater that everything was going well with the 42nd Battalion. From 5.41 a.m. to 5.59 a.m. reports kept coming in from the O.P. that our Battalion was making continuous progress.

6.02

O.P. reported men in first objective. By this time visibility was very low, the men had to advance in drizzling rain changing to sleet.

6.09

O.P. reported conditions still progressing favourably, that our linesmen with telephone communication were right in rear of attacking Companies.

6.22

O.P. reported prisoners coming in freely; that our contact Aeroplane had been brought down.

6.50

It was reported that Lieut. Shum commanding "C" Coy. had been wounded. He stated that the Huns were demoralised, and offering feeble resistance. Up to this time it had been reported that things were going well with the Division on our left.

Advice was sent to Lieut. Willcock to report.

6.51

The Hun barrage which consisted of 4.2's and 5.9 H.E. was principally landing in area bounded by P.Line and the O.Line. At 6.51 a.m. the first Hun artillery was observed to shoot between crater lines and BEGGAR Trench. Their shoot continued in the neighbourhood of the O.Line.

continued.

SHEET 8

A.M.

7.15

Linesmen who had established a station in BEGGAR Trench sent in the following message from Lieut. Wattam.

" "A" Coy., has reached first Objective and has 30 men."

8.00

Capt. Hale Bn. M.O. accompanied by the Chaplain., Captain G. Kilpatrick established advanced Regimental Aid Post in BLUE Trench.

8.15

Company Runners reported back stating final objective reached. There was also a message from Lieut. McIntyre stating that he had been to the bottom of LA FOLIE RIDGE and could observe no signs of the enemy. He also reported that the Left Battalion was being held up. This was the first intimation that we had had that things were not going well with the Division on our left.

9.33

Major Ewing returned and reported that Companies had reached their final objective and were digging in. 4th Division had not come up on our left; that there was a small detachment of the 54th Battalion with Major Pease. Officer i/c of left flank were pushing out patrols to see if they could be located. He reported that sniping and rifle fire from the left and Hill 145 was very severe, causing numerous casualties. Lieuts. Wattam and Hilton and Medical Sergeant Owen had been sniped and killed between the time which he had left them in going forward to the final objective and returning to the Intermediate Objective. Situation was reported to Brigade.

Major Ewing reported having seen a light field gun in our area.

Events in front line about this time were later described by Major Pease as follows:-.

"The final objective was reached and consolidation started at about 8 a.m. on April 9th. A short time after this Captn. Hugh Wallis of the Brigade Staff arrived and proceeded to the left where we were in touch with a few of the 54th Battalion, who had reached their objective. He soon returned and reported that the Battalion on our left was held up by enemy Machine Gun and requested me to call a few Rifle Grenadiers and see what we could do. This I did and was moving to the left flank, which I had reached, when the sniping became very active from the left and we could see numbers of the enemy on the skyline about 200 yards distant. The rifle grenadiers took over and opened up fire at the enemy and I moved down to

continued.

SHEET 9.

A.M.

9.33

the left, warning everyone I could find towards the flank. To our left a Machine Gun and a number of men presumably 54th also engaged this party, and after a brisk exchange of fire the enemy withdrew leaving only a few snipers who took positions in the wood on the brow, and just below the slope.

9.35

We had a Colt gun and 54th Gun and about 20 men in action on our left flank".

9.35

Wire sent to rear to have Lieut. Stewart report.

9.37

Report from Major Pease asking for Lewis Gunners and ammunition. That the Hun was attempting to turn our flank 100 yards left of the re-entrant.

Major Norsworthy left for tour of the newly occupied area.

10.10

Estimated casualty report sent to Brigade. Approximately 200 All Ranks. Lieut. Ewart 7th Field Coy. C.E. came in and reported STRONG POINT 7 as nearly completed.

10.15

Capt. Topp, Liaison Officer with 54th and 102nd. His second report stated that the 87th Battalion on the left of the 54th Battalion has been hung up, but that the 102nd Battalion were consolidating their position in BEGGAR [Inserted: ?] Trench.

10.45

Report came in from 102nd Battalion stating that the flank of their Battalion is at junction of BEGGAR and BLUNT Trench.

10.54

Following is reported message sent by L.O.54th Battalion staying at our Headquarters.

"Senior Major 42nd, who has just returned from the front assures me that their final left flank is in advance of BLUNT and BLUE. The 42nd are protecting their flank and suggest that the 54th push forward to BLUNT and BLUE. The 42nd are willing to co-operate in this effort".

11.25

Lieut. Willcock reported from rear, and was sent forward taking message concerning suspected counter attack as received from 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.

11.30

The following message from Major Ewing sent to Capt. Topp. L.O. with 54th Battalion

"I have just come down the left flank and the intermediate and final objectives are still in the air, and we are being sniped severely from the left. Have made a defensive flank"

Following message from Brigade sent forward to Major Norsworthy, or Major Pease:-

"Message received at 11.20 a.m. Enemy are advancing up BOIS du CHAMP POURRI, BOBBY, BOIKIN and FILLIP Trenches. Have sent up one platoon, 2 Lewis Gun Sections 49th Battalion to report. continued.

SHEET 10.

Following message from Major Ewing, sent forward to Major Norsworthy or Major Pease.

"4th Division report they are at BEGGAR and BLUNT. Have asked them to push forward and we will assist"

1200 Noon.

Following from Col. Harving. O.C. 54th Battalion, repeated to Brigade, and Major Norsworthy:-

"I instructed O.C. "A" Coy. at 9.45 a.m. to consolidate BEGGAR Line as a temporary line and to do his best to push up to BLUNT and BLUE, if necessary asking assistance of the 42nd. At present we appear to be holding BEGGAR as far as BITTER"

P.M. 12.05

After 3 different calls for Stretchers none have yet arrived.

12.25

Following message received from Adjutant 42nd Battalion.

"10.15 I got carrying party of 22 men; sent them forward with SAA and Grenades with instructions to report to Major Pease. Party carried 5500 rounds. At 11.08 a.m. the reinforcing platoon from 49th Battalion reported – strength 1 Officer 33 O.R. They carried the following ammunition.

5,000 rounds SAA (MG).

3,300 SAA. Bandolier.

600 No.23 Mills Rifle Grenades.

240 No.5 Mills Grenades.

These were sent forward to Major Pease with guides. 11.15 a.m. 4.Lewis Gunners from 49th Battalion and 2 Lewis Guns reported and were sent forward to "D" Coy.

12.35 p.m.

Major Collum from Headquarters 3rd Cdn.Division arrived. After consultation with Major Ewing, rang up Division and explained the situation on the left.

12.45

Following is list of casualties of Officers reported at present time.

KILLED.....	Lieut.Richard John Wattam.
	„ H.E.Hilton.
WOUNDED.....	Captn.E.B.Finley.
	Lieut.J.T.L.Shum.
	„ Tinling.C.B.

SHEET 11.

WOUNDED CONTD.....	Lieut.G.Sheffield.
	„ S.Macdonald.
	„ H.B.Trout.

12.52

Major Ewing telephoned Staff Captn "Q" asking for blank ammunition,and was informed that there was none on hand,and it would be wired for.

1.45

Following message received from Major Norsworthy:-

"No 4th Division troops in BEGGAR for 200 yards North of BLUNT St. We are extending and occupying it. Saw no troops in front but understand one platoon of 54th is in touch with our left from outpost line over brow of the Hill. Machine Gun fire from HILL 145 has ceased"

Forwarded to Brigade by Major Ewing.

"I consider it urgent that 4th Division advance and occupy HILL 145"

2.08

Following received from Major Norsworthy:-

"I'm holding two Lewis Guns and Stokes and carrying party at S.P.7 until dusk. Do not think it safe for them to go to "D" Coy., at present" Forwarded to Bde.verbally by Major Ewing.

2.25

Major Ewing is sending to rear Battalion Headquarters for Lieuts. Banwell and Hale with remainder of available men. At 1 p.m. Lieut Donnelly and 50 men were ordered to report here. All parties to bring 48 hours rations.

2.30

Lieut. Stewart reported here, and received orders from Major Ewing to proceed to "A" Coy. He took messages for Major Norsworthy

Major Ewing attended conference at P.P.C.L.I. Headquarters Brig. General being present. He was informed that a new Brigade 4th Division would attack at 4.30 p.m. in order to attempt to join up our left flank, a company of the 52nd Battalion has been detailed to O.C. 42nd Battalion.

There was only time to communicate the above by 'phone to O.C. with Coys – a written message was later sent by Lieut. Stewart confirming the wire.

SHEET.12

contd.

P.M.

Lieut. Martin arrived in and reported that half an hour ago Sergt. Smith went over to Broadmarsh Crater and located 5 Huns in a dugout. They surrendered and were handed 4.15 over to the 54th

4.15

Battalion. Lieut. Martin was on his way to take over duties of Brigade B.O.

4.25

Following message sent forward to Major Norsworthy:-

"4th Division will attack with a new Brigade at 4.30 p.m. this afternoon. There will be an Artillery barrage. Better withdraw BEGGAR on the 4th front and co-operate with M.G. fire and Rifle Grenades. There is a company of the 52nd here if you want them".

4.335

Major Collum reported that situation on our left was considerably more quiet.

5.45

Major Ewing called to Brigade Headquarters.

Message on 'phone through from Advance report centre asking for 4 Lewis Guns, men and ammunition.

6.29

Following message received from Major Norsworthy:-

"Nothing in particular to report-show on left has not started-wants to know if Company of 52nd Battalion is still at our disposal".

6.40

Message from Captn.Hale asking for 20 stretchers and bearers. These are being taken up by a carrying party from 49th Battalion.

8.23

Major Ewing reported back from Brigade Headquarters. 58th Battalion coming into support – one and a half companies to occupy a new trench to be dug roughly from rear of LONG-FELLOW Crater to junction of BEGGAR and BLUNT Trench.

8.30

2 Lewis Guns and 4 men reported.

8.36

Following message received from Captn.Topp:-

"11th Bde.operations this afternoon very successful. General Odum personally informed me that BEGGAR Trench is now held over as far as junction with BITTER and troops are pushing on up BITTER and BLEARY. Enemy surrendering in large numbers. Operations against HILL 145 will be carried out to-night".

continued.

Contd.

SHEET 13.

P.M.

9.00

Captn.Hugh Wallis returning from the front dropped in for a few minutes. Stated everything was in much the same condition as Major Norsworthy reported.

10.28

The following received by Lieut.McKenzie,Liasion Officer,54th Battalion:-

"One Company of 47th Battalion have left here to reinforce our line. The 85th have reached BUTTER and we understand they have taken HILL 145. This is not confirmed".

Tue., Apr 10, 1917

2.35 A.M.

Major Norsworthy has sent through word that things have more or less settled down.

2.45

Message received in from Corps states that very strong German reinforcements are moving towards VIMY from MERICOURT.

4.00

Message received from Major Norsworthy at advanced report centre, on general situation, message as follows:-

"B" and "C" Coys., are dug in in the wood. They are in close touch with P.P.C.L.I. on right. Their left flank is in the air and extends a little further north than what was laid down as our Brigade boundary-Total garrison about 150 including 5 Officers, 4 Lewis Guns (42nd Bn) and 2 Colt Guns, 2 Lewis Guns (49th Bn).

A supply of L.G. discs, 1½" VERY pistols and SOS flares was sent them to-night.

Their left flank receives a considerable measure of protection from the fact that "C" Coy, together with a few men of the 54th Bn., have in addition to garrisoning Strong Point, pushed well up BLUE Trench and dug a flanking trench on both its East and West side- estimated distance separating companies 100 yards.

Garrison of BLUE Trench and S.P.7 – 2 Officers and 98 O.R. (including 2 or 3 Lewis Guns) and Lieut. Morris and 3 Vickers Guns. Garrison of BEGGAR Trench 2 Officers and 70 men including 2 Lewis Guns. Touch with left Battalion in BEGGAR Trench was not established until late this afternoon, when it was

SHEET 14.

Contd.

found that they were manning BEGGAR Trench from S.22.A.8.3. to

A.M.

4.00

junction of BEGGAR and BLIGHTY S.22.a.6.4. with 3 Officers and about 130 men of 102nd Bn. and 54th Bn. including 7 or 8 Lewis Guns, their left flank being in the air. In accordance with Brigade advice of pending operation the whole of this garrison was moved south on BEGGAR and temporarily there are 200 men between about S.22.a.8.3. and junction of BEGGAR and BLUE.

Major Pease stated enemy is in considerable force about forty yards distant from outpost line. He snipes actively by day from behind logs of wood. Only one enemy shell has hit our newly dug front line trench. There has been considerable shelling mostly falling 20 to 30 yards in front or rear.

On BEGGAR and BLUE there has been intermittent shelling by H.E. (probably 5.9) Two hits on BLUE near S.P.7 this morning caused considerable casualties. On the whole enemy registration on these trenches is not so good as would be expected.

Our men are very tired and would strongly recommend that they be relieved tomorrow night.

P.S. 2 additional Lewis Guns and crews from 49th Battalion have been added to garrison of BLUE."

7.45

Major Norsworthy 'phoned through from Advanced report centre that situation was quiet. He wanted Stokes ammunition carried up. This is being attended to.

8.25

A message from Major Norsworthy states that there were still 25 Stretcher cases waiting to be evacuated, but could not be moved owing to scarcity of stretchers. I rang up Brigade Major and he promised to give the matter his attention.

9.25

Brigade conference at P.P.C.L.I. Headquarters.

10.15

Captn. Topp has returned to Headquarters as situation on 4th Division is considered as stationary.

10.43

Major Ewing returned from conference, where it was decided to send out patrols from each Battalion at 12.30 p.m. SOS barrage to be moved forward of BRACKEN trench, 350 yards.

11.35

Captn. Topp had defined the 4th Division outpost line as follows:-

"Proceeding from south to north-BEGGAR to BLEARY to junction of BLACK and BASSO, the line then carries along BASSO to Junction of BAUBLE, along to junction of BATTER. There are posts pushed forward up BEGGAR and BED-BUG to dominate top of HILL 145".

SHEET 15.

contd.

Relief of Artillery Officers has taken place.

11.52 A.M.

11.55

Following from 54th Battalion:-

"We have consolidated the BEGGAR Line from BLUNT to BESSY, thence BIFF to BILLY to BASSO and we are in touch with the 85th Battalion.

Parties of our men are holding HILL 145 and we are commencing consolidation of the BEER-BLUE Line at once and will be connecting up with the 42nd Battalion Strong Point at S.22.b.4½.3".

P.M.

1.06

54th Bn. Liaison Officer has left to report back to his Battalion.

1.13

Captn. Topp has returned with information the HILL 145 has been definitely taken-Line consolidated along BEGGAR from BLUNT to BASIN.

1.15

Lieut. McIntyre and 12 men left front trench and worked slowly down southern slope of re-entrant in S.22.b. At 2 p.m. and 18 pndr. H.E. shell which appeared to come from rear of 4th Division landed in middle of party and killed Pte. Savoy. No enemy were encountered on south side of re-entrant and fired on, Lieut. McIntyre nor any sign of trench or strongpoint. At this juncture patrol was observed from northern side of re-entrant and fired on, Lieut. McIntyre being hit in the head and arm. They were forced to withdraw and make their way back by ones or twos to our line which was reached about 2.45 p.m.

Snipers being engaged from our trench by rifle grenades.

NOTE:- At 3.30 p.m. when 47th Bn. occupied ridge [ridge] these snipers referred to, were observed to give themselves up.

2.25

Message in from "D" Coy., our 18 pdrs shooting short. The Artillery have been notified.

2.45

Adjutant P.P.C.L.I. has just been in and reports patrols from his Battalion and R.C.R. met strong opposition when about 150 yards from our line.

The following message from Lieut.McKenzie.54th Battalion:-

"Situation our frontage very satisfactory at present. Our Battalion has consolidated BEGGAR Line as advised previously. We also have established strong points at our final objectives at S.22.a.8.8. our S.22.b.2.7 and S.22.b.4.3, and are consolidating a line through these points to join up with 42nd Bn."

SHEET 16.

contd.

of our Division/

The other two Battalions have already gone through this final line but no reports have been received of their success."

(Lieut.Willcock.M.C. reported to Major Norsworthy at 5.30 p.m. at Advanced Battalion Headquarters that he had been out along BLUE to try to locate and connect up with 102nd who were between us and 54th, but could not find them).

3.10

Message from 7th C.I.Bde. stating that 49th Bn. would go through our line and push forward patrols to BOIS du CHAMP POURRI and CHAUDIERE. Not more than two platoons to be used in this operation.

R.C.R. to clear FILLIP as far East as S,23,d.9.8.

42nd Battalion will establish post at BRACKEN Trench"

The above was forwarded to Major Norsworthy.

4.20

Reported from frontline our own Artillery shooting short and causing casualties. Word has come in that Lieut.McIntyre was wounded.

9.20

Major Norsworthy reported back to Battalion Headquarters and reported situation normal. The 4th Division have established connection with "D" Coy., and are to dig themselves in to-night.

9.25

The following from 7th C.I.Bde.in reply to our protest that Divisional Burying Battalion apparently doing nothing:-

"Dead will be buried to-morrow. Graves being dug to-day"

Lieut.McIntyre and Ashby were wounded this afternoon. The former being sniped while on patrol and the latter due to some 18 pndrs.shooting short.

10.00

Major Ewing left for forward area.

Captn Topp went up to relieve Major Pease.

Wed., Apr 11, 1917

A.M. 5.45

During the past night Major Pease, and what was left of D.Coy were relieved in the front line and sent back to VILLERS au BOIS.

6.10

At dawn to-day a destructive bombardment of the following trenches and works will commence. BLOATER from Junction with BLIGHTY to PETIT VIMY and defences, FLICKER and FLIT

continued.

SHEET 17.

contd.

trenches and wire.

A.M.

7.25

Major Ewing has sent a message down asking for ten extra tins of water. These are being sent up.

8.12

Captn. Killpatrick left for the Transport Lines.

8.30

The following received from Captn. Topp O.C. front Line:-

"Many Huns seen moving outward along track running to S.17.S.18 and S.12 north of LENS-ARRAS Road. Our Observers report at least half a Battalion moved out between 6.30 a.m. and 8.00 a.m. in parties of about 50. Snipers and Lewis Gunners opened but range too great for effective shooting. Situation quiet".

8.55

Following from Brigade:-

"Heavy Artillery shooting on dugouts N.E. edge of LA FOLIE WOOD BRACKEN Trench, BUCK Trench, FILLIP Trench, ARTILLERIE and STAUB-WASSER WEG as nearly as they safely can to Infantry present positions. This shooting will commence practically at once"

9.04

Following from Brigade:-

"This morning at an hour to be notified later a platoon of the 58th Battalion will advance under Artillery and Stokes Gun Barrage to clean the Germans out of S.23 central".

10.55

Major Norsworthy is sending message to Major Ewing informing him of 58th Battalion, 1 platoon patrol, also arranging with him to send out a patrol to establish a post in BRACKEN, if the 58th Battalion patrol is successful.

10.40

Captn. Topp reports our Artillery 18 pndrs and heavies shooting too short.

10.50 Corps.reported no #5 Mills coming up from Base.
 11.02 The 58th patrol will go out at 12 noon.
 11.35 Lieut.Auld reports our 6 inch dropping short between BEGGAR and front line.
 11.54 Major Ewing acknowledged receipt of message regarding patrols,and sends the following message regarding Stokes guns.etc.
 "I understood yesterday that 7th B.T.M.s had a Stokes in reserve. Think it could be used to advantage up here. Splendid work could be done with 2" T.M. Is any effort being made to get them forward".

SHEET 18.

contd.

P.M.
 12.40 Received a message from 49th Battalion asking us to leave Lewis Guns behind for them.
 3.55 Lieuts Studd and Downey have left for VILLERS au BOIS after being relieved by Lieuts.McNaughton and Hoyles.
 4.00 Lieut.MacLeod has taken out runners to meet 49th Battalion.
 7.15 49th Battalion Officer has arrived and taken over Trench stores in Battalion Headquarters.
 7.45 Major Ewing reported relief complete,and we immediately made preparations to move off from Battalion Headquarters to VILLERS au BOIS.

OFFICER CASUALTIES.

KILLED

Lieut.Richard John Wattam.
 Lieut.Douglas Farquharson Small.
 Lieut.Harry E. Hilton.

DIED OF WOUNDS.

Lieut.Charles Burnaby Tinling.
 Lieut.Geoffrey Sheffield.

WOUNDED.

Captn.(Act/Maj)Eric Barrett Finley.
 Lieut.J.T.L.Shum.
 Lieut.Stanley Macdonald.
 Lieut.Harry Bernard Trout.
 Lieut.Gerald Scarlett Ashby.
 Lieut.Alexander James McIntyre.

OTHER RANKS.

(including those unaccounted for.....291.

On the 9th inst. Lieut. C.F. Gifford returned to duty with "C" Coy from Canadian Base Depot.

Thu., Apr 12, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

SHEET 19.

Fri., Apr 13, 1917

The undermentioned Officers reported from 3rd Canadian Entrenching Battalion and were taken on strength and posted to Companies as stated:-

Major. Edward Colpitts Weyman	"D"
Lieut. Ernest Archibald McFall	"C"
„ Joseph Darley Lemoine.	"A"

Sat., Apr 14, 1917

A re-adjustment of Officers consequent upon casualties, and the return of Major McLennan. D.S.O. was made as follows:-

Major. S.C. Norsworthy. M.C.	2 i/c.
„ R.L.H. Ewing. M.C.	Adj.
Capt. J.A. Mathewson.	Asst/Adj.

A. COMPANY.

Major. S.J. Mathewson. M.C.	O.C.
Lieut. McNaughton. J. M.C.	2 i/c.
„ J.T. Downey	
„ Cohen. M.T.	
„ LeMoine. J.D.	

B. COMPANY.

Capt. C.B. Topp.	O.C.
Lieut. R.F. Studd.	2 i/c.
Lieut. Banwell. E.	
„ Biggar. L.H.	
„ Donnelly. E.J.	

C. COMPANY.

Lieut. R. Willcock. M.C.	O.C.
„ J.D. MacLeod.	2 i/c.
„ C. Watt.	
„ C.F. Gifford.	
„ McFall. E.A.	

B. COMPANY.

Major Pease. E.R.	O.C.
Lieut. Stewart. J.C.	2 i/c.
„ Savage. G.H.	
Major E.C. Weyman.	
Lieut. H.L. Hoyles.	

Lieut. H. Hamer. M.M. and Lieut. H.E.C. ook. M.M. reported from Officers Cadet School, and were posted to C and B. Coys respectively.

Sun., Apr 15, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Apr 16, 1917

Lieut.H.S.Fry was granted a Commission,taken on strength and posted to Headquarters.

SHEET 20.

Tue., Apr 17, 1917

Lieut.F.D.Macfie reported back from duty with Brigade Wirers, and was posted to "D" Company.

Wed., Apr 18, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Thu., Apr 19 to Fri., Apr 20, 1917

Consequent on the breaking up of the 73rd Canadian Battalion,Lieut.R.W.Gee and 240 O.R. were sent as a reinforcement to the 42nd Battalion. The G.O.C. 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, and Major McLennan D.S.O. both,addressed them,stating that they were coming to another Battalion of the same Home Regiment,and that they would regard themselves not as a draft but as part of the 42nd Battalion,in which they were very welcome.

Lieut.D.B.Gilmour,Sick in Hospital, was also transferred to us from 73rd Canadian Battalion and Major MacWilliam.W.L.supernumerary,attached to 73rd Canadian Battalion became attached to us.

During the period April 12th to 20th inclusive,the weather for the most part was dull and wet. The early part of the period was devoted to lectures,baths,replacing deficiencies and re-organization;later regular parades were held and training carried on, particularly in outpost work and open order drill. A few working parties were furnished under Brigade Orders.

The Divisional Commander visited the Battalion during the period,addressed the men and congratulated them on the part they had played in the taking of VIMY RIDGE, He made special reference to the fact that our left flank was in the air for about 30 hours.

During this period Lieut.Col.A.A.Magee proceeded to Headquarters,7th Canadian Infantry Brigade to whom he was attached for instruction.

On April 20th orders were received to move into Corps Reserve. The Battalion moved off at 12.30 a.m. on April 21st, and took up quarters in GOODMAN Tunnel with Headquarters in BEGG Street Trench(Old Battalion Headquarters right sub-section,LA FOLIE SECTOR)

Sat., Apr 21 to Mon., Apr 23, 1917

Working parties were furnished for completion of LA FOLIE(Corduory)Road and Tram Line running from NEUVILLE ST VAAST to top of VIMY RIDGE.

On April 23rd notification was received of the following promotions:-

SHEET 21

Lieut.DeLotbiniere A.J.	To be Act/Captn.vice Captn.W.A.Grafftey(wounded) 16-9-16
Lieut.J.C.Stewart.	To be Act/Captn.vice Captn.E.C.Evans(wounded) 9-11-16.
Lieut.P.N.McDougall.	To be Act/Captn.vice Capt.J.A.Mathewson(wounded) 9-10-16
Lieut.E.B.Finley.	To be Captn.vice Captn.C.S.Norsworthy.M.C.(Promoted) 9-7-16
Lieut.McNaughton.J. M.C.	To be Captn .vice Captn.S.J.Mathewson. M.C. (To Canada) 25-1-17.
Captn.R.L.H.Ewing. M.C.	To be Major vice Major S.C.Norsworthy M.C. (Promoted) 2-1-17.
Captn.E.B.Finley.	To be Act/Major vice Temp.Major.C.B.Wilson (killed) 16-9-16.
Captn.C.B.Topp.	To be Act/Major whilst commanding a Coy.vice Captn.S.J.Mathewson. M.C. who relinquishes the acting rank of Major.

On the night of April 23rd the Battalion moved into close support in VIMY Village relieving one company and Headquarters of the 2nd C.M.R. and 2 Coys.1st C.M.R.and 1 Officer and 40 men in dugouts east of GOODMAN Tunnel. The latter were brought up the following day and aocomodated in dugouts on the eastern slope of VIMY RIDGE.

Mon., Apr 23, 1917 to Sun., Apr 29, 1917

The Battalion remained in close support at VIMY Village. Weather was very fine throughout. During the first few nights work was carried on under Battalion arrangements, on the construction of a 3rd line trench. During the latter half of the tour we furnished working parties to a 7th F.C.[*Field Company*] Officer, for work on second line trench. In the matter of casualties the tour was very unfortunate.

Major.Weyman.Lieut.Montgomery and Lieut. Macfie and 22 O.R. were wounded,and 11 O.R. including C.S.M.Fitzgerald were killed. All these casualties were from shell fire. Major.S.J.Mathewson.M.C. was slightly wounded by a machine gun bullet.

On the 26th Aoril Lieuts.Haldimand and Trout re-joined the Battalion,the latter taking over the duties of Battalion Scout Officer.

SHEET 22.

On the 28th April Lieut.E.Banwell proceeded on duty with the 7th Canadian T.M. Battery for one month on trial.

Sun., Apr 29, 1917

On the night of relief April 29th, VIMY Village was heavily bombarded from 11 p.m. until 5 a.m. with gas shells. Fortunately most of the relief had been completed previously, but part of Headquarters and part of "D" Coy., were affected by the gas,although no casualties were

suffered from it. We were relieved in VIMY by the 116th Canadian Battalion and the 42nd Battalion moved to GRANGE Tunnel.

Mon., Apr 30, 1917

On the afternoon of the 30th the Battalion marched to SUBURBAN HUTS, VILLERS au BOIS.

(Signed) *Bartlett McLennan*
Major
Commanding 42nd Battn.
Canadian Expeditionary Force.

SECRET

Copy No.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 115.

By

Major S.C.Norsworthy, M.C.
Commanding – 42nd Battalion
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. Map VIMY 1/10,000

Edition 8.a.

WEDNESDAY, APRIL 4TH, 1917.

-
1. INFORMATION On "Z" day (the date of which has been communicated verbally to all concerned) the 7th Canadian Infantry Battalion will capture the crest of LA FOLIE RIDGE from the junction of the tracks at S.29.a.6.9½ to point in BLUE Trench at S.22.b.5.2., and from the final objective will push forward and dig, and consolidate, a line in LA FOLIE WOOD S.23.c.9½.0 to S.22.b.7.4.
2. INTENTION The 42nd. Battalion will attack at ZERO Hour on a frontage of our Observation Line from Northern Lip of GRANGE CRATER to LONG-FELLOW CRATER POST No.5. On our right will be the P.P.C.L.I. and on our Left the 102nd. Canadian Battalion supported by the 54th Canadian Battalion who will pass through the 102nd. Battalion at the Intermediate Objective.
3. ZERO HOUR. Zero Hour will be at _____
4. ARTILLERY. As per Schedule "A" attached
5. OBJECTIVES. INTERMEDIATE OBJECTIVE – Trench Junction at S.22.d.35.55.
to Trench Junction at S.22.b.00.15.

ULTIMATE OBJECTIVE - Road Junction at S.22.d.90.95.
to Road Junction at S.22.b.70.35.

6. STRONG POINTS. S.22.b.9.0. to enfilade track.
S.22.b.7.3. to cover North side of re-entrant.
S.22.b.4.0. in BLUE Trench (S.P.7.)

7. JUMPING OFF TRENCHES A COMPANY OBSERVATION LINE from Northern Lip of GRANGE CRATER to TOPP SAP – TOPP SAP - LONGFELLOW TRENCH to SAP 1 exclusive.

C COMPANY LONGFELLOW TRENCH from SAP 1 to LONGFELLOW POST 5 both inclusive.

B COMPANY EWART TRENCH from DUFFIELD TRENCH inclusive to OBSERVATION LINE exclusive.

D COMPANY Reclaimed Trench from FINLEY TRENCH to OBSERVATION LINE both inclusive.
(including 2 Colt Gun Crews)

Special Carrying party fro S.P.7 50 men under Lieut. Cohen....
.....P.78 See schedule D.

8. FORMATIONS. The Battalion will attack on a two company front, each Company on a one platoon front.

1. A and C Companies will capture and consolidate the Intermediate Objective.
A Company on the Right C Company on the Left.

Mopping up Parties. 2 parties consisting of one Officer and 50 men each Of the 49th Battalion, are detailed respectively to A and C Companies to act as sentries over dug-outs and moppers.

Continued.

Sheet 2

A and C Companies will cross craters in files as rapidly as possible.

From the enemy front line each platoon of A and C Company will advance in two lines with 20 paces distance between lines – 30 paces between platoons. Moppers up 10 paces behind second line.

Carrying party – S.P.7 See Schedule "D"
Carrying parties – Ammunition & Material – See Schedule E.

11. B and D Companies, will capture and consolidate the ultimate objective.

They will cross "NO MANS LAND" 20 paces in rear of preceding platoons.

From the enemy's line B and D will advance at 40 paces distance from A and C Coys., with platoons in two lines of sections in single file (Artillery formation) with 20 paces between lines and 30 paces between platoons.

(a) Company Commanders B and D, will detail Scouts and Covering parties to cover construction of Strong Points.

(b) They will also detail 30 men each to construct 2 Strong Points at:-

S.22.b.9.0. (Cross tracks)

S.22.b.7.3. (Fork tracks)

Any spare men should be employed in digging in between Strong Points.

(c) A minimum garrison of 20 men each will be detailed to hold strong points.

9. PROTECTION OF FLANKS

Each Company will detail an N.C.O. on either flank of its leading platoon who will see that touch is maintained with next company or Battalion. The N.C.Os. on the extreme right and left of the Battalion will each have a party of four men. An additional bombing section will be detailed by C and D Coys., to their leading platoons to protect the left flanks if neighbouring unit should be held up.

10. SCOUTS & SNIPERS.

As per Schedule "F"

11.MOPPERS UP.

MOPPERS UP detailed to Mop Up STAUBWASSER WEG will rendezvous when their work is complete, at junction of BEGGAR STREET and STAUBWASSER WEG reporting to O.C. A Company.

Moppers Up detailed to German Front Lines will, on completion of their work, proceed to Battalion Dump, where they will obtain stretchers, and both parties of Moppers Up, will then be employed in carrying out casualties. When this is completed they will report to O.C., 49th Battalion at Machine Gun Fort.

12. BRIGADE MACHINE GUNS.

4 Guns and crews under Brigade Machine Gun Officer will move to ZERO – 60 via P. LINE into MINE Chamber off TOPP SAP, and will go forward without further orders at ZERO plus 30.

They will take up position in BEGGAR TRENCH until Ultimate Objective is reached when they will move forward reporting – 2 to O.C.

B and 2 to O.C. D Company

These guns will eventually garrison S.P.7.

13. STOKES
GUNS.

Two Stokes Guns and crews, and carrying party 10 men per gun are detailed one each to B and D Coys., and will go forward under Stokes Gun Officer in rear of the last wave. They may however be called upon to assist A and C Coys. to maintain their flanks in the event of the right or left Battalion being held up.

Continued.

Sheet 3

14. ENGINEERS
AND WIRERS.

1. Officer and 4 Sappers of the 7th Field Coy. and 5 Brigade Wires will supervise construction of Strong Points 7 and will go forward with carrying party of 50 men above mentioned.

15. SIGNALS.

As per schedule "C".

16. BATTALION O.P.

LONGFELLOW CRATER between posts 1 and 2.

17. CONTACT
AEROPLANES.

Leading Line will communicate their position to contact Aeroplanes by lighting flares when called upon Aeroplane will call by three AAA or by a flare.

18. S.O.S.

S.O.S. Signal will be 3 Green Rockets.

19. BATTALION
DUMPS.

Battalion Dumps will be on OBSERVATION LINE between DURAND SAP and SAP 1.

20. REGIMENTAL
AID POST.

Regimental Aid Post will be at conjunction of QUARRY line and LA SALLE C.T. An overland route has been marked out with screw stakes and wire.

21 PRISONERS.

Will be sent back with an escort of about 10% to Lieut. Martin at head of Tunnel, who will arrange for their being escorted to S.25.a.9.2. – junction ARRAS – BETHUNE & Plank Road, where they will be taken over by a representative of the A.P.M. from whom a receipt will be obtained.

22. WATCHES.

Watches will be synchronized with Adjutant at 10. p.m. on Y/Z" night and again two hours before ZERO.

23. EQUIPMENT.

CLOTHING. Battle Order
Leather Jerkins
Box Respirator (Alert Position)
1 P.H. Helmet

Ground Sheet.

RATIONS. 24 hours rations
2 Iron Rations
Filled Water Bottles.

AMMUNITION ETC...... As per Schedule "B"

24. TRAFFIC REGULATIONS. "IN" GRANGE TUNNEL
"OUT" 1. LA SALLE
2. GRANGE, CROSS STREET, and FRANCE.

25. REPORTS. To Battalion Headquarters in GRANGE TUNNEL, near P. LINE.

J. D. MACLEOD,

1. C.O.	9. 7th C.I.B.	Lieut./Adjutant.
2. 2 i/c	10. P.P.C.L.I.	
3. O.C. A Coy.	11. 49th Cdn. Battalion	
4. O.C. B „	12. 54th Cdn. Battalion	
5. O.C. C „	13. 102nd.Cdn.Battalion	
6. O.C. D „	14. 7th Bde. M.G. Coy.	
7. Scout O.	15. 7th Cdn. T.M.Battery	
8. Signalling O.	16. 7th Field Co., C.E.	

SCHEDULE "A"

INTENSE SHRAPNEL BARRAGE

	ZERO	to plus 3	Enemy front line
1st. Lift.	plus	3 „ 6	75 yards.
2nd. „	„	6 „ 8	75 „
3rd. „	„	8 „ 17	75 „
4th „	„	17 „ 20	75 „
5th „	„	20 „ 23	75 „
6th „	„	23 „ 26	75 „
7th „	„	26 „ 29	75 „
8th „	„	29 „ 32	75 „
(on to Intermediate Objective)			
9th Lift.	plus 32to	plus 75	150 "Barrage will rest on point 150 yards beyond Intermediate

Objective.

10th.	„	„	75	„	79	100 yards
11th.	„	„	79	„	83	100 „
12th	„	„	83	„	87	100 „
13th	„	„	87	„	91	100 „
14th	„	„	91	„	onwards	75 „

SCHEDULE "B"

AMMUNITION ETC.

FIRST WAVE

120	Rounds S.A.A.
2	Mills No. 5 carried in haversack.
2	Ground Flares, lower pocket
2	Sets S.O.S. (put up in sets in sandbags) per Company.
3	Sandbags per man carried on back.
9.	Long Wire Cutters
20	Short „ „
	Hedging Gloves
25	Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with revolvers
	Tools – Nil.
	VERY Pistols and Lights as issued to the Company to be distributed to Officers and N.C.Os.

SECOND WAVE

170	Rounds S.A.A.
2	Mills No. 5 carried in haversack.
2	Ground Flares, in lower pocket
2	Sets S.O.S. per company
3	Sandbags per man carried on back
	Shovels) 5 shovels to 1 pick carried
	Picks) on mens backs
10	pair Wire Cutters
	Hedging Gloves
25	Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with revolvers
	VERY Pistols and Lights as issued to the Company to be

distributed to Officers and N.C.Os.

The foregoing in addition to Specialists supplies with the exception S.A.A. of which Bombers, Signallers, Scouts, Runners, and Lewis Gunners will carry only 50 Rounds, S.A.A.

Hedging Gloves will be put up in Sandbags – 10 Pairs per bag, and left on the forward dump.

SCHEDULE "B"

	<u>LEWIS</u>	<u>GUN</u>	<u>SECTION</u>
50	Rounds S.A.A.		
2	Mills No.5 carried in haversack.		
25	Rounds revolver ammunition for men armed with revolvers.		
32	Drums, the remainder to be left at Battalion Forward Dump.		

	<u>BOMBING</u>	<u>SECTION</u>
10	No.5 Mills to be carried by the throwers	
20	No.5.Mills to be carried by the carriers	
50	Rounds S.A.A.	
6	Smoke Bombs per Section	
25	Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with Revolvers.	

	<u>RIFLE</u>	<u>GRENADE</u>	<u>SECTION</u>
50	Rounds S.A.A.		
50	Rounds Blank Ammunition		
1	Smoke Bomb		

Carriers

15 Mills No.23

SCHEDULE "C" –

DISPOSITION SIGNALLERS

3 Telephonists and 2 linesmen are detailed for duty at Battalion Headquarters.

3 Signallers are detailed for duty at Visual Station near Battalion O.P. They will spread a ground panel and receive any messages dropped from aeroplanes. 6 additional Signallers and 2 additional linesmen will be at Battalion Headquarters. On the first objective being taken Signalling Officer, 6 Signallers and 2 linesmen with Visual equipment, pigeons, and 2 'phones will proceed to BEGGAR STREET, laying wires as they go. On the ultimate objective being taken Signalling Officer, will proceed forward to the first objective.

SCHEDULE "D"

CARRYING PARTY OF 50 MEN FOR THE 7TH FIELD COMPANY C.E.

FOR CONSTRUCTION OF STRONG POINT 7 (S.22.b.4.0.)

to be furnished by A and C Companies
will move forward close behind last wave of D Company,
and construct S.P.7 at S.22.b.4.0. On completion this
party will garrison Strong Point.

MATERIAL

27 Spools of Barbed Wire 1 per man

70	Short Screw Stakes	9	„	„
36	Long Screw Stakes	4	„	„
200	Sandbags	50	„	„
85	Shovels)			
10	Picks)-----	1	„	„ carried on back
5	Axes)			
2	Large Wire Cutters			
10	Small Wire Cutters			
15	Pair Hedging Gloves.			

AMMUNITION

120	Rounds S.A.A.
2	Mills No.5 Carried in haversack.

SCHEDULE "E"

CARRYING PARTIES

ULTIMATE OBJECTIVE

MATERIAL

The following material to be carried 50% by B and D Coys., respectively. In addition to the foregoing each man will carry 1 Shovel or pick strapped on back.

30	Coils French wire,	1 Coil per man	30men
50	Long Screw Stakes,	4 per man	13"
10	Axes		
50	Shovels, put up in bundles of 3 per man		17"
12	picks		<u>60</u>

A and C Coys. will arrange their own parties for additional tools.

AMMUNITION

120 Rounds S.A.A.

2 #5 Mills Bombs, carried in haversack.

RESERVE GRENADES.--

6 men as follows:-

4 men	20 Mills No.23	80
2 „	30 „ „ 5	<u>60</u>
		<u>140</u>

Carried in haversacks. In addition each man will carry 2 shovels.

SCHEDULE "F"

DISPOSITION OF SCOUTS AND SNIPERS

At ZERO hour plus 3 Scout Officer, 2 Observers and 2 Battalion Runners will be in Battalion O.P. LONGFELLOW Crater. 7 Snipers will be in position on LONGFELLOW, DURAND and DUFFIELD Crater Lips. 6 Scouts will be at Battalion Headquarters. On capture of intermediate objective, Scout Officer, 6 Scouts and 7 Snipers will move forward.x Scout Officer and 6 Scouts will immediately locate dugout to serve as advanced Battalion Headquarters (report centre). 7 Snipers will take up position in BEGGAR STREET, but on capture of final objective, will immediately move forward 4 being detailed to Left Company and 3 to Right Company.

The 2 Battalion Runners will not move forward with Scout Officer.

The probable location of advanced Battalion Headquarters
is BEGGAR STREET or STAUBWASSER WEG, near BEGGAR ST.

x Snipers may move forward earlier if they think fit.

April 14th, 1917.

OFFICERS GOING IN

HEADQUARTERS,

Major Stanley Counter	Norsworthy	O.C.
„ Royal Lindsay Hamilton	Ewing	2 i/c
Lieut. James Duncan	MacLeod,	Adjutant
„ Lorne Cuthbert	Montgomery,	Asst. Adjutant
„ Alexander James	McIntyre,	Scout Officer-Wd. 10.4.17
„ Charles Stuart	Auld,	Signalling Officer
„ Charles Stuart	Martin,	I/C Bn. Dumps

A COMPANY

Cpt. Eric Barrett,	Finley,	Wounded 9.4.17
Lieut. Richard John	Wattam	Killed 9.4.17
James Turner	Downey	

B COMPANY

Lieut. Roy Farquhar	Studd,	
„ Douglas Farquharson	Small	Killed 9.4.17
„ Harry Bernard	Trout,	Wounded 9.4.17

C COMPANY

Lieut. John Trevor Lancelot	Shum,	Wounded 9.4.17
„ Charles Burnaby	Tinling, (died of wounds)	Wounded 9.4.17
„ Myer Tutzer	Cohen,	
„ Geoffrey	Sheffield (died of wounds)	Wounded 9.4.17

D COMPANY

Major Edson Raymond	Pease,	
Lieut. Stanley	Macdonald,	Wounded 9.4.17
„ Gerald Scarlett	Ashby,	Wounded 9.4.17

Lieut. Hilton, (42nd. Bn. R.H.C.)	7th T.M.Battery	Killed
„ Ewart	7th Field Co. C.E.	
„ Morris, E.R.	7th Bde. M. G. Coy.	
Capt. Charles Beresford	Top [<i>Topp</i>],	Liason Officer with 54th and 102nd. Battalion.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 116
By
Major S. C. Norsworthy, MC.
Commanding - 42nd. Battalion
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

THURSDAY, APRIL 5TH, 1917

-
1.
INTENTION. The 42nd. Battalion (less B and D Coys.) will relieve part of the 43rd. Battalion in the trenches of LA FOLIE SECTOR on W/X night.
 A Coy. will go into EMPIRE REDOUBT, and C Coy, will relieve the left Company of the 43rd. Battalion in the front line.
- On X/Y night A Coy. will move from EMPIRE REDOUBT into the Up per end of the GRANGE SUBWAY.
 B and D Coys., of the 42nd. Battalion will go into the line on X/Y night and B Company will be accommodated in GRANGE SUBWAY immediately in rear of A Coy.
 D Coy. will take over dugouts in EMPIRE REDOUBT vacated by A Coy.
2.
TIME OF START On W/X night the Battalion (less B and D Coys.) will parade
 & at the Camp, ready to move off, at 7.00 p.m., and will pass
ORDER OF MARCH the starting point F.2.d.4.9. at 7.30 p.m.

Order of march will be:-

Headquarters

C Company

A Company

C and D Coys. on X/Y Night will parade at the Camp, ready to move off, at 7.00 p.m., and will pass the same starting point at 7.30p.m.

Order of march will be:-

B Company

D „

On both nights Companies of the 42nd. Battalion will lead on the march to the trenches. They will be followed by P.P.C.L.I. and R.C.R. During the march intervals of 500 yards will be maintained between Battalions and 100 yards between platoons.

3.

ROUTE.

VILLERS AU BOIS – LAMOTTE FARM – (F.2.d.4.9.) F.9.a.0.7. – F.9.a.5.4. – F.4.c.0.3. – F.4.c.2.1. – BERTHONVAL FARM and PLANK ROAD

4.

OFFICERS
BAGGAGE,ETC.

Officers baggage, Mess Boxes, etc. for the trenches will be carried to a point to be selected by the Transport Officer and piled there, by 2.p.m. where it will loaded and taken up on the ration train.

Officers Beds, Men's blankets, and all articles for Q.M.Stores, will be ready at 3.p.m. on day of relief.

5.

REPORTS

Units will report to Battalion Headquarters by Runner immediately relief is complete.

6.

NOTES.

No smoking will be permitted in SUBWAY after 8.p.m. on X/Y night Sanitary regulations will be strictly enforced.

LA SALLE AVENUE is allotted to the 42nd. Battalion as a communication trench.

C.O.

2 i/c

Adjutant

O.C. A Coy.

„ B „

„ C „

„ D „

M.G. O.

Bombing O.

Scout O.

Signal O.

7th C.I.B.

M.O.

T.O.

Q.M.

File.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Lieut./Adjutant

Tue., May 1 to Sat., May 5, 1917

In Divisional Rest, Suburban Huts, VILLERS AU BOIS . This period was spent in the usual training. Fine bright weather.

Lieut.R.Willcock.M.C. was awarded a Bar to his Military Cross for:-

"On April 1st 1917 at 6.45 a.m. N.E. of Neuville St Vaast, this Officer led a party of 30 O.R. (whom he had previously trained himself) with conspicuous coolness, gallantry and judgment, on a successful daylight raid, which penetrated to enemy second line and resulted in many dugouts containing Huns being bombed with Stokes bombs and destroyed, and a number of them being killed above ground by this party and the snipers, and one prisoner being taken alive. When a 4.5 shell fell short in his flank party dispersing it, Lieut. Willcock at great risk to himself moved from the centre to the flank and took personal charge.

Prior to this, on February 13th this Officer planned and trained a party for the successful raid which then took place, but his C.O did not allow him to go over, although he volunteered to do so."

The following Officer reinforcements arrived:-

Lieut.C.G.Heward.

„ W.Hobart.

Sun., May 6, 1917

A and D Coys., moved to the Goodman Tunnel, Quarries Area.

Mon., May 7, 1917

The remainder of the Battalion moved up to the Quarries Area. While in Bde. support we furnished the usual Corps working parties on La Folie Road, and Tram-line from NEUVILLE ST VAAST to top of VIMY RIDGE.

Tue., May 8, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., May 9, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., May 10, 1917

Captn. John McNaughton.M.C. proceeded to the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade as Staff Learner.

Fri., May 11 & Sat., May 12, 1917

The Battalion relieved the 5th C.M.R. in the left sub-section of the 3rd Canadian Division front-age N.E. of VIMY.

During our period of 5 days in the line, active patrolling was carried on nightly, and the principal work was wiring across the front. No unusual incident to report.

Sun., May 13, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., May 14, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., May 15, 1917

Major E.R. Pease proceeded to England on 30 days special leave,

Wed., May 16 & Thu., May 17, 1917

The Battalion was relieved in the line by the 49th Canadian Battalion, Edmonton Regiment and moved into close support in the second line in front of VIMY where we remained for three days furnishing working parties, and were relieved on the night of the 19/20 by the 43rd Canadian Battalion and moved to the Quarries Area, Goodman Tunnel. CASUALTIES during the tour . 1 Killed 2 Wounded.

Fri., May 18, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., May 19, 1917

Major Bartlett McLennan D.S.O. promoted Lieut. Colonel, and his appointment to the command of the Battalion confirmed.

Sun., May 20, 1917

The Battalion was relieved in the Quarries Area by the 5th C.M.R. and moved to VILLERS AU BOIS. Here active training was started on the practice trenches.

Mon., May 21, 1917

The following decorations awarded in connection with operations April 9th 1917 at VIMY RIDGE.

Bar to MILITARY MEDAL.

418753 Sergt. L.Morrison

MILITARY MEDAL.

418083 Sergt. A.B.Proven.
418293 „ J.B.T.Montgomerie.
418736 „ W.A.Brewer.
418784 „ J.L.Davies.
418045 Corpl. M.H.Drury.
418164 „ E.L.Hosking.
419157 „ W.Bestwetherick.
141158 „ W.R.Baird.
418034 L/Cpl. H.Ward.
418129 „ F.Lambert (deceased)
418363 „ A.J.Hodge (attached 7th C.I.B.

418654 Pte. J.D.Neafsey.

Tue., May 22, 1917

Lieut.H.L, Hoyles appointed Assistant Adjutant.

Wed., May 23, 1917

Captn.A.J.deLotbiniere,Camp Commandant, CALONNE RICOURT, proceeded to England to attend Staff Course,Cambridge.

Lieut.R.Wilcock.M.C. proceeded to Course at 1st Army School.

Following awards have been granted to O.R. of the 73rd Canadian Battalion transferred to this Battalion in connection with operations at VIMY RIDGE.

MILITARY MEDAL.

126753 Sergt. Ormandy,G.
132907 Corpl. McCarthy,J.G.
145471 Pte. Humble,J.B. [D]
133305 " Thompson,T. (?)
145084 " Argue,G.N.
133287 " Chapman,A.A.

Thu., May 24, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Fri., May 25, 1917

Lieut.M.A.Orford is attached to 7th Canadian T.M.Btty.

Sat., May 26, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., May 27, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., May 28, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., May 29, 1917

The Pipe Band took part in a performance of the Massed Pipe Bands of the Canadian Corps at Corps Headquarters in CAMBLAIN L'ABBE. A most interesting ceremony at which Field Marshall Sir Douglas Haig, Commander of the 1st Army, Corps Commander and many others were present.

Tue., May 29 to Thu., May 31, 1917

Battalion still in Divisional Reserve, VILLERS AU BOIS.

Signed *Bartlett McLennan*

Lieut.Col.

Cmdg. 42nd.Cdn. Battalion,R.H.C.

Fri., Jun 1 to Tue., Jun 5, 1917

The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve at VILLERS AU BOIS.

Practice for the raid was carried out over tape trenches daily. The weather continued fine and good progress was made. During this period a jumping off trench was dug by the 8th & 9th Canadian Infantry Brigades and 4th Canadian Division, about 100 yards in advance of our old front line on the area to be raided.

(omitted from May Diary) On May 22nd. Lieut. C. F. Gifford proceeded on temporary duty at Canadian Corps Headquarters.

June 1st.
School.

Lieut. H. S. Fry returned to duty from Course of Instruction at Corps Training

Lieut. L. H. Biggar returned from Lewis Gun Course, La Touquet, on which he proceeded May 2nd.

June 2nd.
ing School.

Lieut. E. A. McFall proceeded on Course of Instruction at Canadian Corps Train-

We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:

LEGION D'HONNEUR
Croix de Chevalier
Capt. (A/Major) R. L. H. Ewing, M.C.

MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.
Capt. (A/Major) C. B. Topp,
Lieutenant D. A. Bethune, (Att. 3rd. Canadian Division)
„ W. W. DeRossiter,
„ D. B. Gilmour, (73rd. Cdn. Bn.)
418755 Sergt. S. J. Douglas (7th C.I.B.)
132031 Coy.Sgt.Majr.W. FitzGerald, (73rd.Cdn.Bn.) (Deceased)

Following Officers reported from 3rd. Entrenching Bn. and were posted to companies as under:

Lieut. A. Fleming,	to	D Company
„ J.M. Morris,	„	C „

June 4th.

We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:

MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES
Captain (The Rev.) G. G. D. Kilpatrick,

Following Officer reinforcements arrived and were posted to companies as under:

Lieut. G. A. Parkins,	to	A Company
„ A. G. Johnston,	„	B „

Wed., Jun 6, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the QUARRIES AREA. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion moved from billets at VILLERS AU BOIS relieving the 58th Cdn. Battalion in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA.

Thu., Jun 7, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the front line. The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion moved from GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA relieving part of the 2nd. and 5th C.M.Rs. in the front line. Our area extended from the junction of AMHERST and GASPE trenches to 75 yards West of the Railway Line. The

front line and jumping off trenches were held by B Company, C and D Companies being in Support trenches, and A Company in dugouts under railway.

Lieut. F. W. G. Hale was admitted to hospital with a sprained ankle.

Fri., Jun 8, 1917

The work of trench destruction and wire cutting on the area to be raided was continued by our artillery, and completed in very satisfactory fashion.

The following is brief scheme of the raid:

The raid was carried out by the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, in conjunction with the 4th Canadian Division who raided on our left. Three Battalions of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade took part, jumping off as follows:

The R.C.R. astride Vimy-Avion Railway., The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion from 75 yards West of Railway to junction of GASPE and AMHERST trenches, and the 49th Cdn. Battalion from junction of GASPE and AMHERST to Brigade boundary at about T.1.c.central.

The 87th Bn. of the 11th Canadian Infantry Brigade were on the left of the 49th Battalion, P.P.C.L.I. were in Brigade Reserve.

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion objectives were as follows:

FIRST OBJECTIVE/ Enemy front line and ACORN trenches from points about 40 to 80 yds. respectively west of junction with BEAVER trench to a point in ACE Trench 75 yards west of LENS-ARRAS Railway.

FINAL OBJECTIVE/ ADEPT Trench from footpath about 30 yards west of junction with BEAVER Trench to a point 75 yards west of LENS-ARRAS Railway.

Our dispositions were as follows;

B and D Companies raided first objective – B Coy. on Right, D Coy. on left A and C Companies leap-frogged at the first objective and raided final objective - A Coy. on Right, C Coy. on left.

Only one platoon of B Company went over; the remainder of the company – under Major Topp, garrisoned our front line and jumping off trenches.

Following went over in the raid:	Major	S. J. Mathewson, M.C.	A Coy.
	Lieut.	M. T. Cohen,	A „
	„	J. D. LeMoine,	A „
	„	H. Hamer, M.M.	C „
	„	C. Watt,	C „
	„	E. J. Donnelly,	B „
	Capt.	J. C. Stewart,	D „
	Lieut.	J. T. Downey,	D „
	„	R. W. Gee,	D „

and 420 Other Ranks.

Lieut. Biggar assisted by Lieut. Morris was in charge of Battalion Dumps and evacuation of wounded from our front line back. Major Topp rendered valuable service in getting back prompt information to Battalion Headquarters of the progress of the raid.

About 10.30 p.m. Col. McLennan and Major Ewing with Orderly Room Staff and Runners, proceeded to Advanced HQ. in BLUENOSE Trench.

Following is our official report of the raid:

11.30pm.

Raiding of 9 Officers and 420 O.R. reported in the jumping off trenches, and Brigade, and Battalions on our right and left advised to this effect.

11.45pm.

Artillery and Machine Gun barrage opened.

11.51 .,

Enemy's barrage opened 4.1's and 5.9's – mostly on Bois de la Chaudiere, Bluenose, and Support Areas.

12.25am.

Message received First Objective reached.

Telephone lines went out and this communication was forwarded to Brigade by Artillery wire.

12.45am.

Observers reported that flares were now coming from near Avion. These messages were sent to Brigade

12.47am.

Message by runner received from Major Mathewson to the effect that he was mopping up final objective. This and subsequent messages were sent to Brigade through Artillery wire.

12.55am.

Party reported back with 2 captured Machine Guns and a few prisoners.

12.59am.

Lieut. J. T. Downey who was slightly wounded, reported. At the same time Corpl. Wilson returned and reported few enemy in the final objective. Dugouts badly damaged. Casualties slight.

1.10am.

Message by runner received from Captain Stewart, O.C. First Objective, to the effect that he was in touch with the Battalions on either flank.

1.15am.

Visual message received by lamps "We are in" Rocket was reported. Withdrawal signal from rear.

1.16am.

Artillery Lines went out.

1.45am.

6 Signal rockets for withdrawal were sent up. At the same time out telephone communication to Brigade opened.

1.53am.

casualties"
 2.04am. Message received from Major Topp "Coys. are returning in good order. Few
 2.06am. Communication over Artillery Lines re-opened.
 2.15am. Lieut. LeMoine reported at Headquarters that "A" Company were in.
 2.20am. Message received from Capt. Stewart that all parties had passed through "ACE" withdrawing covering party from ACE.
 2.25am. Lieut. Cohen "A" Company, reported to Battalion Hq. Estimated casualties of the Company one dead and about nine wounded. Saw many German dead. Message sent to O.C. "B" situation normal, replace garrison"
 2.30am. Telephoned to Brigade Major and informed him as to situation.
 3.00am. Wired Brigade "Situation normal, reports indicate very slight casualties. Operations most successful, two Machine Guns and crews captured, Have not received report as to number of prisoners yet. Many German dead reported"
 3.07am. Code message "SHERRY" sent to Brigade.
 At the same hour enemy artillery very active, shelling BLUENOSE, GASPE, and Jumping Off Trenches, also their own front line. Our Artillery continues active.
 4.57am. Last of wounded being evacuated through our front line.
 Estimated casualties 50 including 4 killed, others mostly walking cases. Estimated prisoners taken 25.
 All our dead and wounded brought down.
 5.15am. Report from Battalion frontage that the enemy continued intermittent shelling on their own front line with 4.1's and 5.9's.

REPORT OF OBSERVERS.

11.44pm. Our barrage opened
 11.45pm. Enemy Orange spray flare on our front. — Green light opposite R.C.R. front, also orange spray.
 11.50pm. Enemy barrage on our front line fairly intense.
 11.55pm. Enemy barrage on BLUENOSE in T.7.d. and west along Halifax.
 11.57pm. 2 green flares opposite our right flank.
 12.02am.

Enemy barrage heaviest about junction of PICTOU and HALIFAX, also in BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE.

12.11am.

No flares of any kind going up on front.

12.13am.

Enemy putting up "VERY" Lights from considerably farther in rear than ordinarily.

12.16am.

Red Rocket opposite out left flank.

12.21am.

Our signalling lamp observed in enemy line.

12.25am.

Enemy shelling decreasing.

12.30am.

Green flares far in rear opposite R.C.R. front.

12.35am.

Green flare in enemy line opposite 49th front.
Enemy M.G. firing on BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE.

12.39am.

Green flare opposite our front well in rear of AVION Trench.

12.40am.

Two green flares opposite R.C.R. front.

12.50am.

Enemy ceased shelling on R.C.R. front.

12.52am.

Enemy shelling on our front still decreasing.

1.02am.

Our barrage opened on enemy lines on right of our Brigade.

1.14am.

Two rockets bursting into vari-coloured spray put up in our rear.

1.28am.

Two green lights opposite our right flank.

1.30am.

One green light sent up from AVION. Enemy renewed shelling on our front trenches.

1.32am.

Enemy golden chain rockets opposite our left flank well in rear.

1.46am.

Enemy putting up numerous white flares well in rear.

1.48am.

Succession of rockets going up in our rear and on our left bursting into vari-coloured spray.

1.54am.

Golden chain rockets going up in enemy rear lines on our front, also 49th front.

REPORT OF SCOUTS.

<u>Enemy wire:</u>	No serious obstacles. Isolated pieces intact, but gaps plenty ful.
<u>Enemy Trenches:</u>	No revettment. Practically useless as trenches from our shell fire.
<u>Dugouts:</u>	Plentiful in ACE and ACORN trenches. Majority of en- trances blown in. Dugouts on ACE between BEVEL and BEAVER contained considerable number of Germans who were reluctant to come up.
 T.M. & M.G.	
<u>EMPLACEMENTS:</u>	None noted.
Listening	
<u>Posts</u> _____:	Indications of one in front of enemy wire at ap- prox. T.1.d.0.6.
<u>Remarks:</u>	Quantities of arms and equipment scattered around indi- cated hasty flight.

GENERAL

In connection with the attack on our left; at 8.30 p.m. it was noticed that the enemy artillery fire in our area was very erratic. La Chaudiere Wood, Bluenose Trench, Railroad, Lens-Arras Road, and the batteries in front of railroad switch were all shelled rapidly in turn and gave the impression that the enemy was much bewildered.

The enemy's artillery continued active on our area until about 10.p.m. During the time our companies were moving into the assembly trenches it was not heavy.

At 11.45 p.m. when our barrage was put down, the enemy sent up several green rockets at different points. Enemy barrage was put down in 6 minutes on BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE, BLUENOSE, and our Support Trenches and also on GASPE and SYDNEY Trenches, our old front line. 5 minutes later the enemy began shelling points in our back area with shrapnel. Our company Officers are agreed that the wire on our front had been well cut. The pace of the barrage proved satisfactory. Our men were able to keep up to it as a result several machine guns were disposed of before they could come fully into action. Touch was maintained with Battalions on both flanks throughout the advance. An effort at resistance was made in several cases by Machine Gun crews, although on the whole we think it was less determined than on April 9th. With the exception of the Machine Gun crews, the enemy either fled or surrendered easily. Enemy losses in their trenches were heavy, and many more must have been killed by running into our Artillery and M.G. barrages, and in dugouts from which a considerable number were found in ACE and ADEPT trenches and a few in ACORN.

The practice over the taped trenches proved of the greatest value both in the assault and the withdrawal. The latter was carried out deliberately, and all our casualties included killed were brought out. It was greatly assisted by two lines of white tape which were laid from our final objectives to our jumping off trenches. An overland route was also taped and trenches bridged from our front line back to our Dressing Station, following the low ground on the left of our area which observation shows to be comparatively free from shell fire. This proved invaluable. not only for stretcher carrying parties but in enabling the raiding parties to get quickly back to their places in support and second line trenches.

A line was laid forward from our line to first Objective. This line ran to a report centre in ACE trench which was established at zero plus 11. A continuation of this line was then run to the final objective and a station established there at zero plus 37.

These lines did not go out during the entire show and messages were sent on them at different times by Officers Commanding first and final objectives. The station at final objective withdrew with the company commander and the station at first objective withdrew after having sent a message back from the Officer Commanding to that effect. Both these stations were kept open until all the troops in the trench with the exception of covering parties had withdrawn.

The line from our front line back to Battalion Headquarters could not be maintained and all messages coming back were taken from front line to Battalion HQ. by runner.

Visual.

Lamp stations were established at First and Final objectives. The station at final objective O.K'd back to Headquarters but as phone lines were in no messages were sent back by lamp from here.

The lamp station at final objective could not be seen. All messages telephone were verbal.

(Sgd).E. W. Auld, Lieut.Sig.Sec.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS TO BE ADDED TO REPORT OF RAID OF 8th/9th INST. d.June 10th, 1917

Trophies.

Please note that our Summary of Machine Guns should be:-

3 machine guns capture, one of which was a new light Machine Gun 1917 pattern.

There were other guns encountered but these were destroyed.

In the destruction of dugouts our men used Stokes Shells instead of mobile charges, and for conditions existing in the area they were most effective.

Re Communications.

I attach report of the Signalling Officer. His work was in some effect neutralised as lines of communication in rear of our front lines were practically out of Commission throughout the raid.

Prisoners.

The number claimed in the first report was 26 for which we hold receipts, but we believe we turned in a total of 43 to Military Police at the straggler posts, and there were three wounded prisoners, making a total of 46.

Casualties.

Killed	5	O.R.
Died of wounds	1	„
Wounded 2 Officers	68	„
Unaccounted for	1	„

Referring to the damage inflicted.

The subsequent report of those taking part would indicate that the casualties inflicted were very heavy, and these were caused by raiding party and the destruction of dugouts, the preliminary bombardment and the barrage, and there is no doubt there must have been heavy casualties in rear of our final objective as many of the enemy's garrison had fled and would have come under the Machine Gun and Artillery Barrage in rear, and this was confirmed by observation along the front of the large numbers of the enemy seen to be evacuating wounded.

(Sgd) Lieut.Col. Cmdg.42nd. Bn.RHC

It had been hoped that the enemy would continue for some time in ignorance of the fact that we had evacuated the raided trenches, but very early on the 9th carrying parties could be seen moving about the raided area evacuating wounded under the protection of the white flag.

June 9th. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion took over the battle frontage (for previous evening's raid) relieving two companies of the R.C.R. on the right and one company of the 49th Canadian Battalion on the left. This required the entire battalion in the front line. Our disposition being as follows: A Company on the right C Company astride VIMY-AVION Railway
B „ on Battle Frontage D „ on the Battle Frontage of the 49th Canadian Battalion.

Sat., June 8 & Sun., Jun 10, 1917

June 9th This frontage was occupied for four days when the 4th Division took over the line to a point 50 yards east of VICTORIA Rd., and B Company extended left to the latter point enabling D Company to move into Support in the dugouts under the Railway.

The balance of the tour (June 7th to 13th) was without special incident. Very fair progress was made in replacing our wire which we had cut by hand early on the evening of the raid.

The enemy's offensive activity was entirely centered in the use of his light Trench Mortars. C, B, and D Companies each suffered a few casualties from this cause, and they would have undoubtedly been much heavier but for the excellent support given us by our Divisional Artillery.

At the end of the tour the C.O. wrote a formal letter expressing appreciation of the very satisfactory work of Lieut. McGillivray, of the 33rd. C.F.A. who acted as liason Officer during the entire tour.

Lieut. H. A. Sewell joined the Battalion and was posted to D Company.

June 10th. We received advise of the following Honours and Awards:

D.S.O.

Major S. C. Norsworthy, M.C.

Capt. E. R. Pease,

THE MILITARY CROSS

Captain W. Hale, M.O.

Lieut. J.T.L. Shum,

Mon., Jun 11, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Jun 12, 1917

We received advice of the following Honours and Awards.

<u>THE MILITARY MEDAL</u>		
133316 L/Cpl.	Comba,	M.R.
145373 Sgt.	Lash,	J.

Wed., Jun 13, 1917

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion was relieved in the front line by the 58th Canadian Battalion, and moved into Support in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA.

Thu., Jun 14 to Mon., Jul 2, 1917

The Battalion remained in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA. Working parties (running as high as 420 on one or two nights/) were furnished. The principal work was the construction of a trench down the eastern slope of VIMY RIDGE, connecting BLUE and BLIGHTY trenches, deepening the latter, and connecting with GLACE BAY trench To-wards the end of the period when the enemy had withdrawn from AVION working parties were furnished filling shell holes and trench crossings.on VICTORIA Rd, which was made passable as far as AVION Trench.

Permission was obtained to carry on inoculation at the rate of 100 men every second day, in this way the entire Battalion was inoculated.

Small special classes were also carried on in Lewis Gun and Rifle Grenade instruction, and an N.C.O's. class under the Battn. Sergeant Major was held at the Transport Lines, Two men per company practised with the Bn. Snipers on a range established in LONG-FELLOW Crater. The remainder of the Battalion, who were not on working parties or inoculated, carried on P.T., Bayonet Fighting, and Close Order Drill, from 9 a.m. till noon daily.

During this period the enemy's artillery was not active on the Support Area and our casualties were extremely light.

June 18th Lieut. M. A. Orford (Att.7Th.Cdn. T.M.Battery) was admitted to hospital sick.

June 21st. We received advise of the following Honours and Awards:

<u>MEDALLE MILITAIRE</u>	
193598	Pte. C. L. Myles, D.C.M.

Following proceeded on 14 Day Course of Instruction at 3rd. Divisional School

Lieut. G. A. Parkins, A Coy.

„ A. G. Johnston, B „
 „ J. M. Morris, C „

June 22nd. Lieut. E. A. McFall returned from Course of Instruction, Cdn. Corps Training School.

June 29th. Lieut. R. Willcock, M.C. returned from Course of Instruction 1st. Army School.

June 30th We received advice of the following Honours and Award in connection with the raid of June 8th.

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

419157 Sergt. Beswetherwick, W.

THE MILITARY MEDAL

132028 Sergt. Hopkins, E. W.	418412 Pte. MacDonald, D.J.
126296 Cpl. Loughleen, W.	418855 Sgt. Gray, J.
132113 Sgt. Chatham, F.O.	418896 Cpl. McKeown, F.
192380 L/Cpl. Taylor, W.J.	418233 Sgt. Morton, W.R.
(192830)	

During the last week of June Col. Dyer, D.S.O. assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in succession to General A. C. Macdonell, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., promoted to Command 1st. Canadian Division.

Capt. J. McNaughton, M.C. accompanied Gen. Macdonell as Orderly Officer.

Bartlett McLennan

Lieut. Col.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Sun., Jul. 1, 1917

The Battalion was still in Divisional Support GOODMAN TUNNEL Area.

Mon., Jul. 2 & Tue., Jul 3, 1917

On the night July 2/3rd the Battalion moved into the line relieving the 116th Canadian Battalion in the centre sub-section AVION Area, the 49th Canadian Battalion were on the right, and the P.P.C.L.I. on the left., the front and outpost lines being taken over by "D" Company on the right of the VIMY – AVION Railway and "B" Company on the left. "C" Company., were in support in ADEPT and AGENT Trenches. "A" Company were in reserve in PARTRIDGE Trench (old front line.)

On the night of relief enemy's artillery was very active "A" Company had 4 casualties from shell fire while assembling at GOODMAN TUNNEL to move off. "D" Company had 5 casualties on the way in.

Mon., Jul. 2, 1917

Lieut R.W.Gee and 7 O.R. returned from First Army Rest Camp.

Major R.L.H.Ewing M.C. returned from English leave.
Lieuts. G.A.Parkins,J.M.Morris and A.G.Johnstone returned from Courses of Instruction.

Capt.J.K.Beveridge.M.C. proceeded on English leave.
Captn.Hale.M.C. the Battalion.M.O. was admitted to Hospital sick and
Captn.Harvey C.A.M.C. [*Canadian Army Medical Corps*] 9th Field Ambulance was temporarily attached to the Battalion.

Tue., Jul 3, 1917

Lieut.H.A.Sewell and 18 O.R. proceeded on Course of Instruction 3rd Divisional School.
Lieut.Lemoine and 4 O.R. proceeded to General Course at Corps School.

Lieut.H.B.Trout and 4 O.R. proceeded to Sniping Course at Corps School.
C.S.M. Scott and 9 O.R.proceeded to First Army Rest Camp.
Lieut.H.E.Cook was wounded and admitted to Hospital.

Wed., Jul 4, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Thu., Jul 5, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Fri., Jul 6 & Sat., Jul 7, 1917

On the night 6/7th an inter-company relief took place "C" Company took over the right sub-section and "A" Company the left sub section.

Sun., Jul 8, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Mon., Jul 9, 1917

Major.S.C.Norsworthy,D.S.O.,M.C., and Lieut.H.Hamer proceeded on English leave.

MajorR.L.H.Ewing M.C., attended the French Investiture at BLENDÉCQUES to receive the Legion d, Honneur.

continued.

Tue., Jul 10, 1917

The Distinguished Conduct Medal was awarded No.419040 Sergt.E.Greaves for conspicuous gallantry during the raid on the night 8/9th June.1917.

Tue., Jul 10 & Wed., Jul 11, 1917

The Battalion was relieved on the night of 10/11th July by the 2nd C.M.R. and moved to ZOUAVE VALLEY.

This tour in the line was notable for the intensity of the enemy's shelling with Artillery and heavy Trench Mortars. The Battalion occupied part of the village of AVION and excellent observation was obtained from ruined houses on enemy movement, and good co-operation existed with Field Artillery, which resulted in the engaging of a number of opportunity targets.

In one shoot the enemy demolished all the houses on a street occupied by "C" company, including the knocking down of the house, the cellars of which were the advanced Company Headquarters. Enemy aircraft were abnormally active and repeatedly flew over our lines at a low altitude, firing their machine guns on the troops.

Our casualties for the tour were:-

Lieut. H.E. Cook M.M. and 44 O.R. wounded.

15 O.R. Killed and Died of Wounds.

Wed., Jul 11, 1917

On the 11th the Battalion moved from Divisional Support, ZOUAVE VALLEY to VANCOUVER CAMP, CHATEAU DE LA HAIE.

Thu., Jul 12, 1917

Capt. W. Hale M.C. returned to Battalion from Hospital and Capt. Harvey reported back to his unit.

Fri., Jul 13, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Jul 14, 1917

The following Officers reinforcements reported.

Lieut. W.C. Baber.

„ E.S. Turner.

„ G.S. Ashby,

Sun., Jul 15, 1917

Capt. J.K. Beveridge, M.C. returned from English leave.

Mon., Jul 16, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Jul 17, 1917

Lieuts.E.J.Donnely and M.T.Cohen and 14 O.R. proceeded to Course of Instruction 3rd Canadian Divisional Training School.

The undermentioned decorations were awarded in connection with the raid on 8/9th June.

BAR TO MILITARY CROSS.

Captn.S.J.Mathewson. M.C.

THE MILITARY CROSS.

Lieut.(A/Captn)J.C.Stewart.

„ J.T.Downey.

Lieuts.J.D.MacLeod and R.F.Studd,proceeded to PARIS on leave.

Wed., Jul 18, 1917

Lieuts Fry and Turner and "B" Company were attached to the 172nd Tunnelling Coy., They proceeded to LA COULOTTE for work during our tour in Divisional Support.

418001 B.S.M. MacFarlane.P.W. was awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal.

Thu., Jul 19, 1917

The Battalion less 1 Company moved from VANCOUVER,CHATEAU DE LA HAIE,on the afternoon of the 10th (19th) to COMOX CAMP, adjoining BERTHON VAL WOOD.

During our stay in Divisional Reserve the usual training was carried on,great interest being taken in Musketry,the Battalion having the ranges for 2 days. Competitive shoots were held and prizes awarded to the highest scorers,and the coaches on the best targets.

Lieut.Col.McLennan.D.S.O., and Captn.H.B.MacDougall proceeded on English leave.

Fri., Jul 20, 1917

Captn.J.C.Stewart admitted to Hospital sick.

Sat., Jul 21, 1917

Lieut.H.Hamer returned from English leave.

Sun., Jul 22, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Jul 23, 1917

Major.S.C.Norsworthy.D.S.O.,M.C., returned from English leave.

continued.

During the tour in Divisional Support the Battalion furnished working parties, the principal work being on winter horse standings, CARENCEY. For those not employed on this work, specialists training and tactical exercises were carried on.

Tue., Jul 24, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Jul 25, 1917

The Battalion moved from COMOX CAMP to Divisional Rest at LOZINGHEM, staging on the night 25/26th at GAUCHIN Legal.

Thu., Jul 26, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Jul 27, 1917

Capt. J. C. Stewart reported back from Hospital.

Lieuts. Donnelly and M. T. Cohen reported from Course of Instruction at 3rd.Canadian Divisional Training School.

Sat., Jul 28, 1917

Lieut. H. B. Trout returned from Sniping Course, and Lieut. J. D. LeMoine returned from General Course, at Canadian Corps School.

Sun., Jul 29, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Jul 30, 1917

Capt. J. C. Stewart, MC. and Capt. Wm. Hale, MC. proceeded on leave to England. Capt. J. A. Briggs (C.A.M.C.) (*Canadian Army Medical Corps*] being temporarily attached to the Battalion as M.O. during Captain Hale's leave.

Tue., Jul 31, 1917

Lt.Col. B. McLennan, DSO. And Capt. H. B. MacDougall, returned from English leave.

During this portion of the Divisional Rest training was vigorously carried on, special attention being paid to Musketry and smartening up drill.

Copies of Battalion Operation Orders issued during the month are attached.

Bartlett McLennan

.....Lieut. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Bn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

SECRET

A OPERATION ORDER NO.131.
By
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd. Battalion.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

REF:- 36c S.W. 1/10,000.

MONDAY. JULY 2nd.1917.

1.
INFORMATION.

On the night 2nd/3rd June 1917, 7th Cdn,Inf.Bde. will relieve 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde. in the line.

2.
INTENTION.

The Battalion will relieve 116th Canadian Battalion in the centre sub-section . The 49th Cdn.Battn.will be on our right and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left.

3.
ORDER OF MARCH.

The Battalion will move off as follows:- with intervals of 100 yards between companies:-

Headquarters.	9.45 p.m.
D Company	10.00 ,,

B	„	10.15	„
C	„	10.30	„
A	„	10.45	„

4.

DISPOSITION.

On completion of relief companies will be distributed as follows:-

Front Line. D Company on the right – three platoons
in the Outpost Line, astride railway.

B Company on the left – two platoons
in the Outpost Line and two platoons in AVION Trench.

Support Line. C Company in AGENT and ADEPT trenches.

 A Company in old front line and PARTRIDGE
Trenches.

5. SIGNALS.

The Signal Section will proceed in advance of the Bn. and will arrange relief with the Signalling Officer of 116th Cdn Battalion.

ADVANCE

6. PARTIES.

Advance parties of 1 Officer and 2 N.C.O's per Coy. will be sent under company arrangements to take over trench stores etc.

7. RATIONS.

24 hours rations will be issued and carried in on the men. All water bottles will be filled.

8. BAGGAGE.

Officers kits, mess boxes, Orderly Room boxes, etc, for the trenches will be piled near Orderly Room by 9 p.m.

Officers servants will accompany pack train.

9. LEWIS GUNS.

Lewis Guns and Discs must be ready at Orderly Room by 8.45 p.m. to be loaded on limbers. Company Commanders will detail 1 man per crew to accompany limbers. They will be picked up by Companies on their way to trenches at junction of LENS – ARRAS Roads.

10. KITCHENS.

Teams will report for kitchens at 7 p.m.

11. INSPECTION
OF BILLETS.

Billets will be cleaned and free of men, ready for inspection at 8.30 p.m.

12 GUIDES.

Guides from 116th Canadian Battalion will be picked up by Companies at junction of LENS – ARRAS and VICTORIA Rds

13. BATTALION
HEADQUARTERS.

Battalion Headquarters will be in BLUENOSE Trench at T.7.d.7.7.

P.T.,O.

14 REPORTS.

Companies will report completion of relief by 'phone, using code message "Rations received at"

They will also report relief by runner who will, bring copy of trench stores.

.....

H.L.HOYLES.

Lieut.Asst.Adjutant.

COPIES TO/	7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.	1 16th Cdn.Bn.
	C.O.	Asst.Adj.
	2 i/c	Q.M.
	A.B.C.D.Coys.	Scout Officer.
	T.O.	M.O.
	Signal Officer.	Rear H.Q.
	R.S.M.	File.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.132

by

Lieut. Colonel B.McLennan,D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd. Battalion,

5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

JULY 6TH, 1917.

1.INTENTION.

There will be an inter-company relief on the night 6/7th inst.

2.POSITION

"C" Coy. will relieve "D" Coy. on the right sub-section.

"A" Coy. will relieve "B" Coy., on the left sub-section.

Coys. being relieved will take over Support and Reserve positions held by relieving companies

3.TIME.

Time of relief will be arranged between the Companies concerned, but must not take place before dark.

4.ORDER
OF RELIEF

2 Platoons of "C" Coy. to relieve Outpost Lines will move in first.

2 Platoons of "A" Coy. to relieve Outpost Line next. Balance of Companies in accordance with arrangements between company commanders.

5.ROUTE.

Relieving Companies will move up by way of BEAVER Trench, which will be for their exclusive use until they are all in.

6. ADVANCE PARTIES.

Small advance parties as per arrangements with Company Commanders.

7.RATIONS.

"A" and "C" Coys. will detail 25 men each to be left behind for carrying rations.

"B" and "D" will send down their storemen to ration dump, and will provide their own parties when relief is complete.

8.WATER

"B" and "D" Coys. will fill water tins and leave them ready for the incoming Companies.

Water for "B" and "D" will come up with the rations.

9.REPORTS.

Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the message "Rations received at"

R.L.H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant.

7th C.I.Bde.

C.O.

O.C. A B C D Coys.

File.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 133

By

Lieut.Colonel.B.McLennan, D.S.O.

Commanding - 42nd. Canadian Bn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map. Sheet 36c.S.W.
Sheet 36.b.

1. SUNDAY JULY 8TH, 1917.

1.INFORMATION.

The Brigade will berelieved in the Line by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the nights July 9/10th and 10/11th, and will move to the CHATEAU DE LA HAIE Area,

2.INTENTION.

The 42nd. Battalion will be relieved in the centre sub-section by the 2nd. C.M.R. Battalion on the night 10/11th and move to the ZOUAVE VALLEY Area where they will bivouac.

3.ORDER OF RELIEF.

Platoons will move off independently under Coy. arrangements on completion of relief.

4.SIGNALS

The relief of Signals will be under arrangements of the Signalling Officers concerned, but Signallers will remain at their 'phones until Coys. are relieved, and go out with their companies.

5.TRENCH MORTARS

Section of 7th T.M.Battery in our area will be relieved under arrangements between Officers concerned, the relief to be reported to Battalion H.Q. on completion.

6 GUIDES.

(a) 1 Guide per platoon will report to Lieut. Biggar at junction of Victoria Road and Halifax Trench at 6.30pm. on the night 9/10th, and will proceed under him to Transport Lines. Lieut. Biggar and party will report to 8th Cdn. Inf.Bde. H.Q. Rugby Dump on the BETHUNE ARRAS Rd. at S.19.b.5.2. at 4 pm. on the afternoon of the 10th

(b) An additional guide per platoon, 2 from H.Q. and 1 from 7th T.M. Battery, will report at the junction of Victoria Road and Halifax Trench at 11 pm. on the night 10/11th and wait arrival of Lieut. Biggar with incoming Battalion.

7.RECEIPTS.

Receipts for Trench Stores and Sanitary condition of Trenches and area will be obtained from incoming Bn., and sent to Orderly Room by noon of the 11th.

8. TRANSPORT.

Limbers will report at Bn. Ration Dump junction of Victoria Rd. & Halifax Trench at 1 a.m. Officers kits, Lewis Guns, etc., will be sent there prior to that, and turned over to Sergt. Proven who will be in charge of Dump.

One batman per Coy., will remain with Officers Baggage at Dump.

9.BIVOUAC. AREA.

Guides who proceed out with Lieut. Biggar will act as Guides for their respective platoons to the BIVOUAC AREA in ZOUAVE VALLEY.

Kitchens will report to area and hot tea will be ready for companies when they reach Bivouac Area.

10.ROUTINE.

JULY 11th. BreakfastUnder Company arrangements.

Dinner at 1.30 pm.

11.REPORTS.

Relief will be reported by telephone using the code words "Your R.E.101 received at,,,,," Should telephone service be disconnected a runner will be sent to Bn.H.Q. to report relief complete.

7th T.M.Battery will report relief by runner to Bn.H.Q.

11. JULY 11th, 1917

1.INTENTION

The Battn. will move from ZOUAVE VALLEY Area to CHATEAU DE LA HAIE Area. Head of Column to pass HOSPITAL CORNER CARENCY – X.17.c.0.5½ at 3.50 p.m.

R.L.H. EWING, M.C.

7th C.I.Bde.	2nd. C.M.R.
7th T.M.Btty.	C.O.
O.C.A.B.C.D.Coys.	Transport Officer
B.S.M.	File.

Major/Adjutant.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.134.

Copy No..18.....

by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan. D.S.O.
Commanding. 42nd Battalion.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Maps. (CARENCY. 1/10,000
(VIMY 1/10,000

July.18th.1917.

-
- 1.INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve 9th Cdn. Inf.Bde. in the Support Area in Divisional Support on 18th and 19th insts.
 - 2.INTENTION. The Battalion less 1 Company ("B" Coy)will move from Vancouver Camp,Chateau de la Haie on the 19th inst., and will relieve 116th Cdn. Bn. in COMOX CAMP, adjoining Berthonval Wood.
 - 3.ADVANCE PARTIES. As already detailed, and advance party consisting of 1 Officer (Lieut. MacFall) and 3 (?) N.C.Os and 10 O.R. from "A" "C" & "D" Coys., and 1 N.C.O. and 5 O.R. from Hq.will proceed to COMOX CAMP on the 18th inst., to take over camp and be responsible for same,in addition to which they will arrange allotment of billets,and the leading of Head quarters and Coys., thereto.
 - 4.PARADE. Battalion will parade at 4 p.m. July 19th, in mass on Battalion Parade Ground,and will march off in the following order:-
Headquarters & "A" Coy.
"C" Company.
"D" ,,
300 yards distance will be maintained between Coys. , Pipers will report to and march with, their companies.
Head of column must not pass Hospital Corner prior to 4.50 p.m.
 5. DRESS. Heavy Marching Order. Steel Helmet to be attached to pack.
 6. OFFICERS BED ROLLS, ETC. Officers Bed rolls,Mess Boxes,Company Stores,Instructional Grenades,etc., will be piled at ration dump beside Orderly Room ready at 4.15 p.m.
 7. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will be piled at Ration Dump,beside Orderly Room ready for limbers at 2(?).15 p.m. Two Lewis Gunners par company will

accompany limbers and act as guard over same when they reach camp.

8. KITCHENS. Teams for "A" "C" & "D" Coys., kitchens will report at 2(?).15 p.m.
9. OFFICERS CHARGERS. Officers chargers will report at 3.50 p.m.
- 10.INSPECTION OF BILLETS. Huts will be clear of men and ready for inspection by 2(?).45 p.m. 19th. inst.
11. REAR PARTY Rear Party to consist of 1 Senior N.C.O. and 2 .O.R. from Hq. & 2.O.R. per Coy., will report to the Orderly Officer who will be responsible for the camp until same is taken over by the incoming Battalion.
12. BRIGADE H.Q. Brigade H.Q. will close at 6.p.m. 19th inst., at Chateau de la Haie, and open at the same hour at S.19.b.5.2. Bethune-Arras Road.
- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|-------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | 7th C.I.Bde. | 8. | O.C. "C" Coy. | R.L.H.EWING. M.C. |
| 2. | 116th Cdn.Bn. | 9. | O.C. "D" „ | |
| 3. | C.O. | 10. | Signal Officer. | Major / Adjt. |
| 4. | 2 i/c. | 11. | Scout Officer. | |
| 5. | Adjutant. | 12. | M.O. | |
| 6. | O.C. "A" Coy. | 13. | B.S.M. | |
| 7. | O.C. "C" Coy. | 14. | File. | |
| | | 15/18 | War Diary. | |

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 135
by
Major.S.C.Norsworthy.D.S.O.
Commanding – 42nd Battalion.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Copy No....

Ref.map 36b. 1/40,000.

JULY 24th 17.

-
- 1.INFORMATION.
- a. The Brigade will move to the ALLOUAGNE-LAPUGNOY LOZINGHEM Training Area.
 - b. Moves will take place in accordance with the attached appendices.
 - c. On the march intervals of at least 200 yards will be maintained between companies and 500 yards between Battalions.
The following halts will be observed:-
From 50 to 60 minutes after each clock hour
Other halts are given in appendices.

No halts will be made in villages.

- d. (i) Brigade Headquarters will close at 12 noon 25th July at S.19.b.4.2. and open on same day at ALLOUAGNE on arrival.
(ii) The Brigade Major and Staff Captain "A" and "Q" will be at VERDREL on the night of 25/26th July.
- e. Camp and Billeting areas will be clean, free of men, and ready for inspection three quarters of an hour before the time named to march off. O.C's Units will be responsible for their clean and sanitary condition.
- f. Pipe Band. Pipers will report to their Companies.
- g. Stragglers. 1 N.C.O. will be detailed to march in rear of the Battalion who will be responsible for collecting stragglers, should there be any. On completion of the march these will be paraded before the M.O. and lists of names furnished the Orderly Room the same evening.

2. INTENTION.

The Battalion will move from COMOX CAMP on the 25th inst., to LOZINGHEM Area staging at GAUCHIN-LEGAL on the night 25/26th inst, and move to LOZINGHEM on the 26th.

FIRST DAY - JULY 25th

3. PARADE.

The Battalion will fall in on the parade ground In mass ready to move off at 10.00 a.m.

4. BRIGADE
STARTING POINT
AND TIME.

The Battalion will pass starting point Cross Roads VILLERS AU BOIS - X.19.b.0.2. at 11.00 a.m.

5. ROUTE.

Via tracks to VILLERS AU BOIS – GRAND SERVINS.

6. HALTS.

In addition to halts laid down there will be a halt from 11.50 a.m. to 12.20 p.m.

7. OFFICERS BED
ROLLS, ORDERLY
ROOM & MESS
BOXES.

Will be piled opposite Orderly Room ready for loading by 8.45 a.m.

8. KITCHENS.

Teams will report for kitchens at 9.30 a.m. Hot tea will be served during the halt at 11.50 a.m.

9. TRANSPORT.

Transport will move in rear of Battalion and will be parked at X.19.d.15.95 junction of cross country track and road at VILLERS AU BOIS, ready to move off at 10.40 a.m.

continued.

OPERATION ORDER NO.135

Sheet 2.

SECOND DAY - JULY 26th.

in

1. PARADE. The Battalion will fall in/column of route head of column opposite a point to be arranged ready to move off at 7.15 a.m.

2. BRIGADE STARTING POINT AND TIME. The Battalion will pass starting point at P.17.b.5.1 Cross Roads at 8.35 a.m.

3. ROUTE. Via. P.10.b. HOUDAIN – BRUAY.

4. HALTS. In addition to halts laid down there will be a halt from 9.30 a.m. to 10.00 a.m.

5. OFFICERS BED ROLLS, ORDERLY ROOM & MESS BOXES. Will be piled opposite Orderly Room ready for loading by 6.45 a.m.

6. KITCHENS. Teams will report for kitchens at 6.45 a.m.

7. TRANSPORT. Transport will move in rear of Battalion and will be parked at point to be arranged by Transport Officer ready to move off at 7.05 a.m.

R.L.H. EWING.M.C.

Major/Adjutant.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Copy No. 1. | 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde. | 8. O.C. C. Coy. |
| 2. | Camp Commandant. | 9. O.C. D „ |
| 3. | Officer Commanding. | 10. Bn.Sig.Officer. |
| 4. | 2 i/c. | 11. Lewis Gun Officer. |
| 5. | Adjutant. | 12. Quartermaster. |
| 6. | O.C. A Coy. | 13. Transport Officer. |
| 7. | O.C. B „ | 14. Medical Officer. |
| | | 15. B.S.M. |
| | | 16. 17. & 18 – War Diary. |

[APPENDIX TO 42ND BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO.135](#)

[APPENDIX \(II\) TO 42ND BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO.135.](#)

Sketch Showing Distribution of 42 R.H.C. Aug.30/17.

MESSAGE PAD.

ALL PLACES REFERRED TO SHOULD BE MARKED ON THE MAP.

- Company) (Map reference or
(mark on map.
1. My Platoon) is at (and consolidating.
(and have consolidated.
2. I am held up at by M.G. at
by wire at
by strongly occupied trench
at
3. I need Ammunition)
Bombs)
Rifle Grenades) Scratch out what is not required.
Water)
Rations)
Very Lights)
Stokes Shells)
4. Counter-attack forming up at
5. I am in touch with on my Right at
on my Left at
6. I am not in touch on my Right.
„ „ „ „ „ „ Left.
7. Troops on my Right are at
„ „ „ Left „ „
8. I am being [*being*] shelled from
9. I am under rifle fire from
„ „ M.G. „ „
10. Hostile battery active at
„ M.G. active at
11. I have sent forward patrols to
12. I have established advanced posts at

13. The enemy holds the line
14. is unoccupied by the enemy
 is occupied by the enemy
15. I estimate my present strength at

Time	Name
	Platoon
Date	Company
	Battalion

NOTE: Strike out anything not applicable.

Wed., Aug 1, 1917

The Battalion in Rest Billets in LOZINGHEM
 Lieuts. J. D. MacLeod and R. F. Studd returned from Paris Leave
 Major L. H. R. Ewing, MC. proceeded to 1st Conference of Artillery and Infantry held at the Artillery School, AIRE.

Thu., Aug 2, 1917

Lieuts. R. McIntyre and J. A. Aldridge having come from the 20th Reserve Battalion were taken on the strength of the Battalion, both having previously having been N.C.O's in the Battalion.

Through the courtesy of the Municipal Authorities the use of the School Rooms at either end of the village was granted to the Battalion, and were opened as reading and writing rooms for the men. This act was very much appreciated.

Fri., Aug 3, 1917

Capt. E. R. Pease, DSO. having returned from leave was taken on the strength of the Battalion.

Sat., Aug 4, 1917

A poll was opened to receive ballots of Officers, N.C.O's and men entitled to vote for the return of Military Members of the Alberta Legislature.

Sun., Aug 5, 1917

Church Parade was held in the morning, and the afternoon was devoted to Sports.
 Major R. L. H. Ewing, MC. returned from Artillery Conference in AIRE.

Mon., Aug 6, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Aug 7, 1917

A very interesting dinner was given by Brig. Gen Dyer, DSO, G.O.C., 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde. to Lieut. Gen. Sir Arthur Currie, Commander of the Canadian Corps.

Wed., Aug 8, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Aug 9, 1917

The Battalion paraded at 9.30 am. and proceeded to Brigade Sports at MARLES-LES-MINES where we had a very successful day.

Our Outdoor and Indoor Baseball and Football teams all won their matches in each instance against the P.P.C.L.I. in addition to which we won the Officers' relay race and a number of track events, claiming first place in the Brigade with 76 points.

Fri., Aug 10, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Aug 11, 1917

The C.O. inspected platoons for the Dimbell [*Dumbell*] competition. No.2 Platoon "A" Company, Lieut. C.B.Howard in command, won and was chosen to represent the Battalion in the Brigade competition.

Sun., Aug 12, 1917

Battalion Church Parade was held in the morning and the afternoon was devoted to Sports.

Capt. W. A. Grafftey reported and was taken on the strength of the Battalion

Mon., Aug 13, 1917

The promotion of Lieut. R. Willcock,MC. to be Actg. Major 30.6.17 was confirmed in Orders.

Sergt. J. B. T. Montgomerie proceeded to England to attend Cadet School.

Tue., Aug 14, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Aug 15, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Aug 16, 1917

The entire Battalion was paraded under Company arrangements to 3rd. Cdn. Div. Gas School for a thorough inspection and replacing of Box Respirators and P.H.Helmets.

Fri., Aug 17, 1917

The Brigade eliminations for the Dumbell platoon Competition were held.

Sat., Aug 18, 1917

The appointment of Capt. G. McNaughton,MC. as A.D.C. [*Aide-de-Camp*] to G.O.C. 1st.Cdn. Division 12.6.17 and appointment of Capt. S. J. Mathewson,MC. to be temporary Major 12.4.17 were confirmed in Orders.

Lieut. J. S. MacKenzie reported from the 3rd. Entrenching Battalion and was taken on strength.

A/Major Willcock, R. (MC) Capt. Hale, MC. and Capt. J. C. Stewart,MC. returned from English leave.

B.M.R.57 was received from 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. giving result of Dumbell Platoon Competition
R.C.R. - 157½.42ndBn.R.H.C. – 157

"The G.O.C. wishes his congratulations conveyed to Lieut. Longley – R.C.R., and Lieut. C. G. Howard, 42nd. Battalion – their work personally and the work of their platoon was excellent"

Warning Order was received Saturday evening for the Battalion to be ready to move off the next morning to the forward area. The C.O. attended conference at Brigade at 10.pm. same night, and definitive orders were received about midnight that the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade would relieve the 5th Cdn. Inf. Brigade on the night of 21/22nd.

During our period in rest billets vigorous training was carried on, good use being made of the ranges which were allotted to us for two days in the week, great interest being taken in the shooting. This included eliminations for Corps Musketry shoot to be held in September, at which we won a place for Company Cup and Rifle Grenade Team.

Night marches with Gas Helmets were held, and arrangements made for three days manoeuvres which were to have commenced on the 13th, but which were cancelled at the last minute. A practice alarm was sounded one evening, and the Battalion assembled from surrounding playing fields etc., and first line of Transport, and everything made ready for the Battalion to move off in short order.

Sun., Aug 19, 1917

Lieut. H. Hamer,MM. was admitted to hospital with a sprained knee.

The Battalion marched to Bracquemont and took over the billets vacated by the 7th Cdn. Inf. Bn.

Lieut. H. L. Hoyles and O.R. proceeded on English leave remained behind as rear party and proceeded on leave on the 20th.

Mon., Aug 20, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Aug 21, 1917

Major S. C. Norsworthy, DSO, MC. was appointed temporarily to command 7th Bde. Training Battalion, and with Capt. E. R. Pease DSO, Lieut. J. S. MacKenzie, Other Ranks and the Battn. Pipe Band, proceeded to Ferfay.

In accordance with orders received from the 3rd. Canadian Division the Battalion was placed at the disposal of the G.O.C. 8th Cdn. Inf. Bde., and on the night 21/22nd. moved from billets in BRACQUEMONT to take over area in LOOS and neighbourhood from the 4th C.M.R. Battalion. There was no incident of note during this tour.

Wed., Aug 22, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Aug 23, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Aug 24, 1917

On the night 24/25th August, the Battalion was relieved by two Battalions of the 6th Imperial Division, namely, 14th Durham Light Infantry Battalion and 1st Battalion West Yorks, and moved back by way of LES BREBIS to FOSSE 10 (PETIT SAINS) coming under the order of the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade after leaving LES BREBIS.

Sat., Aug 25, 1917

The Battalion reached Fosse 10 on the morning of 25th.

Sun., Aug 26, 1917

Battalion Church Parade was held in the morning.

Orders were received for the Battalion to relieve the 49th Battalion (E.R.) in Brigade Support on the night 27th/28th

The C.O. and Company Officers proceeded up to look over the line.

Major C. B. Topp returned from English leave.

Mon., Aug 27 & Tue., Aug 28, 1917

The Battalion moved from Fosse 10 area R.8.d. Divisional Reserve and relieved the 49th Battalion (E.R.) in Brigade Support in CITE ST PIERRE and Fosse 12 de Lens. The march was made in heavy downpour of rain which made the going particularly bad. On the way in one ~~in one~~ shell caused eight casualties, 2 killed and 6 wounded.

Tue., Aug 28, 1917

Lieut. C. K. Macpherson having arrived from 20th Reserve Battalion reported to the Line and was posted temporarily to "C" Company.

Wed., Aug 29, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Aug 30, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Aug 31, 1917

Still in Brigade Support. Three Companies nightly have been employed on working parties in the forward area, digging new support trench, and widening and deepening CARFAX C.T. and NESTOR C.T. . Owing to heavy shelling on the night 30/31st working parties had to be cancelled.

Copies of Battalion Operation Orders issued during the month are attached.

BartlettMcLennan

Lieut.Col.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion (R.H.C.)

SECRET

"A"
OPERATION ORDER NO.136
by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Commanding – 42nd Battalion.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Copy No.21..

AUGUST. 19th.17.

1.INFORMATION.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night 21/22nd August 1917.

2.INTENTION.

The 42nd Canadian Battalion will move from LOZINGHEM to BRACQUEMONT in accordance with attached appendices.

- 3.PARAD. The Battalion will fall in on the main road in column of route, head of column opposite "B" Coys., billets at 9.30 a.m. as per warning order.
- 4.TRANSPORT. In accordance with arrangements in the warning order.
- 5.LONG HALT. Dinner. During the halt from 11.30 to 12.30 p.m. a hot meal will be served.
- 6.BILLETING PARTY Billetting party will proceed in advance of the Battalion under Captn. Macdougall.
- 7.REAR PARTY. Lieut. H. Hoyles and English leave party will remain in LOZINGHEM and act as rear party.
- 8.BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS. Brigade Headquarters will close at ALLOUAGNE 9.30 a.m. 19th August and open at BULLY GRENNAY (Rear Hq. 5th Canadian Inf. Bde) on arrival.
Advance Brigade Headquarters will open at H.11.a.0.1. at 9 p.m. 21st August.

R.L.H. EWING. M.C.

Major/Adjt.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. | 10. L.G.O. |
| 2. C.O. | 11. Scout Off. |
| 3. 2 i/c. | 12. Signal Officer. |
| 4. Adjutant. | 13. Quartermaster. |
| 5. O.C. A. Coy. | 14. Transport Officer. |
| 6. O.C. B „ | 15. M.O. |
| 7. O.C. C „ | 16. B.S.M. |
| 8. O.C. D „ | 17. Rear O.R. |
| 9. Bombing Officer. | 18. File. |
| | 19.20.21. War Diary. |

[APPENDIX TO 7TH CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE OPERATION ORDER # 104](#)

[APPENDIX TO 7TH CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE OPERATION ORDER # 104](#)

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.137.

Copy No....

By

22

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd Battalion.R.H.C.

5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map.36.c.N.W. Ed. D.a.

AUGUST.21st.1917.

1.INFORMATION.

In accordance with orders received from 3rd Cdn.Division,the 42nd Cdn.Inf.Battalion of the 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde. , will be placed at the disposal of the G.O.C. 8th Cdn.Inf.Brigade until further orders.

2.INTENTION.

The Battalion will move from billets in BRACQUEMONT and will take over positions occupied by 4th C.M.R.Bn.,on the night 21/22nd Aug.1917.

3.TIME OF START
& ORDER OF
MARCH.

The Battalion will parade at 7 p.m. in column of route,head of column opposite the last house on the main ARRAS-BETHUNE Road in the following order. Intervals of 50 yards between platoons and 100 yards between companies will be maintained.

Headquarters.

"B" Company

"C" ,,

"D" ,,

"A" ,,

4.RELIEF.

"B" Coy., will take over position in LOOS occupied by "B" Coy., 4th C.M.R. with Coy.Hq. at G.36.a.2.(?).

"C" Coy., will take over position in GUN Trench occupied by "C" Coy., of the 4th C.M.R. with Coy.Hq. at G.36.a.9.9.

"D" Coy.,will take over position in Village Line occupied by "D" Coy., 4th C.M.R. with Coy.Hq. at G.38.b.5.2.

"A" Coy.,will take over position occupied by "A" Coy., 4th C.M.R. with Coy.Hq. at G.38.d.6.?.

5.TRANSPORT.

Transport will proceed under arrangements of the Transport Officer. A guide from the (?)nd Cdn.Bn.will accompany same.

6.LEWIS GUNS.

Lewis Gun Limbers will accompany and will move in centre of their respective Coys., and be unloaded at LES BREBIS.

7.GUIDES.

1 Guides per platoon and 2 for Hd.will meet the Battalion at the Church LES BREBIS.

8.BATTALION

HQ._____

Battalion Hq. will be at junction of CHALK PIT ALLEY and MOETH Trench H.25.c.3.6.

9. BRIGADE HQ.

Brigade Hq., will be at G.23.b.1.5.

10. REPORTS.

Coys., will report completion of move to Bn.Hq. by wire using the code message "E137 received at....." in addition to which runners will be sent to Bn.Hq. confirming this message and to await orders.

R.L.H.Ewing.M.C.
Major/Adjutant.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 8th Cdn.Inf.Bde. | 10. Bombing Off. |
| 2. 8th C.M.R.Bn. | 11. Lewis Gun Off. |
| 3. O.C. | 12. Scout Officer. |
| 4. 2 i/c. | 13. Signal Officer. |
| 5. Adj. | 14. Quartermaster. |
| 6. O.C. A Coy | 15. Transport Officer. |
| 7. O.C. B „ | 16. M.O. |
| 8. O.C. C „ | 17. B.S.M. |
| 9. O.C. D „ | 18. Rear O.R. |
| | 19. File. |
| | 20.21.(?)2 War Diary. |

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.138.

Copy No.14..

by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Battalion.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map. 36.c.N.W. & 36.B.

AUGUST 24th 1917.

1. INFORMATION. 1)

The 6th Division (Imperial) will relieve the 3rd Canadian Division in the front now held by the 8th Cdn.Inf.Bde.

- (2) On the night 24/25th Aug. the 14th Dyrham [*Durham*] Light Infantry Battalion will relieve the 42nd Cdn.Inf.Bn. in the Village Line and Gun Trench.

The 1st West Yorks Battalion will relieve the 42nd Cdn .Inf. Battalion in :-

Town Alley (to be Battalion Hq)
Picadilly (A Keep))The 42nd Cdn.Inf.
Harrison Crater,)Bn. are not in these
Reserve Line(South of LOOS)places.

- 2.INTENTION. The Battalion will be relieved by the 14th Durham Light Infantry Battalion and the 1st West Yorks Battalion on the night 24/25th Aug. and move to FOSSE 10 R.8.d.
- 3.ROUTE. Village Line R.5.a.(?).(?) – R.5.c.4.8. – R.4.a.(?).1. R.(?).c.5.5. – R.(?).d.
- 4.RELIEFS. Major Willcock will turn over dugout in TOSH ALLEY to the O.C. of the 1st West Yorks Battalion and will then report to Battalion Headquarters. "B" Coy., and proportion of Headquarters in LOOS whose area is not being relieved will move under Company arrangements at 10 p.m. The remainder of the Companies will go out by platoons under Company arrangements on being relieved.
- 5.LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will be sent to Battalion Dump and handed over to Serg.Craig who will retain guard from each Company.
- 6.OFFICERS
KITS,MESS
BOXES ETC. Will be sent to the Ration Dump during the evening and a guard posted over same,under Company arrangements.
- 7.MAPS. All maps,photos,etc. will be handed over to the incoming Battalions.
- 8.GUIDES. (a) Guides in. As per arrangements with representatives of 1st West Yorks Bn. and 14th Durham Light Inf.Bn. Guides will not be necessary.
(b) Guides out. Guides who led the Companies in from LES BREBIS will guide them out to the Church where they will be met by Scout Officer, who will have sentries posted along route between LES BREBIS and FOSSE 10.
- After leaving LES BREBIS the Battalion will come under the orders of the 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.
- 10.BATTALION
HEADQUARTERS. For the purpose of the relief at 9.p.m. Battalion Hq. will be established in dugout in GUN Trench near junction of CHALK PIT ALLEY. Company Runners will locate these Headquarters during the hours of daylight.
- 11.REPORTS. Relief will be reported by Runner to Battalion Hq. or by wire if available using code message "Your R.13(?) received"
- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. 8th Cdn.Inf.Bde. | 8. Q.M. | R.L.H.EWING.M.C. |
| 2. 1st West Yorks Bn. | 9. L.G.O. | |
| 3. 14th Durham L.I.Bn. | 10. B.S.M. | Major/Adj. |
| 4.5.6.7. O.C. A.B.C.D.Coys. | 11. File. | |
| | 12.13.14. War Diary. | |

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.139.
by

Copy No...19.

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Battalion.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.map LENS Ed.(??).
36.B. 1/40,000

SUNDAY,AUGUST 26th 1917.

1.INFORMATION.

On the night 27/28th Aug., the 42nd Bn.R.H.C. from FOSSE 10, R.8.d.(Divisional Reserve) will relieve the 49th Bn.E.R. in Brigade Support. On completion of relief the 49th Bn.E.R. will move to FOSSE 10 R.8.d.) (Div.Reserve).

2.INTENTION.

The Battalion will relieve 49th Bn.E.R.in Bde. Support on the night 27/28th Aug.1917.

3.TIME OF
START AND
ORDER OF
MARCH.

Headquarters will pass starting point at 7.45 p.m.

"A" Company	„	„	„	„	„	8.00	„
"D"	„	„	„	„	„	8.15	„
"C"	„	„	„	„	„	8.30	„
"B"	„	„	„	„	„	8.45	„

An interval of 50 yards will be maintained between platoons, Coy.Lewis Gunners will march at the head of their [C]ompanies.

4.BATTALION

STARTING [P]OI[N]T.

Junction of ARRAS-BETHUNE and road to BULLY GRENAY.

5.RELIEF.

"A" Coy.,will take over position occupied by "[A]" [C]oy., 49 th (?) (?) in ARWAL TRENCH Area.

"B" Coy.,will take over position occupied by "B[" Co[y]. 49th Cdn.Bn. S.W.Corner H.19.b.

"D" Compan[y] will take over position occupied by "D" Coy.,49th Cdn.Bn. in N.E.Corner H.19.b.

"C" Coy.,will take over position occupied by "C" Coy., 49th Cdn.Bn. in HETLEY TRENCH Area.

Immediately on relief being completed companies will detail parties to proceed to ration dump for Company stores,Mess Boxes,etc.

6.GUIDES.

The 49th Cdn.Bn.will furnish 1 guide per platoon to meet the Battalion at the junction of FOSSE 11 Road and "B" route.

7.ADVANCE
PARTIES.

1 Officer per Company and (?) O.R. per platoon,and Pioneer Sergt. and 4 O.R. from Hq.and 1 O.R. from M.O. Staff will leave for the line at 1 p.m. Lieut. Aldridge and 1 O.R. will report to Bn.Hq. at 12.noon.

Advance parties will be responsible for taking over trench stores, etc.,and will detail 1 guide per platoon to accompany guide from 49th Bn. H.q.party will arrange for (?) guides at Battalion ration dump.

8.LEWIS GUNS.

Lieut.McIntyre and L.G.Sergt.,will be in charge of unloading and distribution of Lewis Guns at junction of FOSSE 11 Road and "B" route.

Lewis Gun limbers will report at this point at 9.30 p.m. 2 O.R.

per crew will accompany limbers. The remainder of Lewis Gun crews will march at head of their companies and take up their guns at the Dump and proceed in with their own companies.

9.SIGNALS.

The Signal Section will proceed in advance of the Bn., and relief will be arranged with Signalling Officer 49th Cdn.Bn.

10.RATIONS.

Will be carried in on the men.

11.WATER.

The 49th Cdn.Bn.will leave 80 petrol tins in the line. The Q.M. of the Battalion will deliver 80 tins to the Q.M. 49th Cdn.Bn.

12.OFFICERS

KITS MESS

BOXES,etc.

which are to be left at Transport Line will be piled at Company kitchens by 1 p.m. Officers kits must properly marked.

Officers trench kits,Mess Boxes,etc.,will be piled at Coy., kitchens and "HQ" at Orderly Room at 7.00 p.m.

13.KITCHENS.

Teams will call for kitchens at 8.30 p.m.

14.BATTALION

HEADQUARTERS will be at H.13.b.45.55.

P.T.O.

15.REPORTS.

Companies will report completion of relief to Bn.Hq. by wire using the code message "E.139 received at....." in addition to which runners will be sent to Bn.Hq.confirming this message,and to await orders.

R.L.H.EWING. M.C.

Major/Adjt.

Copies to	1.	7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.
	2.	49th Cdn.Bn.
	3.	C.O.
	4.	Adjutant.
	5.	O.C. A.Coy.
	6.	O.C. B.Coy.
	7.	O.C. C „
	8.	O.C. D „
	9.	Quartermaster.
	10.	Transport Officer.
	11.	Signal Officer.
	12.	Scout Officer.
	13.	Bombing Officer.
	14.	Lewis Gun Officer.
	15.	Medical Officer.
	16.	B.S.M.
	18.	File.
	19/21	War Diary.

Sat., Sep 1, 1917

The Battalion still in close support CITE ST PIERRE de LENS, garrisoning, furnishing working parties nightly for work on new support line, communication trenches, etc.

The enemy shelling by night was very active.

The 13th Battalion moved into CITE ST PIERRE another of the rare occasions that the sister Battalions have met in the forward area.

Lieut. J.R. Aldridge, Battalion Bombing Officer was sent out very sick.

CASUALTIES. Wounded. 23 O.R. Killed 3. Died of Wounds 1.O.R.

Sun., Sep 2, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Sep 3, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Sep 4 & Wed., Sep 5, 1917

On the night 4/5th the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd Canadian Battalion and moved to FOSSE 10 SANS EN GOHELLE. The relief was completed early and the Battalion just clear of the area when the enemy put on a heavy shoot of H.E. Shrapnel and gas. Two limbers with the Lewis Guns, had their drivers, 3 Lewis Gunners and two horses wounded. Lieut. DeRossiter the Transport Officer dismounted from his horse and drove out one limber and Pte. Chas. White (419145) although wounded pluckily, brought out the other.

Wed., Sep 5, 1917

The Battalion moved from FOSSE 10, SAINS EN GOHELLE to GOUY SERVINS where two nights were spent in billets.

Thu., Sep 6, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Sep 7, 1917

The Battalion moved from billets GOUY SERVINS to OTTAWA CAMP, BOIS des ALLEUX, the Camp we occupied during the short periods out in the fall and winter of 1916.

Sat., Sep 8, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Sep 9, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Sep 10, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Sep 11, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Sep 12, 1917

Lieut.V.E.Hobart and Lieut.G.H.Fletcher reported and were taken on strength.

Lieut.Trout and our Scout Section under Divisional arrangements laid out the tape trenches for the 8th and 9th Brigades.

Thu., Sep 13, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Sep 14, 1917

The Battalion was paraded under Coy.,arrangements to Brigade Gas School for inspection of respirators and P.H.Helmets.

An interesting lecture to improve the liaison between the Air Service and the Infantry was given on the "AIR SERVICE" by Lieut.Col.Carfew 16th Squadron.R.F.C. and on the 14th a number of Officers and N.C.Os went to the aerodrome for a demonstration.

During our stay at OTTAWA CAMP vigorous training was carried on. Some working parties were furnished to the forward area. The men being taken by Corps Light Railway to VIMY

Sat., Sep 15, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Sep 16, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Sep 17 & Tue., Sep 18, 1917

The Battalion moved from OTTAWA CAMP,BOIS des ALLEUX by Light Railway and de-trained on the east side LENS-ARRAS ROAD where they had tea and moved over VIMY RIDGE at 8.15 relieving the 5th C.M.R. and 1 Company 4th C.M.R. in the line opposite MERI-COURT,occupying TOLEDO TRENCH TEDDIE GERARD TRENCH,NEW BRUNSWICK and CANADA TRENCH, R.C.R. on the right flank,31st Canadian

continued.

SHEET 2.

Battalion on the left.. An Inter-Company relief was held on the night 21/22nd "A" & "C" Coys., relieving "B" & "D" Coys., No Man's Land being wide a great deal of patrolling was done but none of the enemy encountered.

The Battalion furnished large working parties, who worked under the supervision of engineers building Communication & Support Trenches, & extending TOLEDO TRENCH toward 2nd Division.

The tour was unusually quiet and the weather perfect. Casualties. 1 O.R. Wounded (At duty)

Tue., Sep 18, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Sep 19, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Sep 20, 1917

Lieut.D.B.MacGaskil reported and was taken on strength.

The following Officers were struck off strength:-

Major.H.C.Walkem.

Lieut. (A/Capt.) D.A.Bethune.

Lieut. C.F.Gifford.

Lieut. P.M.Macdougall.

Lieut. A.D.DeLotbiniere.

Fri., Sep 21, 1917

Lieut.H.Hamer invalided to England 6.9.17

Lieut.R.W.Gee struck off strength on recommendation of Medical Board 1.9.17

Sat., Sep 22, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Sep 23 & Mon., Sep 24, 1917

The Battalion was relieved in the line by the 49th Canadian Battalion(E.R.) and moved into Brigade Support, in CANADA TRENCH.

419145 Pte.Chas.White of the Transport awarded the Military Medal for his action on the 4/5th September 1917.

Tue., Sep 25 & Wed., Sep 26, 1917

A change in the disposition of the Brigade support took place. Headquarters moved to the Bee Hive "B" Coy., to NEW BRUNSWICK and MONTREAL TRENCHES – "D" Coy., to CANADA west of VANCOUVER ROAD. The tour in support was given over to nightly working parties constructing new C.T's etc., on the right and left sub-sectors.

Lieut.L.C.Montgomery reported and was taken on strength and posted 2 i/c "A" Company. 418753 C.S.M.Morrison.L. proceeded to England to attend Cadet Course.

Thu., Sep 27, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Sep 28, 1917

418528 C.S.M.Scott.W.G. and 132810 Sergt.M.K.Craig proceeded to England to attend Cadet Course.

Sat., Sep 29 & Sun., Sep 30, 1917

The Battalion relieved the 49th Battalion(E.R.) in the front line, left sub-sector R.C.R. on the right flank – 27th Canadian Battalion on the left.

A patrol consisting of Lieut.Cohen and 9 O.R.with a Lewis Gun left our trenches

continued.

SHEET 3.

at T.10.d.5.2. at dusk proceeding to the junction of the MERICOURT and QUARRIES ROADS. From this point the Patrol headed in a westerly direction for the trees on BULL ROAD T.10.b.8.4. about 600 yards from our trenches. When within a short distance of the trees a noise was heard and some figures were seen approaching from the direction of our lines. The enemy challenged and on receiving no reply they crept forward in open formation. Our patrol waited until the Huns were almost on them when on a signal from the Officer they opened fire with the Lewis Gun and Rifles and then rushed the party. Three of the enemy were killed including the N.C.O. in charge whose rank badge was brought in and the remaining three were made prisoners and sent to our lines in charge of two O.R. They proved to be Ptes. Wilhelm Krote, August Mancke, and Walter Troese of the 11th Coy., 3rd Battalion 54th Regiment. Time 9.20 p.m. The patrol then took up a position near the same place in expectation of the possibility of further enemy patrol coming out and at 10.35 some figures were observed on the opposite side of HULL ROAD, but their number could not be distinguished, as there was a heavy ground mist. Our party crept forward to surround and cut off the party, Lieut.Cohen and 1 O.R. crossing the Road. A burst of fire was opened by the Lewis Gun and the Patrol rushed the Huns who showed resistance firing with their rifles. Three prisoners were taken including L/Cpl. Franz Todwitz, Pte. Albert Slavsky and Richard Matysek, the latter severely wounded and in addition one other was wounded. Time 10.50 p.m. Patrol returned via MERICOURT ROAD reaching our lines shortly after 11.00 p.m. Enemy were armed

with rifles and stick grenades. Two wore the Iron Cross, Papers etc., taken from prisoners sent to Brigade with prisoners.

The following congratulatory messages received:-

"42nd Canadian Battalion

Following from Canadian Corps Commander begins aaa. Please convey to Lieut. Cohen and his party my best congratulations on the splendid patrolling which was carried out last night aaa. Sgd. A.W.Currie Lieut-General "

Congratulatory messages also received from the Divisional Commander, Major-Genl. Lipsett, Brig.Genl. Hugh.M.Dyer, Cmdg. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. Major-Genl. A.C. Macdonnell, C.B. Commanding 1st Canadian Division.

Royal L Ewing

Major

for Lieut. Colonel.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion. R.H.C.

APPENDIX A

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.140

Copy No. 10....

by

Lieut.Col.B. MacLennan. D.S.O.

Commanding – 42nd Battalion.

5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.map LENS Ed.(?).a.

Sheet 36b 1/40.000

September 1st. 1917.

1. INFORMATION.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the line by the 1st Canadian Infantry Bde. and will move to BOIS DES ALLEUX, staging at SERVINS. On the night 7/8th Sept. Brigade Headquarters will be at MONT ST. ELOY.

2. INTENTION.

The Battalion will be relieved in the support area by the 2nd Canadian Inf. Bn. on the night 4/5th September and move to FOSSE 10 on completion of relief.

3. RELIEF.

On completion of relief, platoons will move off under Company arrangements.

Signals will go out with their companies.

4. GUIDES.

Guides, on the basis of 3 per Company will be at the junction of FOSSE 11 and "B" Route M.9.d.95.45 by 9.15 p.m. on the night 4/5th Sept. under Lieut. Trout as follows:-

1 Per platoon and 1 for Coy. Hq.

- 1 For Bn.Hq. and
1 For Bn.Hq.details.
"A" Coy(?), will furnish in addition 1 guide to lead in Lewis Gun xcrews to relieve A.A.Lewis Guns.
- 6.LEWIS GUNS. On relief Lewis Guns will be sent to Battalion Dump and handed over to Sergt.Craig who will retain a guard from each company.
- 7.OFFICERS KITS Will be sent to the ration dump after dusk and a guard posted over same,under company arrangements.
- MESS BOXES,
DIXIES,Etc.
- 7.TRANSPORT. Transport for Lewis Guns etc.,will report to Battn Dump at 11.15 p.m.
- 8.MAPS. Maps and photos of the immediate area will be handed over to the incoming Battalion.
- 9.GUIDES TO "BILLETS" The Quartermaster will arrange for a party at rear to meet Companies and lead them to their billets at FOSSE 10.
- 10.RECEIPTS. Will be obtained for all trench stores,sanitary condition of trenches,etc., and sent to Orderly Room by 12 noon Sept.5th.
11. REPORTS. Companies will report completion of relief immediately by wire using the code phrase "Your E.140 received at....." This is to confirmed by runner to Battalion Hq.

Copy. No.1.	7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.	R.L.H.EWING. M.C.
2.	1st Cdn.Battn.	Major/Adjt.
3.	O.C. "A" Coy.	
4.	O.C. "B" „	
5	O.C. "C" „	
6	O.C. "D" „	
7	M.O.	
8	Q.M. & T.O.	
9	File.	
10.11.12.	War Diary.	

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.141

COPY NO..19

By
Lieut.Col. B. [M]cLennan., D.S.O.
Cmdg., 42nd Battalion R.H.C.
(5th Royal Highlanders of Canada)

Ref. Map 36 B

Sept. 4th.1917

1. INFORMATION.

1st Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in Billets on 5th inst.

2. INTENTIONS

The Battalion will move from FOSSE 10 SAINS-EN-GOHELLE on 5th inst. to GOUAY SERVINS.

3. BRIGADE START-
ING POINT

On main road SAINS-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES where it crosses the Railway Track R.8.c.9.4., which point will be passed by the Battalion at 1.30 p.m.

4. BATTALION
STARTING POINT
TIME and ORDER
OF MARCH.

The Battalion will fall in in column of route. ready to move off at 1.20 p.m. in the following order:-

= D" Coy
"C" Coy.
"B" Coy
"A" Coy.
Headquarters.

Head of column on main road to SAINS-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES at point of crossing with HERSIN-AIM NOULETTE Road R.?a.c.5.2.

Pipers will report to Companies.

5. TRANSPORT

Transport will be parked ready to move at 1.00 p.m. on Main Road SAINS-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES at a point to be selected by T.O. between Brigade Starting Point and Battalion Starting Point. It will follow the Battalion.

6. DRESS

Heavy marching order, without aprons.
Steel Helmets will be carried.

7. MARCH DISCIPLINE

Two hundred yards distance will be maintained between companies. Halts will be made from 5? to 60 minutes after each clock hour.

8. RATIONS.

Unexpended portions of the days rations will be carried.

- 2 -

9. BAGGAGE, ORDERLY
ROOM BOXES, ETC.

(a) Headquarters Officers kits for limbers and mess boxes for mess carts will be piled outside Headquarters Officers Mess by 11.45 a.m.

(b) Company Officers kits for limbers and Mess boxes

for Mess Carts will be piled at respective Company Kitchens by 12.00 n..n

(c) Teams will call for Kitchens at 12.45 p.m.

(d) M.O's Cart will be loaded by 12.00 noon.

10. INSPECTION OF BILLETS

Billets will be cleaned clear of men and ready for inspection by 12.15 p.m.

Officers Commanding Units will be responsible for the clean condition of their billets and area.

R.L.H.Ewing, M.C.
Major/ Adjutant.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. 1st Cdn Inf. Bde | 10 Bombing Officer |
| 2 7th „ „ „ | 11 Lewis Gun Officer |
| 3 O.C. | 12 Scout Officer |
| 4. 2 I/c | 13 Signal Officer |
| 5 Adj. | 14 Quartermaster |
| 6 O.C. A. Coy | 15 Transport Officer |
| 7 O.C. B. Coy | 16 Medical Officer |
| 8 O.C. C.Coy | 17 B.S.M. |
| 9 O.C. D. Coy | 18 File |
| | 19.20.21. War Diary. |

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO 142
by
Lieut.Colonel B.McLennan D.S.O.
Cmdg.42nd.Battalion R.H.C.
5th.Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Copy No.17...

Ref.Map 36 B.

September 6th.1917

1 INTENTION.

The Battalion will move on the 7th.inst. from Billets in Gouay Servins to Ottawa Camp Bois des Alleux

2 BRIGADE START
ING POINT.

Cross Roads W.5.c.5.5. which will be passed by the Battalion at 4.40.p.m.

3 BATTALION The Battalion will fall in in mass on the Chateau Barrack
STARTING Squire facing East (Main Gates) ready to move off at 4.25.p.m. in
POINT, TIME & the following order.
ORDER OF MARCH. Headquarters

Headquarters
A Company
B Company
C Company
D Company

Pipers will report to Companies.

4 TRANSPORT. Transport will be parked in the rear of the Battalion in Chateau Barrack Square by 4.15.p.m.
It will follow the Battalion.

5 DRESS. Heavy marching order, without aprons. Steel Helmets will be carried.

6 March 200 Yards distance will be maintained between Companies.
DISCIPLINE. Halts will be made 50 to 60 minutes after each clock hour.

7 RATIONS. Unexpended portions of the days rations will be carried.

8 BAGGAGE,ORDERLY ROOM BOXES ETC. (a)Officers kits for limbers will be piled by 2.50 pm. as follows:-

Hq.Officers in billets – Outside Hq.Mess.

Hq.Officers in huts - Outside of huts.

Company Officers - Outside respective Huts

(b) Mess boxes will be piled outside respective Officers messes by 2.30 pm.

(d) Kitchens will be ready for teams by 3.30.pm.

9 Inspection of Billets. Billets will be cleaned,clear of men and ready for inspection by 3.00 pm.

Officers in Command of units will be responsible for the clean condition of their billets and area.

R.L.H.Ewing M.C.
Major & Adjutant.

Copy No 1 7th.C.I.B.

2 O.C.
3 2nd.I/C
4 Adjt.
5 O.C.A.Coy.
6 O.C.B.Coy.
7 O.C.C.Coy.

Copy No 9. Lewis Gun Officer

10. Scout Officer
11. Signal Officer
12. Quartermaster
13. Transport Officer
14. Medical Officer
15. B.S.M.

Copy Nos.17.18.19. War Diary.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER No. 143

Copy No. 22

By

Lieut, Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Commanding 42nd Battalion
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Reference Maps.

51. C 1/40.000

51 B. N.W. 1/20.000

36 C. S.W. 1/20.000

Sept. 16th 1917

1. INFORMATION.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 8th and 9th Canadian Infantry Brigades in the Line on the nights of 17/18th and 18/19th September.

2. INTENTION.

The Battalion will move from OTTAWA CAMP on the 17th inst, entraining at FRASER CAMP at 5.00 p.m. and detrain at east side of LENS-ARRAS ROAD (approx Location A 5.d.2.5. Sheet 51 B near Cross Roads)

It will thence move forward and complete reliefs as follows.

B. Coy on the right will relieve one Company of the 5th C.M.R. in front Line.

D. Coy. on the left will relieve one Company of 5th C.M.R. in front line.

C. Coy. will relieve one company of 5th C.M.R. New Brunswick Trench in supports.

A. Coy. in support will relieve one company 4th C.M.R. and occupy CANADA TRENCH between NEW BRUNSWICK ROAD and MONT FORET ROAD.

Units will not move over VIMY RIDGE before 8.15 p.m.

3. ADVANCE PARTIES.

Advance parties will leave Camp between 9.00 and 10.00 a.m. 17th inst and proceed to area to be occupied by their units on completion of relief. No movement overland is permitted East of LENS-ARRAS RAILROAD in daylight.

Parties will consist of:-

From each company 1 Officer. 1 Senior N.C.O. and 4 O.R.
Headquarters 1 Senior N.C.O. & 4 O.R.

4 PARADES.

The Battalion will parade on Battalion Parade ground + ready to move off at 4.30 p.m. 17th inst in mas[s] facing road, in the following order, from ~~left~~ to ~~right~~ i.e.

right left

Headquarters

B. Coy.

D. Coy.

C. Coy

A. Coy.

5

DRESS

Battle Order.

6. BAGGAGE, ORDERLY
ROOM BOXES. Etc.

These will be piled beside the Orderly Room by the following hours.

Mens Packs.. 10.00 a.m.

Officer Beds 11.00 a.m.

Mess and Orderly Room

Boxes+Coy Stores etc. 2.00 p.m.

Officers Trench Kits. 2.00 p.m.

-- 2 --

7 LEWIS GUNS.

Lewis Guns, and discs will be piled outside Orderly Room by 2.00 and will be taken by limber as far as point of detrainment
One O.R. from each gun crew will accompany the limbers

8 KITCHENS

Kitchens will be ready for teams by 2.00 p.m. Kitchens will be moved to detraining point East side of LENS –ARRAS ROAD (Approx Location A 5.d.2.5 Sheet 51 B) where hot tea will be served on arrival of the Unit.

9 GUIDES

Guides will be supplied by Units being relieved as follows.

One Guide for Bn. Headquarters.

Two Guides per Platoon

Guides will be at THELUS CAVE (A.6.c.7.7. Sheet 51 B)
at 7.00 p.m. on the 17th inst.

10 INSPECTION OF
BILLETS.

Huts will be cleared of men by 3.15 p.m. and cleaned ready for inspection by 3.45 p.m. 17th inst.

11 REPORTS. Completion of reliefs will be reported immediately to Battalion Headquarters by Code phrase "Your O.O. 143 received ~~O.K.~~ at " which will be confirmed by runner.

12 BATTALION
HEADQUARTERS. On completion of relief Battalion Headquarters will be at T. 16.a.9.0. Sheet 36 B S.W.4) In Quebec Trench.

R.L.H. EWING M.C.
Major Adjutant.

Copy No 1 to 7th Cdn Inf, Bde	16.. Q.M.
2 8th do	17. T.O.
3 9th do	18 M.O.
4 5th C.M.R	19 B.S.M.
5 C.O. 4th C.M.R.	20 File.
6 C.O.	21)
7 2/i. c.	22)
8 Adjt.	23) War Diary.
9 O.C. A. Coy	24)
10 O.C. B. Coy	
11 O.C. C. Coy	
12 O.C.D. Coy	
n 13 Lewis Gun Officer	
14 Scout Officer	
15 Sign l Officer	

OPERATION ORDER NO.144
SECRET By
Lt.Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O. COPY NO. _____
Cmdg.42nd. Canadian Battalion
Royal Highlanders of Canada

SEPTEMBER 21st. 1917

1.
INTENTION There will be an inter-company relief on night
21st/22nd. instant.

2.
POSITIONS

A COMPANY will relieve B Coy. on the right sub-section

C COMPANY will relieve D Coy. on the left sub-section

Companies being relieved will take over Support positions previously held by relieving Companies.

3.
TIME

Time of relief will be arranged between Coys. concerned, and will be as early as darkness permits.

4.
ROUTE

A COMPANY will move up by way of TOAST Trench
C COMPANY overland.

Companies relieved will return overland.

5.
ADVANCE PARTIES

Small advance parties will be sent as per arrangements between Company Commanders.

6.
WORKING PARTIES.

On completion of relief Working Parties will be immediately despatched as per schedule annexed.

7.
REPORTS

Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the code message "Your O.O.144 received at-----" which will be confirmed by runner.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant.

Copies to/ Brigade	1
C.O.	2
O.C. A Coy	3
„ B „	4
„ C „	5
„ D „	6
B.S.M.	7
War Diary	8-10
File	11

SCHEDULE TO OPERATION ORDER NO.144 21.9.17

WORKING PARTIES ON COMPLETION OF INTER-COMPANY RELIEF.

1. D COMPANY 4 Platoons – For work on assembly trench. Party to report to Lieut. Lattimer, 8th Field Co., C.E. at junction NEW BRUNSWICK and QUEBEC Trench.
2. B COMPANY 1 Platoon - To work on CANADA Trench. To report to Lieut. Kennedy, 7th Field Co.
3. B COMPANY 1 Platoon - For work with D Company's party.
4. A COMPANY Parties for carrying rations, water and
C COMPANY engineering supplies for forward platoons A and C
Companies will be detailed from rear platoons
Of these Companies.
5. B COMPANY 2 Platoons - Daily For work on TOAST Trench. To report to Lieut. Lattimer 7.00 am.

NOTE/ Company Commanders of A and C will interview Company Commanders B and D respectively relative to above working parties which are similar to those which have been in operation the last few nights.

Arrangements will also be made between Companies in regard to tools etc., for these parties.

On completion of relief D and D Companies will detail usual carrying parties for their rations and water.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant

SECRET

Lt.Col. B. McLennan D.S.O. COPY NO. _____

REFERENCE MAPS/ 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

Mericourt Road 1/10,000

SEPTEMBER 23rd..1[91]7.

INFORMATION

INTENTION

ADVANCE
PARTY

GUIDES IN & OUT

OFFICERS'
BAGGAGE ETC.

WATER TINS

7.

RECEIPTS

<http://www.cefresearch.com/phpBB2/index.php>

copies to reach Battalion Orderly Room by noon 24th instant.

8.

REPORTS

On completion of relief report will sent in by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.145 received at---"" This is to be confirmed by Runner to present Bn. H.Q.

9.

BATTALION
HEADQUARTERS

Battalion H.Q. on completion of relief will be in Canada Trench at T.21.a.3.5.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant

COPIES TO/	Brigade	1
	49th Bn.	2
	O.C. A Co.	3
	„ B „	4
	„ C „	5
	„ D „	6
	Quartermaster	7
	B.S.M.	8
	War Diary	9-11
	File	12

SECRET....

OPERATION ORDER No 146

Copy No. 9-

By

Lieut. Colonel B.McLennan DSO.

Cmdg. 42nd Cdn Bn. R.H.C.

5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

Map Reference

Sheet 36 c S.W. 1/20,000

Maricourt Road 1/10,000

Friday September 28th.1917

1.INFORMATION

An interBrigade relief will take place on the night of 29/30th inst. The R.C.R. relieving the P.P.C.L.I. in front the right sub-sector and the 42nd Cdn Bn. relieving the 49th Cdn Bn. E.R. in fornt line the left sub-sector.

2. INTENTION

The 42nd Cdn Bn will relieve the 49th Cdn Bn E.R. in the front line left sub-sector on the night 29/30th as follows.

A. Coy will relieve B. Coy of the 49th Cdn Bn E.R. on the right. Three Platoons in TOLEDO TRENCH and one ~~in~~ platoon in NEW BRUNSWICK TRENCH.

C. Coy. Will relieve A. Coy 49th Cdn Bn. E.R. on the left in TOLEDO TRENCH, but will place one platoon in TEDDIE GERRARD TRENCH.

B. Coy. Will relieve C. Coy of the 49th Cdn. Bn. E.R. in TEDDIE GERARD TRENCH.

D. Coy. Will relieve D. Coy of the 49th Cdn Bn. E.R. in CANADA TRENCH.

3 TIME

Companies will move in the order named at 7.30 p.m.

4 ADVANCE PARTIES

GUIDES, LEWIS GUNS.

Will be under company arrangement as already notified.

5. OFFICERS BAGGAGE

WATER TINS, RATIONS ETC.

Will be dealt with as already notified

6. TRENCH STORES

Companies will turn in to the orderly room by 12.00 midnight on the night of relief.

(a) Receipts for S.A.A., Bombs, Water Tins, and other trench stores handed over.

(b) Complete list of trench stores taken over in new location.

7. REPORTS

On completion of relief, report will be sent in by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 146 received at - - " This will be confirmed by runner. to Battalion Headquarters.

8 BATTALION

HEADQUARTERS

On completion of relief Battalion Headquarters will be in QUEBEC TRENCH T. 16.a.9.0.

R.L.H. Ewing.

Major & Adjutant.

Copy No 1 7th C.I.B.

2 49th Bn. E.R.

3 O.C. A. Coy

No 7 Q.M.

8 B.S.M.

4 O.C. B. Coy	9- 11 War Diary.
5 O.C. C. Coy	12. File.
6 O.C. D. Coy	

Mon., Oct 1, 1917

The Battalion still in the front line, left sub-sector, MERICOURT. A Company on the right with three platoons in front line in TOLEDO Trench and one platoon in immediate support in NEW BRUNSWICK Trench. C Company on the left with three platoons in TOLEDO Trench and one platoon in immediate support in TEDDY GERRARD. B Company in immediate support in TEDDY GERARD Trench. D Company in support in CANADA Trench. Bn. H.Q. in QUEBEC Trench.

Tue., Oct 2, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Oct 3, 1917

Lieut. J. R. Aldridge struck off strength on being invalided to England, Sick.

Lieut. R. F. Studd promoted Temporary Captain.

Oct. 3rd/4th an inter-Company relief took place. B Company relieved A Company on the right, D Company relieved C Company on the left. Companies relieved took over support positions previously held by relieving Companies.

Thu., Oct 4, 1917

The enemy dropped a fairly heavy barrage of 5.9, 4.1 and .77cm. shells, including gas shells, on our front and immediate support trenches and on those of the Battalion on the right. Our casualties were slight.

During the whole tour constant patrolling was carried out all night in No-mans-land which on our front was about 800 yards width, by Officers' patrols of from ten to fifteen in strength, who covered the whole Battalion frontage up to a distance of about 800 yards in front.

Although the tour in the front line and support trenches was a long one, nevertheless, owing to the perfect weather and good condition of the trenches it was not an uncomfortable tour. During the tour much work was done by the Battalion in putting out wire in front of its positions and improving the trenches, and numerous working parties were supplied to the Engineers and Tunnellers improving communication trenches, completing dugouts, and carrying material. The tour was without incident worthy of particular comment with the exception of the patrols.

Casualties during the tour were: KILLED – 1 DIED OF WOUNDS- 1
WOUNDED – 2.

Fri., Oct 5 & Sat., Oct 6, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved by the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 22nd. Canadian Bn.

Upon relief the Battalion proceeded to NEUVILLE ST.VAAST and THELUS CAVE Areas, Headquarters and A Company spending the remainder of the night in dugouts and billets in NEUVILLE ST.VAAST. B,C, and D Companies in dugouts in THELUS CAVE Area.

Sat., Oct 6, 1917

The Battalion (less Transport and Transport Details) left Neuville St.Vaast and Thelus Cave Areas at 11.00am. and proceeded by route march to MONT ST.ELOI Station, where it entrained at 3. O'Clock and proceeded by train to TINGUES, where it detrained at 4. O'Clock and proceeded by route march to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE, where Battalion went into billets for short rest and training. The Transport and Transport Details proceeded by road from Transport Lines (La Targette) to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE. Extensive training was carried on in Field Work and on the parade ground, and shooting was carried on by the whole Battalion on the rifle range, 3 practices being fired at 200 yards. Lewis Gun firing was also practiced on the ranges, and live bomb throwing and rifle grenade firing at the Bombing area.

Sun., Oct 7, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Oct 8, 1917

Lieut. (A/Captain) J. C. Stewart, M.C. classed P.B. and struck off strength as at 22.9.17 having being appointed Area Commandant.

Tue., Oct 9, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Oct 10, 1917

441043 L/Cpl. Vogel J. A., 901937 [901957] Pte. Leslie, A.W., 902032 [902033] Pte. Jackson, W.T., all of A Company were awarded the Military Medal for the outstanding part which they played in the patrol of the night of September 29TH/30TH

Thu., Oct 11, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by G.O.C., 1st. Army, who was accompanied by G.O.C., Canadian Corps. After the inspection the Brigade marched past in column of route.

Fri., Oct 12, 1917

Lieut. W. W. Derossiter, Bn. Transport Officer, died. He had been with the Battalion since its organization, having enlisted in Canada on the 20th May, 1915, as a private, and having been promoted Sergeant soon after. He came to France with the Battalion on 9th October 1915, and received his Commission as a Lieutenant on the 12th November, 1915, becoming Transport Officer shortly after. During his whole connection with the Battalion he gave most efficient and devoted service. He was mentioned in despatches on the 9th April, 1917, and on numerous occasions showed courage and coolness under fire. Previous to his connection with the Battalion he had seen long service with the royal North West Mounted Police, and served in the South African Campaign as Squadron Sergeant Major with C Squadron, 2nd. Battalion, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles. His loss was greatly felt by both Officer and men of the Battalion.

Sat., Oct 13, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Oct 14, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Oct 15, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Oct 16, 1917

The Battalion proceeded from MAGNICOURT EN COMTE to TINQUES, where with the details of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade it entrained and proceeded to GODWAERSVELDE [*GODEWAERSVELDE*] On arriving at GODSWAERVELDE the Battalion proceeded by route march through CAESTRE to within a short distance of HAZEBROUCK where it was quartered in tents and billets.

Wed., Oct 17, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Oct 18, 1917

The following Officers have reported to the Battalion, were taken on strength, and posted to Companies as under:

Lieut. G. L. Ogilvie,	D Company
„ W. R. Lindsay,	A „

„ S. P. Earnshaw, B „

Fri., Oct 19, 1917

Lieut. Myer T. Cohen was awarded the Military Cross for his part in connection with the patrol 29th/30th September.

Sat., Oct 20, 1917

Major W. G. Peterson, who has been supernumerary Major to our Battalion since the disbanding of the 73rd. Canadian Bn., R.H.C. and has had charge of the 12th C.I.B. School for the past three months is struck off strength being attached to 85th Canadian Inf. Battalion.

Sun., Oct 21, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Oct 22, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by His royal Highness the Duke of Connaught on a parade ground near BORRE.

During its stay at quarters in the HAZEBROUCK Area the Battalion carried on daily training.

Tue., Oct 23, 1917

The Battalion moved off from its quarters at 2.30 am., and proceeded by route march to CEAS-TRE Station where it entrained at 6.30 am. and proceeded by train to YPRES, where it detrained and after spending three or four hours proceeded by route march to CALIFORNIA Trench where it took up a position in Divisional Reserve relieving the 4th C.M.R., being quartered in dugouts, bivouacs and pill boxes.

During its tour in Divisional Reserve the Battalion supplied large working parties carrying engineering material and working for the Artillery hauling the guns into position.

Wed., Oct 24, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Oct 25, 1917

Lieut. Chas. K. Macpherson was killed by shell fire in CALIFORNIA Trench during an inspection of the trench previous to handing over to relieving Battalion. Lieut. Macpherson had previously been with the 161st Battalion, C.E.F, where he held the rank of Captain but reverted to Lieutenant in order to proceed to France, and joined the 20th Canadian Reserve Bn. in England, from which he was drafted to our Battalion. He had only been with the Battalion eight week but had proved himself a most efficient Officer and his death is regretted by all.

The Battalion moved from CALIFORNIA Trench to X Camp in the ST.JEAN Area where it was quartered in tents. We continued to supply large working parties to the Artillery and Engineers.

Fri., Oct 26, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Oct 27, 1917

The Battalion, under command of Major Norsworthy, D.S.O., M.C., moved into Brigade Reserve near POMMERN CASTLE, being temporarily attached to the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade which had made the last advance up the PASSCHENDAELE RIDGE.

While at POMMERN CASTLE the Battalion was engaged on working parties carrying and laying bathmats etc. over GRAVENSTAFEL RIDGE to WATERLOO. A considerable number of casualties occurred owing to the fact that the bivouacs were exposed to shelling.

Sun., Oct 28, 1917

The Battalion came under orders of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade. Working parties to a strength of 485 were furnished this day.

Mon., Oct 29, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Oct 30, 1917

A further advance by the Canadian Corps was made on PASSCHENDAELE RIDGE, the 49th and P.P.C.L.I. taking part, the R.C.R. being in Support and the 42nd. Battalion in Reserve.

The Battalion received word at 1.00 p.m. that working parties for the day were cancelled, and that the men were to stand to. At 2.00 p.m. Major Norsworthy returned from Brigade with orders for the Battalion to move up to GRAVENSTAFEL RIDGE and take over from the R.C.R. who were to move forward. The Battalion moved off at 3.00 p.m. The men were bivouaced on ABRAHAM HEIGHTS, Bn. H.Q. being at OTTO FARM, which was shared by the R.C.R. Advance parties consisting of the Scout Officer, Company Commanders and some N.C.Os from each Company proceeded at once to the forward area to familiarise themselves with the situation there.

Following casualties were caused to A and B Companies parties by shell fire, namely, Lieut. C. S. Martin and 3 N.C.O.s from A Company and 2 N.C.Os. from B Company being wounded. Lieut. M. T. Cohen, M.C. was sent forward to replace Lieut. Martin. At 7.30 p.m., at the request of Brigade a party under Lieut. A. Fleming was sent forward to assist in carrying wounded from the front line down to GRAFENSTAFEL [*GRAVENSTAFEL*] ROAD to ?OM?E REDOUBT, and did very valuable work.

Lieut. L. H. Biggar became a casualty suffering from a severe case of shell shock also Lieut. E. A. McFall who had been doing duty as Brigade Burial Officer. In both cases they were blown from their bivouacs the other occupants being killed.

At 9.00 p.m. a wire was sent to Transport Lines asking for Lieut. E. S. Turner and Lieut. C. G. Heward.

Lieut. G. H. Fletcher was wounded.

Wed., Oct 31, 1917

Advance parties on their return reported on conditions in the front line, which owing to the swampy nature of the ground was not connected up with the 5th C.M.R. on the left or the 72nd. Battalion (12th Brigade) on the right. Three of the Battalion Observers and the N.C.Os of the advance parties remained in the front line over night to further reconnoitre the ground.

3.35 a.m. Lieut. E. S. Turner and Lieut. C. G. Heward reported and proceeded to their Companies.

The Battalion received instructions to move forward and take over the Brigade front line from the 49th Cdn. Bn., and P.P.C.L.I., and that they would be called on to carry out the operation to rectify the front line, 2 Companies of the R.C.R. to be attached in support. Major R. Willcock, M.C. was sent for from Transport Lines and reported at 3.30 p.m.

Casualties while on ABRAHAM HIGHTS were heavy considering the shortness of our stay there, and were attributable to the fact that the locality was very exposed and was consistently shelled.

The Battalion moved forward about 7.30 p.m., the exact moment for the move being determined by Captain A. W. Grafftey, the senior Company Commander, to whose discretion it was left to choose a lull in the shelling. No casualties were suffered on the way in.

Battalion H.Q. was established in a pill box on BELLEVUE SPUR. The relief being still in progress.

Bartlett McLennan

Lt. Col

Cmdg. 42nd Cdn Bn R.H.C.

SECRET

Appendix "A"

OPERATION ORDER No. 147

Copy 1,0

by

Lt. Colonel B. McLennan DSO

Cmdg. 42nd Cdn Bn. R.H.C.

Royal Highlanders of Canada

.....Tuesday Oct. ?.

1 INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on night 3rd/4th inst.

2 Positions. B. Coy will relieve A Coy on the right sub-sec

D. Coy will relieve C. Coy on left sub-sector

Companies being relieved will take over support positions previously held by relieving companies.

- 3 TIME Time of relief will be arranged between companies concerned, and will be as early as darkness will permit.
- 4 Advance Party. Small advance parties will be sent as per arrangements between Company Commanders
- 5 Lewis Guns. Lewis Guns will be relieved during daylight but care must be taken ~~not~~ to avoid exposing the guns or relief to view.
- 6 Patrol Party for first patrol will be sent up during the afternoon
- 7 Route. B. Coy will move up by way of TOAST TRENCH.
D. Coy will move up by way of TOAST TRENCH as far as TEDDIE GERRARD, balance overland.
Companies relieved will return overland.
- 8 Working Parties On completion of relief working parties will be sent out (as notified later)
- 9 Reports. Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the code message "Your O.O. 147 received at ---- " which will be confirmed by runner.

H.L.Hoyles.
Lieut/ A/Adjt

- Copy No 1 Brigade
2 C.O.
3 A. Coy
4 B.Coy
5 C.Coy
6 D.Coy
7 Q.M.
8 -10 War Diary
11. B.S.M.

[S]ECRET.

Appendix "A"
OPERATION ORDER No. 148
by
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan DSO.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

Copy No.9.....

Reference Maps.

Mericourt Rd. 1/10,000
36 C. 1/20,000
Maroeuil 1/40,000
36 B. 1/40,000
51 C. 1/40,000

Friday, October 5th 1917

GENERAL

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the line by the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the day of 5th and night of 5th/6th October and will move to CHELLERS AREA.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will be relieved in the front line by the 22nd Canadian Battalion on night 5th/6th October and will proceed to NEUVILLE ST VAAST from where it will proceed on the 6th inst to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE. On the 6th inst. the Battalion less Transport and details will entrain at (hour to be notified later) at ECURIE and detrain at TINGUES.
3. TRANSPORT & DETAILS. Transport (including all details at Transport Line s) will on the 6th inst. move independently of Battalion from NEUVILLE ST VAAST to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE.
4. ADVANCE PARTIES As already arranged Advance Party from details at Transport Lines will proceed to NEUVILLE ST VAAST and an Advance Party of 1 Officer and 5 O.R. from the Battalion to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE.

NIGHT. 5th/6th

5. OFFICERS
BAGGAGE Etc. As soon as it becomes dusk on night 5th/6th, Officers baggage, Orderly Room boxes, etc from Headquarters and A. & B. & D. Coys will be piled at present Battalion Ration Dump, and

baggage from C. Coy at Junction NEW BRUNSWICK ROAD and CANADA TRENCH from which dumps they will be carried out by limber

6. LEWIS GUNS

When the crews have been relieved in the line Lewis Guns will be taken to the baggage dumps of their respective companies and will be carried by limber to Transport Lines.

One member of each crew will attend and see to the loading of the guns and will then report to Sergt Gallow who will take the party out,

7. WATER TINS.

Water tins will be handed over to relieving Battalion as trench stores as follows:-

Headquarters. 24

A. Coy. 28

B. Coy. 23

C. Coy. 30

D. Coy. 25

Surplus tins will be sent out with baggage.

P. T. O.

-- 2 --

8 GUIDES FOR
INCOMING Bn.

2 O.R. from Headquarters and 3 O.R. each from A. B. & D.

Coys will report to Lieut Trout at Battalion Headquarters at 4.30 p.m. and proceed to meet incoming Battalion at THELUS CAVE at 6.45 p.m.

3 O.R. from C Coy for same purpose will join party on its way out at Junction TOAST and CANADA TRENCH at 4.45 p.m.

99. RECEIPTS
CERTIFICATES

Receipts for S.A.A., Bombs, Water tins and all other Trench stores handed over will be obtained together with certificates that the trenches have been left in a clean and sanitary condition. Copies will be forwarded to the Orderly Room by 8.00 a.m. 6th inst.

10. REPORTS.

On completion of relief in the line report will be sent by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 148 received at ----- " This will be confirmed by runner.

H.L.Hoyles,
Lieut. % A/Adjt.

Copy No.1 7th C.I.B.
2 22nd Cdn Bn.

- 3 O.C. A. Coy
- 4 B. Coy
- 5 C. Coy
- 6 D. Coy
- 7 Q.M.
- 8 B.S.M.
- 9- 11 War Diary
- 12 File.

S[~~E~~]C R ET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 149

Copy No. 12

By

Lt. Col. B. McLennan, DSO.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAP REFERENCES/

MONDAY, OCTOBER 15TH, 1917

Sheet 36 B 1/40,000

Sheet 27 1/40,000

HAZEBROUCK 1/100,000

1.

INFORMATION

7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will move by train
to CAESTRE AREA on 16th instant.

2.

INTENTION

42nd. Canadian Battalion will entrain at TINQUES 16th
instant as hereafter mentioned and detrain at GODESWAERSVELDE

3.

ROUTE &
ORDER OF
MARCH

(a) Transport will be parked, ready to move off, as already
arranged at 8.00 am., arriving at TINQUES at 9.40am. and departing
by Train No.21 at 12.40 pm.

(b) Battalion, less Transport and C Company (with kitchen and
1 limbered wagon, complete turnout) will fall in, in column of route,
on CHELERS ROAD, head of column opposite Quartermaster' Billet,
ready to move off, at 9.30 am., in the following order:-

HEADQUARTERS

A COMPANY

B ”

D ”

arriving at TINQUES at 11.10 am., and departing by Train No. 21
at 12.40 pm.

(c) C Company (with cooker and 1 limbered wagon, complete

turnout) will pass junction of CHELERS ROAD at 1.30 pm. arriving at TINKUES at 3.10 pm., and departing by Train No.23 at 4.40 pm.

Pipers will report to Companies.

4.

RATIONS &
WATER BOTTLES

Rations for 16th will be carried on the men. Rations for the 17th inst will be drawn after arrival at detraining point.
Water Bottles will be filled.

5.

LEWIS GUNS
BAGGAGE, MESS
BOXES ETC.

Will be turned in as already arranged.

6.

MARCHING OUT
STATE

Marching Out State showing number of Officers, O.R., animals, 4 wheeled vehicles, 2 wheeled vehicles, and bicycles entraining, will be turned into Orderly Room not later than 7.00 am. for transmission to R.T.O.TINKUES[ES].

7

BILLETS

Billets will be clear of men by 8.00 am., and ready for inspection by 8.30 am.

8

MARCH ROUTINE

When on the march by day intervals of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies and at least 500 yards between Battalions.
Halts will be made from 50 to 60 minutes after each clock hour.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 149 SHEET 2 15.10.17

9.

PICQUET

A picquet consisting of Lieut. McIntyre and 20 N.C.Os. and men from D Company will report to Entraining Staff Officer at TINKUES immediately on arrival of Battalion
They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed its detraining. They will be posted under instructions of the Entraining Staff Officer to see that no man leave the train after entrainment.

10.

ARRIVAL
OF UNITS

Units and Detachments on arrival at TINKUES will report immediately to Entraining Staff Officer.

11.

ENTRAINING
DETRAINING
OFFICERS

Entraining Staff Officer at TINKUES will be Captain W. J. WILBY, MC., 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.
Detraining Staff Officer at GODEWAERSVELDE will be furnished by 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

12

R.T.O.

Any instructions given by the R.T.O. with regard to entraining or detraining must be obeyed by all ranks.

13

ADVANCE PARTY
AND GUIDES

Advance Billeting Party consisting of Lieut. J. D. McLeod and
5 O.R. who have already proceeded, will act as guides on detrainment.

H. L. HOYLES,

Lieut. & A/Adjutant

COPY NO.	1	7th C.I.B.
	2	C.O.
	3	O. C. A Company
	4	O. C. B „
	5	O. C. C „
	6	O. C. D „
	7.	Quartermaster
	8.	Scout Officer
	9.	Signalling Officer
	10.	B.S.M.
	11.	Transport
	12.- 14	War Diary
	15	File.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 150.

Copy No....14.....

by

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion.
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Map. Ref:-

Sheet 27. 1/40,000

Sheet 28. 1/40,000

MONDAY OCTOBER 22ND 1917.

1.INFORMATION.

7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, less transport, will move
by rail to ST JEAN Area on 23rd inst.

2.INTENTION.

- (a) 42nd Battalion, less transport, and "D" Coy., will fall in
ready to move off at 2.30 a.m. on Main Road behind Orderly
Room in following order.

HEADQUARTERS.

"A" COMPANY.

"B" „

"C" „

- (b) "B" Coy., will await arrival of Battalion at road junction
(V.12.d.25.75) and will march in rear of "C" Coy.
(c) Coys., will be numbered off in tens, excluding Officers.

- Cooks will march with companies.
- (d) Pipes and Drums will report to Companies.
- (e) Transport will proceed by road in accordance with instructions already given.
- Head of Battalion will reach CAESTRE station at 4.10 a.m. and Battalion will be entrained by 4.30 a.m. Nothing but the equipment carried on the men will be taken on board train.
- Heavy Marching Order.
- 3.DRESS.
- 4.RATIONS & WATER BOTTLES.
- Unexpended portion of days rations will be carried. Water bottles will be filled.
- 5.LEWIS GUNS
- 6.BAGGAGE, ORDERLY ROOM & MESS BOXES, ETC.
- Will be dealt with as already notified.
- 6.MARCHING OUT STATE.
- Marching out state showing number of Officers, N.C.Os., and men entraining will be turned into Orderly Room.
- 7.INSPECTION OF BILLETS.
- Company Commanders and Lieut. Auld for Hq., will be Responsible that their tents, billets, etc., and areas are left in a clean and sanitary condition.
- 8.MARCHING ROUTINE.
- Distance of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies while marching through CAESTRE and on arrival at station.
- 9.DETRAINMENT GUIDES.
- Will be at YPRES. Major Norsworthy and 1 O.R. per Company from advance parties already gone forward will meet Battalion at detrainment point and act as guides. On leaving detrainment point a distance of not less than twenty-five yards will be maintained between platoons.

HUGH.L.HOYLES.

Copies to....No. 1. 7th C.I.B. Lieut. Act/Adjt.

2. C.O.

3. O. C. A. Coy.

4. O. C. B „

5. O. C. C „

6. O. C. D „

7. Quartermaster.

8. Scout Officer.

9. M.O.

10. Signalling Officer.

11. B.S.M.

12. Transport

13 – 15 War Diary.

16 ?? [File]

Thu., Nov 1, 1917

Relief was completed at about 1.30 a.m.

Dispositions were as follows:

A Company – 3 Platoons in the front line from D.5.d.20 60 to D.5.d.15.90 with one platoon in support about 75 yards in rear.

B Company – 3 Platoons in the front line from D.5.d.15.90 to D.5.a.90.00, thence along Gravenstafel Road to approximately D.5.?.70.90, with one platoon in support about 75 yards in rear.

A and B Company H.Q. in pill box at Meetcheele Spur D.5.a.90.00.

C Company – 2 Platoons in the front line running from D.5.c.70.90 to D.5.?.30.00 with 2 platoons in immediate support about fifty yards in rear.

D Company – 13 Platoons in the front line from left of C Company to D.5.a.00.00 thence in a curve to D.4.d.90.90.

C and D Company H.Q. in pill box D.4.d.80.80.

The dispositions taken over by the Battalion consisted of a more or less irregular line of shell holes, there being no trenches. During the first night this line was somewhat straightened out and the shell holes consolidated and connected up as far as was possible considering the wet condition of the ground. An advanced post was established by B Company on high ground South of Gravenstafel Road at about D.5.a.95.05.

The following patrols were also carried out on night of 31st./1st. after completion of relief.

The 49th Battalion had reported that they suspected the enemy had evacuated FURST FARM on the previous night. This was verified by a patrol from D Company under Lieut. Hobart who made an examination of the pill box at FURST FARM, D.5.a.25.25, thence through farmyard and along hedge to road at D.5.a.30.05. A line of rifle pits along this hedge was found to be filled with German dead.

A patrol from C Company under Lieut. Morris proceeded towards road junction at D.5.a.95.05 but were held up by fire from a machine gun which appeared to be located near the lone tree at D.5.a.70.10.

From the beginning of this tour we were much bothered by enemy snipers and machine guns as all movement had to be above ground and there was bright moonlight at night.

On November 1st orders were issued that immediately it became dark B Company would establish an additional post on the South side of the Gravenstafel Road at about

Sheet 2

D.5.b.0.1., and at 8.00 p.m. enemy advanced post at D.5.a.70.10 would be shot up with rifle grenades. As soon as the situation quieted down O.C. C Company would establish two posts between lone tree and B Company H.Q. All the posts were successfully established but no machine gun was encountered at D.5.a.70.10.

On the same night a patrol from A Company, Lieut. M.T.Cohen and 11 O.R., was sent out to examine Graf House. They found that it and the cross roads at D.5.d.4.8. were both strongly held by the enemy.

Fri., Nov 2, 1917

Early on the night of Nov.2nd./3rd. our B Company was relieved by a Company of the 16th Canadian Battalion. D Company moved into Support trench behind B Company running along North side of Gravenstafel Road.

On the night of November 2nd ./3rd. the Battalion undertook an independent operation for the purpose of capturing a pillbox at D.5.b.30.30, and the enemy advanced line along the road from D.5.b.30.20 to D.5.d.40.70, including GRAF HOUSE, and the consolidation of a line fifty to one hundred yards in advance of the same.

Major Norsworthy's report on this operation is as follows:

"We are of opinion that the enemy held this line with outposts only and it was decided to attempt a stealth attack supported if necessary by the three Stokes guns which were in our Battalion area.

7 Officers and about 200 other ranks comprised the attacking force which was divided into seven parties with tasks as follows:-

Party No.1. Lieut. Hobart and 25 O.R. to clear enemy trench and rifle pits on North side of GRAVENSTAFEL-MOSSELMARKT Road. Two Vickers guns were posted at D.4.b.9.0. and ordered to cover his left flank with bursts of fire.

Party No.2. Lieut. McIntyre and 25 O.R. to capture pillbox at D.5.b.3.3.

Party No.3. Lieut. Sewell with 2 Lewis Guns, 1 Section Rifle Grenadiers and two snipers was stationed at D.5.central on high South bank of road to protect advance of parties 1 and 11 by engaging enemy posts on opposite sides of road.

Party No.4. Lieut. Macaskill and 20 O.R. to work right along road running S.E. from D.5.b.3.1. to GRAF HOUSE.

Party No.5. Lieut. Turner and 20 O.R. divided into two smaller parties to deal with machine gun and dugout at D.5.d.3.9.

Sheet 3

Party No.6 Lieut. Parkins and 22 O.R. to cover road running N.E. from D.5.d.4.7. and to work left along road running N.W. from same road junction.

Party No.7 Lieut. Cohen and 24 O.R. to capture GRAF HOUSE.

All parties were in position and moved forward at zero hour (2.00 a.m.)

Almost immediately parties 2 and 3 were met by fire from three machine guns which appeared to be located in front of road and one gun firing from further back. Our parties engaged them with rifle grenades and were able to silence one gun. At 2.35 a.m. Lieut. Macaskill sent back the following message.

"To O.C., Salmon,

All our grenades are fired McIntyre and myself are trying to drive him out but unable to do so so far.

P.T.O. 2.35 a.m.

D. B. Macaskill.

A few men have been hit including 1 killed D.B.M."

at the same time McIntyre by two green flares called for the Stokes gun to open. Owing to short fuzes (on which a separate report has been made to you) their shells burst very high and without effect.

At 2.40 a.m. 4 men with additional Rifle Grenades had been sent up to Macaskill, and at 3.02 I ordered 5 Rifle Grenadiers with more grenades to go up to support McIntyre. Just at this time Sergt. Ormandy, Lt. McIntyre's platoon sergeant returned wounded. I asked why they

A platoon of C Company, which was in support behind Coy. Headquarters was ordered

Sheet 5

Cont. to report to Lieut. Howard to strengthen his garrison. Meanwhile party No. 5 had been held up about 50 yards from the German line by a machine gun. A verbal message was received asking for instructions and I ordered a withdrawal. Party 6 had lost its Officer Lieut. Parkins wounded very soon after zero hour, but had pushed on to its objective i.e., road junction at D.5.d.4.8. Their position was very difficult however owing to machine gun fire from higher ground on their left and Major Willcock whom I had sent out to look over the situation ordered a withdrawal. I had given him authority to take this step if thought advisable.

Party No. 7, Lieut. Cohen and 28 O.R. detailed to capture GRAF HOUSE advanced in three parties, the left party consisting of a Sergeant and 5 men became scattered and appears to have rendered Mr. Cohen very little assistance. The two remaining parties reached GRAF HOUSE and on their approach its garrison, which consisted of 5 or 6 men, fled. Our party occupied the ruin where they were subjected to considerable M.G. and rifle fire. After about 20 minutes a party of about 15 Germans advanced to the attack but were driven off by rifle and Lewis Gun fire. Later a much larger body advanced but were also halted by fire from our Lewis Gun which expended in all 15 panniers.

The Germans however under cover of darkness were able to creep up to within effective bombing distance and our party suffered a number of casualties from cylindrical stick and egg bombs as well as rifle and M.G. fire. When the ruin had been in our possession about an hour Lieut. Cohen was killed by a bullet through the abdomen. The garrison was now reduced to 5, consisting of Lce. Corpl. J. Taylor and 4 others. Their L.G. ammunition had all been expended except half a pannier as well as all their rifle grenades and bombs, and L/Cpl. J. Taylor, who was himself wounded, decided to withdraw.

No message asking for reinforcements was received from Lieut. Cohen, and as only a few of the casualties of his party reported back through their Company Headquarters it was not evident to us that he was being so hard pressed. Our right Company Commander had however sent forward a Lewis Gun and crew with instructions to report to him, but most unfortunately lost its way and joined Party No. 6.

Next morning the Germans were busy evacuating wounded from the vicinity of GRAF HOUSE giving proof of the effectiveness of the stand made there by our garrison. The outstanding figures in this desperate resistance were undoubtedly Lieut. Cohen and L/Cpl. J. Taylor, No. 1 of the Lewis Gun."

A Company of R.C.R's under Lieut. L.E. (Sgd.) S. C. Norsworthy, Major, Longley did excellent work in evacuating the wounded.

Sheet 6

The death of Lieut. M. T. Cohen, MC. was much regretted by all ranks. He enlisted originally with the 129th Battalion and left Canada on the 21st. September 1916, with a draft of Officers. On the 22nd. September he volunteered to come to France with a draft of Officers and reported to the Battalion on the 24th of the same month. He had always been noted for his keenness and sangfroid, and only a few weeks before his death had distinguished himself in

a patrol sent out on the night of the 29th/30th September, also recorded in this Diary for which he had been awarded the Military Cross. His splendid fight on the night of his death will be perpetuated in the history of the Battalion and was commented on in the highest terms by the G.O.C., 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade in an address to the Battalion given some days later. His body was recovered at a later date and was found on the highest point of the ruins of GRAF HOUSE. He had been shot in a number of places and had apparently fallen in attempting to organize the remnants of his party for the defense of the position he had captured.

On this day Lieut. McIntyre, MC. died of wounds which he had received in the engagement. Lieut. McIntyre came out with the Battalion in October 1915 as Battalion Machine Gun Sergeant and rendered splendid services. On June 2nd. 1916 he received a severe wound in the arm but remained in the line until the Battalion was relieved four days later. He was then sent to hospital. On rejoining the Battalion he carried on the same duties and in operations on the Somme was again wounded on September 15th, 1916, and sent to England where he obtained a Commission, returning to the Battalion 30.7.17.

While leading a platoon in the attack on 2.11.17 he received injuries from which he subsequently died.

In the death of Lieut. McIntyre the Battalion sustained the loss of a very gallant Officer.

As soon as it became dark a number of minor operations were carried out by the Battalion. A party from B Company, under Lieuts. Macaskill and Turner pushed forward two posts, one on the high South bank of the GRAVENSTAFEL Road at D.5.b.15.10 just a few yards short of the point reached by our attacking party on the night previous, the other a supporting post about 100 yards to its right rear.

C Company, under Lieut. Macleod, pushed forward an additional post close to the lone tree at D.5.a.7.1. Lieut. Hobart took out a party of the 16th Battalion and established two posts near the FURST FARM pill box.

Sheet 7

Sat., Nov 3, 1917

On the night of November 3rd/4th the Battalion was relieved by the 16th Battn. Canadians, 1st. Canadian Division. The relief was complete by 1.15 a.m. the Battalion moved to POMERN CASTLE [*POMMERN CASTLE*] where it spent the remainder of the night.

Casualties during this tour in the forward area were:

OFFICERS/ Killed 2 Died of wounds 1 Wounded 5

N.C.Os / Killed 6 Died of Wounds 3 Wounded 16

O.R. / Killed 32 Died of Wounds 6 Wounded 99 Missing 4

Sun., Nov 4, 1917

The Battalion moved from POMERN CASTLE [*POMMERN CASTLE*] to X Camp where it spent the day and the night of 4th/5th.

Mon., Nov 5, 1917

The Battalion moved by Route March from X Camp to entraining point on the railway near the Asylum at Ypres, where with the rest of the Brigade (less the 49th Battn.) it entrained about 10.00 a.m., and proceeded by train to ABEELE, thence by route march to billets and Camp around Trappist Farm near WATOU. The Battalion Transport moved by Route March from near GOLDFISH CHATEAU to WATOU Area on the same day.

The Battalion stayed in WATOU Area from the 5th to the 14th. During this period, owing to casualties, to Officers, a complete readjustment throughout the Battalion was made:

Lieut. J. D. Macleod was transferred from C to A Company to be Actg.O.C. of the latter.

Lieut. H.B. Trout, was transferred fromHQ to A Company to be Actg. 2 i/c

Lieut. E. s Turner, was transferred from B to HQ to be Intelligence Officer

Lieut. H. L. Hoyles, (Asst.Adjt.) was transferred from HQ to C Coy. to be Actg. 2 i/c.

Lieut. C. G. Heward, was transferred from A to HQ to be Assistant Adjutant.

The Battalion made use of this period to re-equip, rest and train. During this period kilts were called in and trews issued.

Nov. 5th. Lieut. D. B. Gilmour reported to the Battalion and was posted to ~~D~~ B Company

Nov. 6th. Lieut. W. Webb, reported to the Battalion and was posted to A Company

Nov. 8th. Lieut. A. J. Maclachlan reported to the Battalion and was posted to C Company

Wed., Nov 7, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Nov 9, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat., Nov 10, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Nov 11, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Nov 12, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Nov 13, 1917

On November 13th the Battalion with the remainder of the Brigade moved by Bus to YPRES, embussing took place between 7. and 8. O'Clock in the morning, and the Battalion debussed on the Dickebusch Road near YPRES at about noon. Battalion proceeded by Route March to CALIFORNIA TRENCH (A Camp) where it spent the night.

Wed., Nov 14 & Thu., Nov 15, 1917

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade (less the 49th Battalion) and 116th Battalion moved from the WIELTJE-ST.JEAN Area and relieved the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion relieving the 52nd. Canadian Battalion in the front and support lines left sub-section. C Company on the right in the front line. D Company on the left in the front line, A Company on the right in Support line, B Coy. on the left in Support line. The R.C.R. relieving the 58th Battalion on our right flank. The approximate location of the line was as follows:

C Company – V.30.b.15.45 to V.30.a.60.20

D „ - Left of C Company to V.30.c.10.80

A „ - from V.30.c.60.30 to V.30.c.30.35

B „ - from left of A Company to V.30.c.00.40

Battalion H.Q. at MEETCHELE pill box D.5.a.90.00

C and D Companies H.Q. in trenches with the Companies

A and B Companies H.Q. in MOSSELMARKT pill box.

On the left flank of the Battalion was the 8th Battalion, Royal Sussex Regiment.

The relief was completed by 8.30 p.m.

Thu., Nov 15, 1917

Instructions were received from Brigade that the Battalion on our left was to endeavour to establish a post in VIRTUE FARM and that the left flank of our left Company would be pushed forward to conform. This operation to be carried out during the day. Instructions were issued to the left Company Commander accordingly, but on his getting in touch with the right Company of the Battalion on our left he received the information that the post in VIRTUE FARM would not be established.

Fri., Nov 16, 1917

The Battalion on our left was relieved on the night of the 15th/16th by 1st. Battalion Cameron Highlanders, who on the 16th established a post in VIRTUE FARM to which our

Sheet 9

left Company conformed by swinging forward its left flank and establishing connecting posts.

Orders were received from Brigade on the same day that the 1st. Cameron Highlanders would, on the night of the 16th/17th, by a stealth operation push forward and occupy VOCATION FARM, and that the 42nd. Canadian Battalion would conform by swinging forward its left flank and establishing connecting posts. The operation commenced at 5.00 p.m. and VOCATION FARM was seized. On information to this effect being conveyed to our left

Company Commander he took two platoons and established a defensive flank between VENTURE and VOCATION Farms as arranged. In carrying out their operation on our left flank the 1st. Camerons were fortunate to fall upon an enemy relief and a large number of the enemy were dispersed by their fire. The greater part of these ~~past~~ *passed* across our right front line Company which opened fire on them with rifles and Lewis Guns, apparently inflicting heavy casualties.

Sat., Nov 17/ Sun., Nov 18, 1917

On the night 17th/18th the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd. Battalion Rifle Brigade and the 1st. Camerons on our left by the 1st. Battalion, The Black Watch. Owing to the great congestion of troops on the GRAVENSTAFEL Road, the only mean of access from the front line in this area, and the heavy shelling of this road and the whole of the front and support areas, the relief was much drawn out, lasting from shortly after dusk until 1.40 p.m.

Upon relief the Battalion moved to SAVILE Camp near YPRES.

During this tour the shelling of our Support Companies, of the Gravenstafel Road, Battalion H.Q., and Company H.Q. at MOSSELMARKT, and all the forward area was intense, and numerous casualties were received as a result including the following Officer casualties:

Lieut. L. C. Montgomery	-	Wounded, not seriously
„ W. Webb,	-	„ „ „
„ H. S. Fry,	-	„ seriously, but not dangerously
„ J. D. McLeod,	-	Not seriously
„ H. L. Boyles,	-	Slightly
„ D. B. Gilmour,	-	„

418239 C.S.M. G. W. Kennedy, DCM,MM, died of wounds 16.11.17, received at PASSCHENDAELE on the night of the 15th. This N.C.O. has been Company Sergeant Major of D Company since ~~the Battalion was originally formed.~~ 25 Feby 1916. He was awarded the D.C.M. and M.M.

Sheet 10

for gallantry and bore the highest possible character. He enjoyed the esteem and respect of all ranks. His services, covering a period of over two years in France, were of the highest order.

During the tour 7 prisoners were taken, some of whom had lost their way and wandered into our lines, the remainder having obviously come across purposely to give themselves up. Most valuable information was obtained in their examinations.

During the tour the closest co-operation was maintained with the 1st. Cameron Highlanders on our left, and the following message from their Commanding Officer is published:

TO/	
"42nd. Highlanders of Canada,	
<u>Senders Number</u>	<u>Day of Month</u>
C.H.	17th.

Please accept our best thanks for the help you so kindly gave us in our little affair. We hold VOCATION but not VIRILE and our line is something like attached sketch. Can you give any news of what happened on your side and where we actually join." (Sgd.)

J. W. Erskine Lieut. Col.
i/c 1st. Cameron Highlanders

The following message was also received from the Commanding Officer, 1st Battalion The Black Watch:

"To/ The Officer Commanding ,
42nd. Regt. Royal Highlanders of Canada.
The Officers, N.C.Os., and Men of The Black Watch (42nd. Royal Highlanders) regret very much that they have just missed fighting alongside with you, and look forward to meeting you all again in the near future either in the mud or in billets."

(Sgd.) V.M. Fortune, Lieut. Col.
1st. Battalion, The Black Watch.

Sheet 11

Total casualties for the tour were as follows/

OFFICERS/	Killed 0	Died of wounds 0	Wounded 5
N.C.Os.	/ Killed 0	Died of wounds 2	Wounded 9
O.R.	/ Killed 12	Died of wounds 5	Wounded 66 Missing believed prisoner 1.

Sun., Nov 18, 1917

The Battalion remained in SAVILE Camp.

Mon., Nov 19, 1917

The Battalion moved by Route March to the Asylum-Kruistraat Road where with the rest of the Brigade (less the 49th Battalion) and the 116th Battalion embussed and proceeded to ST. VENANT Area. Battalion Transport with rest of Brigade Transport moving by Route March. The Battalion was billeted in and about HAVERSKERQUE. The billets in this area were exceptionally good.

The Battalion remained the night of the 19th/20th in Haverskerque.

Tue., Nov 20, 1917

Lieut. V. E. Hobart was appointed Actg. O.C. A Company.

The Battalion, with Transport, moved by Route March from HAVERSKERQUE to BOURECQ via BUSNES and LILLERS, reaching BOURECQ about 2.30 p.m., where the Battalion went into billets.

For the rest of the month the Battalion stayed at BOURECQ where it was re-equipped and re-clothed and intensive daily training was carried on.

Wed., Nov 21, 1917

The following Officers reported to the Battalion and were posted to Companies as follows:

To / <u>A Company</u>	<u>B Company</u>	<u>C Company</u>
Lieut. A. S. Scott.	Lieut. R. P. Stafford,	Lieut. W.J.M. Kavenegh,
„ L. F. Benskin,		
„ A. E. Worley,		<u>D Company</u>
		Lieut. R. Fuller

146 O.R. reinforcements arrived and were taken on strength and posted among the Companies to fill vacancies caused by casualties.

Thu., Nov 22, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sheet 12

Fri., Nov 23, 1917

Recreation Rooms for O.R. of the Battalion were opened in the village of BOURECQ.

Sat., Nov 24, 1917

Following Officers reported:

Lieut. A. Wilson,	posted to	D Company
„ A. E. Andrews,	„ „ A	„
„ W. H. Molson,	„ „ B	„

Sun., Nov 25, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Nov 26, 1917

Lieut. T. West reported from hospital and returned to duty with A Company.

Tue., Nov 27, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Wed., Nov 28, 1917

Lieut. J. R. Aldridge reported to Battalion from hospital in England and was appointed Bombing Officer.

Lieut. J. B. T. Montgomerie, reported to Battalion and was posted to A Company

„ A. B. Proven, reported to Battalion and was posted to C „

Thu., Nov 29, 1917

Advise of the following decorations having been awarded was received:

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

133316 L/Cpl. Comba, M.R.

THE MILITARY MEDAL

228767 Pte. Rintoul, J. (Since died of wounds)	283479 Pte. Gould, W. D.
441713 „ Stillie, A.	133266 „ Gater, A. P.
901171 „ Mason, A. W.	418132CQMS. Wakeling, G.
418624 „ Loveridge, T.A. [E.A.]	418773 Pte. Murphy, J.S. [418733]
136045 Sgt. Hammond, E.A.	444612 A/L/C Symmonds, F.
132241 „ Smith, G.	418415 L/Cpl. Johnston [Johnson], R.R.

The Battalion attended the P.P.C.L.I. Concert Party performance at ST.HILAIRE which was much enjoyed.

Fri., Nov 30, 1917

The Battalion, pursuant to a request received some time prior from the 1st. Battalion of Imperial Black Watch, adopted the Red Heckle [*Hackle*] as part of its head-dress.

The shield presented by Major General Lipsett for the best Rifle Grenade team at the Canadian Corps Rifle Meet, and won by No. 5 Platoon "B" Coy., was received, made from a German shell and mounted on wood from the door of the Town Hall, LIEVIN.

During Passchendaele Operations the Battalion Sniping Section suffered very very severely. No.426819 Pte.Hale.G.L. No. 193240 Pte McGregor A. and 145425 Pte Farmer.A.S.-were killed. 418153 L/C.McLeod K.K. Died of Wounds, and 418417 Pte.Bolman C. and 192414 Pte.Pearce.H.J. were wounded.

418153 L/Corpl.K.K.McLeod, who died of wounds received on November 3rd, came out with the Battalion to France. He was wounded in the operations on the SOMME and returned to the Battalion 10.4.17. At the time he was fatally wounded, he was in charge of the

Bn. Sniping Section, and throughout his career had rendered service of an outstanding order. His death is deeply mourned by all.

C.S.Norsworthy
Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

MAP (APPENDIX 1.)

42ND CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

NOVEMBER 1917

[Passchendaele 1](#)

[Passchendaele 2](#)

[Passchendaele 3](#)

[Passchendaele 4](#)

Appendix 2.
OPERATION ORDER NO 151
BY
Lieut. Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battalion. R.H.C.

SECRET.
Copy No.....

Ref.Map
Sheet 38. 1/40,000

PASSCHENDAELE.

NOVEMBER 12th 1917,

-
- 1.INFORMATION. On the night 14/15th November the 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde. (less 49th Bn) and 116th Bn.,will move from the WIELTJE-ST JEAN Area and relieve the 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,in the line. The R.C.R. relieve the 58th Battn.,in the front line right sub-sector.
- 2.INTENTION. The 42nd Cdn. Bn., will relieve the 52nd Cdn.Bn. in the front and Support lines, left sub-section.
- | | | |
|------------------|---|---------------|
| "C" on the right | - | front line. |
| "D" on the left | - | front line. |
| "A" on the right | - | support line. |
| "B" on the left | - | support line. |

3. ADVANCE PARTIES. Advance parties of 1 Officer and 4 O.R. per company will go into the line on the night 13/14th Nov., and will report to the 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde., on the afternoon of the 13th Nov., where guides will be supplied to take them forward.
4. GUIDES. The 9th Cdn Inf.Bde., will furnish guides at the rate of two per platoon and 1 for Hq. These guides will rendezvous at WATERLOO at 5 p.m. and will be met by Lieut. LeSueur 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., and by Lieut. Fleming of this unit.
- 5.ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENT. ETC. The Battalion will carry into the line the following additional rations, tools,??????, etc.
- 3 Sandbags per man.
 - 25 Shovels per company.
 - 7 Rifle Grenades per Rifle-grenadier.
 - 1 Rifle Grenade per man (except Rifle Grenadiers and Lewis Gunners.
 - 25 S.O.S.Rifle Grenades No. 32 per Battalion.
 - 48 hours rations per man.
- (b) The Battalions of the 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will on relief hand over all S.A.A. with the exception of 25 rounds per man.
- 6.ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS. Re Aid Post., attached hereto.
- 7.ADVANCE BDE. H.Q. THE CAPITOL
- 8.BATTALION H.Q. MEETCHELE.
- 9.REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to BnHd., by wire if available using code phrase "Your O.O. 151 received at". This is to be confirmed by runners immediately.
- | | | | | |
|----|------------------|-------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. | 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde. | 9. | Sig.Officer, | R.L.H.EWING. M.C. |
| 2. | 52nd Cdn.Inf.Bn. | 10. | Int.Officer. | Major/Adjt |
| 3. | C.O. | 11. | Trans.Officer. | |
| 4. | O.C. "A" Coy. | 12. | B.S.M. | |
| 5. | O.C. "B" „ | 13. | M.O | |
| 6. | O.C. "C" „ | 14. | File. | |
| 7. | O.C. "D" „ | 15/18 | War Diary. | |
| 8. | Bombing Officer. | | | |

OPERATION ORDER No 152

By

SECRET

Lieut Colonel B.McLennan. DSO.
Cmdg. 42nd Cdn Bn. R.H.C.

Nov 17th 1917

- 1 INFORMATION Battalion will be relieved by the 2nd Battalion Rifle Brigade on night of 17/18th November 1917 and move to SAVILLE CAMP.
- 2 INTENTION Proposed Order of relief
D. Coy 2nd R.B. relieve C Coy. 42nd R Front
C „ „ „ D „ „ L „
B „ „ „ A „ „ R Suppor
A „ „ „ B „ „ L „
- 3 GUIDES Guides report to Lieut. Fleming at WATERLOO as arranged
- 4 TOOLS & S.A.A. Tools and S.A.A. on the men except 25 rounds per man will be handed over. Extra water bottles and all other equipment will be brought out.
- 5 REPORT Report of relief by runner to Battalion Headquarters.

R" L" H" EWING M.C.
Major & Adjutant.

- P.S. Route suggested Road over GRAVENSTAFEL RIDGE thence by Track 6
Men will be posted to guide to Track 6
- Lewis Guns will be carried out to camp.

OPERATION ORDER NO.153
By
Lieut.Col. B. McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg.42nd.Canadian Battalion.RHC.

SUNDAY. NOVEMBER 17TH. 1917

1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move to the ST.VENANT Area
2. On ~~October~~ 19th.
November
- ROUTINE Reveille----- 6.00 a.m.
Nov.19th Breakfast----- 6.30 „

3.

INTENTION

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion will form part of Convoy 1, and will fall in on the SAVILLE ROAD- I.2.d.95.95 to I.9.a.90.95, ready to move off, at 7.45 a.m. facing SAVILLE CAMP. Headquarters on the right.

Battalion will move by road to ASYLUM-KRUISTRAAT ROAD (H.10.?9.6. to H.12.d.3.4.) where it will embuss as part of Convoy 1.

Bn. will move by bus from KRUISTRAAT ROAD to ST. VENANT Area, and will be billeted at HAVERSKERQUE.

4.

DRESS

Heavy Marching Order. Greatcoats and Steel Helmets will be worn. Box Respirators at the alert. Balmorals to be carried in pockets

5.

RATIONS

Unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried on the men., and it is suggested that Officers will carry their luncheons with them.

6.

COMPANY

EMBUSSING STATES

will be at Orderly Room by 7.00 a.m.

7.

OFFICERS' KITS
ETC.

Dixies, Officers' Kits, Mess Boxes, Lewis Guns and packs of casualties will be piled on the road side on SAVILE ROAD, near Quartermaster's Stores, at 7.15 a.m.

8.

LOADING
PARTY

Battn. Sergeant Major will detail one N.C.O. and a party to load articles mentioned in paragraph 7 on lorry.

9.

LORRY GUIDES

Battalion Sergeant Major will detail two guides to report at GOLDFISH CHATEAU H.11.central at 4.50 a.m. to Brigade representative, to guide lorry to loading point.

10.

ORDER OF
EMBUSSING

Battalions will be formed up two deep along each side of the ASYLUM KRUISTRAAT ROAD in the following order ~~relative to Convoy 1.~~

7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. H.Q.

R.C.R.

P.P.C.L.I. 42nd Bn

1 Company 116th Bn.

7th T.M.Battery

Head of R.C.R. at H.18.d.9.6.

12

EMBUSSING
STATE

Lieut. Fleming will report to Capt. Wilby, Officer i/c Embussing, with an embussing state at 9.40 a.m. at H.18.d.9.6.

R.L.H. EWING, MC.

COPIES TO/ 1 Brigade

Major/Adjutant

2 C.O.

3 O.C. A Coy.

8 Bombing Officer

4	O.C. B	„	9	B.S.M.
5	O.C. C	„	10	BQMS
6	O.C. D	„	11	to 13 War Diary
7	M.O.		14	File

OPERATION ORDER NO 154

By

Lieut.Col. B. McLennan,D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, RHC.

Map Ref. 36 A 1/40,000

Monday, Nov. 19th, 1917

-
1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Group will move with Transport on the 20th, from ST. VENANT Area to ST. HILAIRE Area.
 2.
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Bn. will move with Transport from HAVERSKERQUE to BOURECQ by road on 20th instant.
 3.
ROUTINE Routine for the 20th November
REVEILLE----- 6.00 a.m.
BREAKFAST----- 6.30 „
 4.
BRIGADE STARTING POINT P.3.d.8.0. (First road junction west of St.Venant, 159 yds. north of Railway track).
 5.
BATTN. ASSEMBLING POINT J.27.b.8.2. (Road Junction in HAVERSKERQUE immediately north of Battalion Headquarters)
 6.
ASSEMBLY HOUR The Battalion, (less A & B Coys1 who will join opposite their Billets,) will fall in ready to move off at 8.30 a.m. in the following order.

HEADQUARTERS - A – B – C – D
Head of column at starting point.
 8.
TRANSPORT Transport will be parked with the field kitchens in rear of Battalion at 8.25 a.m.
 9.
PIPERS Pipers will fall in at Assembly point at 8.00 a.m. and play till 8.30 a.m. and will report to their respective companies when the Battalion is assembled.
 - 10.

DRESS

Battle Order, with Steel Helmets on haversacks. Greatcoats in banderole.

11.

ROUTE

Via BUSNES, LILLERS to BOURECQ.

12

MARCH DISCIPLINE

200 yards interval between Companies and at least 500 yards Between Units.

The following halts will be made:

From 25 to 30 minutes after the hour.

From 50 to 60 minutes after the hour,

ad from 12.15 to 1.15 p.m.

14

RATIONS

Unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried on the men.

Tea will be issued from Field Kitchens from 12.15 to 1.15pm.

Headquarters will draw tea from A Company's Kitchen.

15.

OFFICERS KITS
etc.

Officers Kits, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room Boxes and casualties packs will be piled on the road side in front of Company Headquarters and Battalion Headquarters at 7.15 a.m., and will be carried in Second Army lorry. Mens packs will be piled in separate piles at the same points by 7.15 a.m. and will be carried in a special lorry making two trips. First trip carrying packs of C and D Coys. 2nd trip carrying packs of A and B Coys. and Headquarters. A guard will be placed over the packs of A & B Companies and Headquarters until same are removed by lorry.

16.

ADVANCE
PARTY

Lieut. Turner, 1 senior N.C.O. from A Company, Sergt. Foster from Headquarters, and C.Q.M.Sgts. B, C and D Coys. will proceed as an advance party to 7th Cdn. T.M. Battery leaving HAVERSKERQUE at 8.00 a.m. They will report to the Officer i/c 7th T.M. Battery at J.27.b.8.2. (road junction in HAVERSKERQUE, immediately north of Bn. H.Q.) at 7.15 a.m.

OPERATION ORDER 154 Sheet 2

17

BILLETS

Company Commanders and B.S.M. will see that billets occupied by their personnel are left clean and will send a clearance certificate to Orderly Room by 8.15 a.m.

18

MARCHING
OUT STATE

Marching Out state will be at the Orderly Room by 7.30 a.m.

R. L. H. EWING, MC.

Major/Adjutant

COPIES TO/ 1 7th C.I.B.
 2 C.O.
 3 O.C. A Coy.
 4 O.C. B „
 5 O.C. C „
 6 O.C. D „
 7 M.O.
 8 B.S.M.
 9. T.O.
 10. Bombing Officer
 11 Scouting Officer
 12 B.Q.S.M.
 13-15 War Diary
 16 File.

[Map.](#)

MESSAGE FORM.

.....Division.

Map reference or mark own position on Map at back.

1. I am at.....
2. I am at.....and now consolidating.
3. I am at.....and have consolidated.
4. Am held up at.....by M.G. at.....
5. I need:---Ammunition.
 Bombs.
 Rifle Grenades.
 Water.
 Very lights.
 Stokes shells.
6. Enemy forming up for a counter-attack at.....

7 Enemy withdrawing at.....

8. I am in touch withonat.....
Right. Left

9. I am not in touch on
Left.

10. I estimate my present strength at.....rifles.

11. Hostile { Battery }
{ Machine Gun } active at.....
{ Trench Mortar }

Time.....a.m. (p.m.) Name.....

Date..... Platoon.....Company.....

Battalion.....

MESSAGES AND SIGNALS

TO { 42 Highlanders of Canada

Sender's Number. Day of Month. In reply to Number. AAA
* CH I?

*Please accept our best thanks for the help you so kindly gave us in our little
Affair. We hold VOCATION but not VIRILE and our line is something like
attached sketch.*

*Can you give me any news of what happened on your side and where we
actually join.*

(Z)

*JWerskine Lt Col
I/Cameron High*

16/11/17.

Adj. 42nd Battn. R.H.C.

Have not yet been able to obtain any definitive report from Left Battalion

*Party passed down with five prisoners reported all objectives reached. Signal that Vocation Farm had been reached observed.(?) Unable to state if lines have been held but a LcCpl of the First Camerons stated that S.O.S. was sent up from in front of Final objective Am trying to get information from "D" Coy ??????? Trench.
RFStudd Capt.*

16/11/17

The Adj –

Have had no reports from C or D Coy relative to this mornings Shoot but ???ging from cases arriving through dressing station their casualties were light.

J. D. MacLeod Lt

OC A Coy

5.00 Pm

The Adj –

We haven't received anything definite about last nights show on our left. Mr Hoyles says that the Camerons have taken Vocation House & D Coy has joined up with them on the left. The Camerons ????? run into a Bosche relief and cleared them up with Lewis Guns.

*J D MacLeod Lt
OC A Coy*

TO { OC 42nd Battn Canadian Rgt

Sender's Number. Day of Month. In reply to Number. AAA
* JR 21/45 16th

Unofficial reports lead me to believe that we have taken our objectives up to VOX and that a heavy counter attack was crushed by the barrage AAA We have five prisoners so far AAA Have you any information

From A/Adjt 1st Cameron Hrs
Place
Time 9-48 PM

(Z)

J. Robertson Capt.

Nov-16-1917.

To Adjt.
42nd Bn/ R.H.C.

"D" Company is back in trenches occupied previous to attack this evening. ~~battalion on our left.~~

No. 13 Platoon had dug in at position from V-30-a-40-20 to V-30-a-30-25 .

No. 14 Platoon was held in readiness to join from left of No. 13 to VOCATION FARM.

On learning that farm had not been captured , we returned to our trenches.

Covering party of CAMERONS on right which No. 14 Platoon were to relieve caught a German Company which appeared to have lost its way on relieving and killed or wounded the whole party with the exception of five prisoners captured.

According to Lieut. Hunter of CAMERONS, attacking platoon actually captured VOCATION FARM but were driven out by a swift counter attack. AAA

WAGoffrey

10.00 p.m

Capt
OC D Co

Nov. 17th 1917.

To Adj.
42nd Bn/ R.H.C.

Lieut. Hunter, 1st Camerons, reported that we held VOCATION FARM
at 11.00 p.m.

I immediately took two platoons and Hqrs. L.G. and placed them
between VENTURE FARM and VOCATION FARM to protect the right
flank of CAMERONS AAA.

1.10 a.m.
WAGoffrey
Capt
OC D.Co

Nov. 16th 1917

To Adjt.
42nd Bn/ R.H.C.

Signal when CAMERONS have captured VOCATION FARM will
be two white flares in succession. This signal will be repeated and relayed
from VENTURE FARM.

AAA

4.40 p.m.
WAGoffrey
Capt.
O.C. D. Co

Sat., Dec 1 to Fri., Dec 21, 1917

Battalion remained in billets at BOURECQ. During this period general and special training were carried on daily. This included Close and Extended Order Drill, Musketry, Gas Drill, Wiring, Tactical Schemes by night and day, Bombing and Rifle Grenade training with dummy and live Grenades, Lewis Gun training, 1st Aid training for Stretcher Bearers, etc. The Battalion was fortunate enough to have 75 yard rifle range, a Lewis Gun range, and bombing and rifle grenade pits, and daily use was made of each of these. The Battalion was also allowed the use on two days of a rifle range near AUCHY AUX BOIS – Sheet 36a, S.W.-T. 15.a.

Sat., Dec 1, 1917

The polling of the soldiers' votes for the Canadian General Elections commenced. Polls were opened, under a Presiding Officer and Poll Clerk, in Headquarters and the four companies. In the first day 709 votes were polled. The Polls were kept open until the 17th December and 791 votes in all were polled.

Sun., Dec 2, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Dec 3, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Tue., Dec 4, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Wed., Dec 5, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Thu., Dec 6, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Dec 7, 1917

Notification was received of the following decorations having been awarded in connection with the operations undertaken by the Battalion on the night 2nd./3rd. November, 1917. at PASSCHENDAELE.

THE MILITARY CROSS

Capt. R. F. Studd,

Lieut. R. McIntyre (since died of wounds)

„ D. B. Macaskill,

THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

418451 C.S.M. Ackerley, P.
192830 Pte. (L/C.) Taylor, W.J.

Sat., Dec 8, 1917

Range practice was carried on all day at the ranges at T.15.a. Each Company firing two practices at 300 yards. Prizes were awarded for the three best shots in the Battalion and the best shot in each Company.

Sun., Dec 9, 1917

Cont. Under instructions from the A.D.M.S. [*Assistant Director of Medical Services*], 3rd. Cdn. Division, Capt. Wm. Hale, MC. ceased to be attached to the Battalion on proceeding to the 9th Field Ambulance. His departure was much regretted by all as he had been with the Battalion for twelve months and his services in the interests of the Battalion were of the highest order. He was awarded the Military Cross for gallantry in connection with the capture of VIMY RIDGE on 9th April, 1917.

Capt. S. G. Mills (C.A.M.C.) reported to the Battalion as Medical Officer.

Mon., Dec 10, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date*]

Tue., Dec 11, 1917

418001 R.S.M. Macfarlane, P.W. was seriously wounded by an enemy aerial bomb in BRUAY. His wounding at this time was particularly unfortunate as he was just about to proceed to England under the arrangements providing for a three months exchange of Warrant Officers and N.C.Os. with the 20th Reserve Battalion.

Wed., Dec 12, 1917

A Transport Competition was held Class. 1. Best team of horses and harness. Horses to be judges [*transcriber: grin*] in grooming and shoeing – Harness in cleanness and repairs. 3 prizes:

1st. Prize	Fr.25.	won by	418433 Pte. Stalker, M. [418483]
2nd. Prize	15.	„	418552 „ Cooke, A.F.
3rd. Prize	10.	„	418732 „ Heath, J.

Class 2. Groom horses. Best pair. Horses to be judges in grooming and shoeing. Saddlery in cleanness and repair.

One prize	Fr.15.	won by	427825 Pte. Lawrie, C.S.
-----------	--------	--------	--------------------------

Class 3. Grooms horses. Best Single. Conditions and prize as in Class 2.
won by 418674 L/C. Leith, H.D.A.

Thu., Dec 13, 1917

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date*]

Fri., Dec 14, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sat., Dec 15, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sun., Dec 16, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Dec 17, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Tue., Dec 18, 1917

Battalion carried out range practice from dawn to dusk. Two practices being fired by each Company at 300 yards.

On December 14th Battalion received orders that Brigade would relieve the 6th Canadian Infantry Brigade, 2nd. Division, in the line in front of ACHEVILLE, and that the Battalion would relieve the 19th Canadian Infantry Battalion in Reserve at NEUVILLE ST.VAAST.

The Battalion received instructions to move on the morning of the 18th by busses to NEUVILLE ST.VAAST and take over the accommodation occupied by the 19th Battalion. On the night of the 16th December, however, orders were received cancelling the previous orders and instructing the Battalion to remain in the BOURECQ Area until further orders.

Wed., Dec 19, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Thu., Dec 20, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Dec 21, 1917

Cont. The Battalion subsequently received orders to move by bus on the 21st. December from BOURECQ, Sheet 36a, S.W.- U.7.b. to FOSSE 10 Sheet 36b.- R.3.c. and R.8.a. and b., the Transport to move by road to the same place. The Transport moved accordingly, and the Battalion proceeded to the embussing point, namely, the road running N.E. through T.11.a. (Sheet 36a. S.W.), arriving there at 12. noon. The bus convoy, however, failed to appear and at 4.30pm. the Commanding Officer made arrangements with Division to obtain rations for the

following day and to billet the Battalion in FONTES – Sheet 36a. S.W. N.29.a. and ?, about two kilometres distance from the embussing point. The Battalion accordingly proceeded by route march to FONTES where it billeted for the night in comfortable billets.

Sat., Dec 22, 1917

Busses were obtained by 10.15 a.m. and the Battalion proceeded by Bus to FOSSE 10, where it was quartered in billets.

Sun., Dec 23, 1917

Battalion relieved 16th Canadian Battalion at LIEVIN in Brigade Support. Battalion proceeded by route march to AIX NOULETTE and thence by Corps Light Railway to LIEVIN detraining within a few hundred yards of the cellars and dugouts provided for the personnel.

Battalion Headquarters at M.23.c.30.36			
A Company	„	„	M.28.b.30.95
D	„	„	M.22.d.55.10
B	„	„	M.22.d.80.25
C	„	„	M.22.d.90.25

In this situation the Battalion was in very comfortable quarters, there being ample cellar accommodation for all ranks and a large supply of coal and wood to be found in the village. The carriage of rations and other supplies was very easy owing to the existence of the Corps Light Railway, and the fact that the railway dump was within a few hundred yards of each Company H.Q.

During this tour in Support 13 platoons were employed each night as working parties, the principle work being wiring of the BLUE LINE or resistance line.

Mon., Dec 24, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Tue., Dec 25, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Wed., Dec 26, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Thu., Dec 27, 1917

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Dec 28, 1917

Major S. C. Norsworthy, DSO, MC., the Second in Command of the Battalion, was attached to 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters.

Sat., Dec 29, 1917

On the night of 29th/30th December the Battalion relieved the 49th Battalion in the left sector the front line.

C Company	-	Right Front
D	„	- Left Front
B	„	- Support
A	„	- Reserve

43rd. Canadian Battalion on left flank. The Royal Canadian Regiment on right.

An active programme of work was undertaken to provide accommodation in BLUE Trench i.e., COW and ALARM Trenches, and the garrison redistributed.

29th/30th. The enemy projected gas with an artillery and Trench Mortar bombardment on the Battalion on our left flank at 4.30 a.m. Some men of the Battalion were slightly gassed but none had to leave the line. - During the night *enemy* Heavy and Medium Trench Mortars showed considerable activity. The enemy was very alert with Machine Gun fire on Right Company's Outposts.

Sun., Dec 30, 1917

Captain R. F. Studd, MC. proceeded to Ferfay to take command of the 42nd. Battalion Company of the 7th C.I.B. Training Battalion, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*]

Mon., Dec 31, 1917

Lieut. A. E. Worley was injured by falling into a trench and evacuated to hospital.

Major Herbert Molson, M.C., formerly a Company Commander, who was wounded at Ypres June 2nd, 1916 visited the Battalion in the line.

Bartlett McLennan
Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET

"A"

OPERATION ORDER No.155

COPY NO. 14

REFERENCE MAPS

By

[3]6a 1/10,000

Major S. C. Norsworthy, D.S.O.M.C.

[3]6b 1/10,000

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion.

[3]6c 1/10,000

5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

[L]ENS 1/10,000

THURSDAY, DECEMBER 20TH. 1917

1.

INFORMATION

3rd. Canadian Inf. Division has been ordered to relieve the 11th Division by 6.00 a.m. 23rd December, and the left Brigade of 1st Canadian Division by 6.a.m. 24th December.

7th Canadian Inf. Brigade will relieve 3rd. Canadian Inf. Brigade in the line LENS Section, relief to be completed on the night 23rd/24th December 1917.

2.

[I]NTENTION

The Battalion will relieve the 16th Canadian Battalion at LIEVIN In Brigade Support, on the night 23rd/24th December, 1917.

3.

MOVES

(a) Personnel will move by bus from BOURECQ to FOSSE 10 on December 21st., move to be in accordance with Administrative Instruc[t]ions

(b) Transport will move by road on 21st. December to line in FOSSE 10. Transport will move independently of other Units in the Brigade. At least 500 yards interval will be maintained between Transport Units. Transport will move as a Unit maintaining march discipline and formation and prescribed halts. Halts will not be made in villages.

4.

BATTALION

HEADQUARTERS

In FOSSE 10 at billet No. to be notified later.

5.

ADMINISTRATIVE
ARRANGEMENTS

In accordance with Administrative Instructions issued herewith.

R. L. H. EWING,

Major/Adjutant

COPY NO.	1	Brigade H.Q.
	2	16th Cdn. Bn.
	3	C.O.

- 4 O.C. A Company
- 5 O.C. B „
- 6 O.C. C „
- 7 O.C. D „
- 8 M.O.
- 9 T.O.
- 10 Bombing Officer
- 11 Scout Officer
- 12 Quartermaster
- 13 B.S.M.
- 14-16 War Diary
- 17 File.
- 18. *Signal Off.*

SECRET

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS ISSUED IN CONNECTION
WITH OPERATION ORDER NO.155 Copy No.14..

1. ROUTINE

DECEMBER 21st 1917

Reveille.....6.15 a.m.
Breakfast.....6.45 „
Lunch.....at an hour to be notified later.

2. MOVE

Hour of embussing to be notified later,

Personnel will move by bus on the 21st inst., embussing on road running N.E. through T.11.a. (sheet 36a).

3. EMBUSSING STATE

Embussing states will be handed into Orderly Room an hour and a half before embussing,

4. PARADE.

The Battalion will parade one hour before embussing hour on Main Street,BOURECQ, in column of route,head of column opposite Headquarters ????.

5. DRESS.

Heavy Marching Order with greatcoats,steel helmets on pack, one blanket in pack and one rolled in waterproof sheet round pack, ends down.

6. RATIONS.

Unexpended portion of days ration will be carried.

7. OFFICERS KITS, Officers Kitts, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room Boxes, etc.,
MESS BOXES, ORDERLY will be piled by 8.45 a.m. in Main Street opposite Q.M.
ROOM BOXES, etc. Stores by Coys., and Hq., and guard placed over each pile.

8. KITCHENS. Field Kitchens will be cleaned and ready to be delivered to
 Transport Officer by 7.45 a.m. Necessary number of dixies to be
 left out as arranged with the Sergeant Cook.

9. INSPECTION Billets will be cleaned, free of men and ready for inspection
OF BILLETS. an hour and a half before embussing,

Copy. No. 1.	Brigade H.Q.	R.L.H. EWING.
2.	16th Cdn. Bn.	Major/Adjt,
3.	C.O.	
4.	O.C. "A" Coy.	
5.	O.C. "B" „	
6.	O.C. "C" „	
7.	O.C. "D" „	
8.	M.O.	
9.	T.O.	
10.	Bombing Officer.	
11.	Scout Officer.	
12.	Quartermaster.	
13.	B.S.M.	
14-16.	War Diary.	
17.	File.	
19.	Signal Officer.	

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS NO.2
 in connection with
 BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO.155
 by
 Lt.Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.,
 Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion,
 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAP REFERENCE
 LENS 1/10,000

DECEMBER 22ND, 1917

1

INTENTION Battalion will proceed on December 23rd by Route March from
 FOSSE 10 to AIX NOULETTE, and by Light Railway from AIX
 NOULETTE to AUSTRALIAN SIDING (M.22.d.central)

Light Railway trucks hold 30 men with full equipment each.

2

PARADE

The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 9.55 a.m.
Headquarters and A Company in the side street adjoining their billets.
B.C. & D Companies in their respective side streets adjoining their billets.
Head of each column at junction of side street and main road.

4 Lewis Gun Crews will be at the head of each Company until entrainment.

Order of March/ HQ.- A – B – C – D. B.C, and D Companies will join the column as it ?????? ahead of their respective side streets.

3.

DRESS

Heavy Marching Order – Greatcoats and Steel Helmets will be worn.

2 blankets per man will be carried – one in pack, the other rolled in ground sheet and placed around pack ends down.

4.

RAILWAY
BAGGAGE

Following will be carried on the Light Railway in addition to personnel:

- (a) Lewis Gun and 70 carriers per gun.
- (b) Packs of Advance Party.
- (c) Company Dixies.
- (d) Officers' Mess Boxes.

Cpl. Palmer will take charge of the Lewis Guns and carriers, and will issue Lewis Guns and carriers to Lewis Gun Crews at AIX NOULETTE after which Lewis Gun Crews will report to their platoons.

5.

OFFICERS'
BED ROLLS
ETC.

Officers' Bed Rolls (which must be reduced to a minimum) will be taken up in the evening by 1st line Transport. They will be piled in a separate pile and distinctly marked outside Company H.Q. at 6.45 a.m.
Packs of Advance Party, Dixies, Officers' Mess Boxes will be piled and marked distinctly "For the trenches" outside Company H.Q. at 8.45 a.m., where they will be collected by limbers.

6.

OFFICERS'
SURPLUS
KITS ETC.

Officers' surplus kits etc. will be piled outside Company H.Q. by 8.45 a.m. in a separate pile and marked distinctly "For Q.M. Stores"

7.

BILLETS

Company Commanders will inspect and be responsible for the clean condition of their billets

8.

GUIDES

The Battalion will be met by guides from the Advanced Party at AUSTRALIAN SIDING.

9.

BATTN. H.Q.

will be at M.23.c.30.35

10.

REPORTS

Completion of relief will be reported by use of the code phrase
"Your O.O.155 received at " and will be confirmed by Runner.

R. L. H. EWING,
Major/Adjutant

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.156

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

War Diary
Norsworthy

FRIDAY 29th DECEMBER 1917.

1.INFORMATION.

There will be an inter-Brigade relief on the night 29/30th
December 1917.

2.INTENTION.

The 42nd Battalion will move from Brigade Support LIEVIN,
and relieve the 49th Canadian Battn., E.R., in the front line, left
sub-section.

3.ORDER OF RELIEF.

"C" Coy., 42nd relieve "A" Coy, 49th, RIGHT FRONT.
"D" " " " " "B" " " LEFT FRONT.
"B" " " " " "C" " " SUPPORT.
"A" " " " " "D" " " RESERVE.

under Company arrangements.

4.ROUTE.

Right Front Company via ABSOLON and ADROIT.C.T's
Left Front Company via CROCODILE.C.T.

5.TIME.

Companies will move off under company arrangements
immediately after rations have been distributed in the following
order :-

"C" "D" "B" "A"

6.ADVANCE PARTY.

Advance Party of 1 Officer per Company and Hq., and at
least 4 O.R. per Company and ? from Hq., will proceed to the line
in the afternoon under company arrangements.

7.RATIONS.

Rations will come up to the ration dump at spur of NAPOO
CORNER and be carried in on the men.

8. WATER TINS. All tins issued to Companies and Hq., will be carried in full.
9. LEWIS GUNS" Under arrangements, Lewis Gun discs will be exchanged and should be turned over to advance Party from the 49th Bn.
10. SIGNALS. Signals will relieve under arrangements of the S.O's concerned.
OFFICERS
11. PACKS, SUR-PLUS KITS, ETC. Will be stacked alongside spur of NAPOO CORNER (Ration Dump) by 4 p.m. to go down on ration train. "A" Coy., will furnish loading party of 1 N.C.O. and 10 men & will be responsible for posting a guard over same.
12. STORES. Receipts will be obtained for stores in the support area and a copy of the Trench Stores taken over, will be forwarded to Bn.Hq., as soon as possible not later than 8 a.m. on the morning of the 30th.
13. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported by 'phone using the code message "Your O.O.156 received at " and to be confirmed by runner.
14. BN.HQ. Will be at COW TRENCH – M.18.d.80.10.
- Copies to Bde. 49th.Cdn.Bn. R.L.H.EWING.
C.O. O.C. A.Coy. Major/Adjt.
(S.O. O.C. B. „
1-(B.O. O.C. C „
(I.O. O.C. D „
M.O. File.
War Diary (3)

1918

Tue., Jan 1 to Fri., Jan 4, 1918

Battalion remained in the line during which time nothing of particular interest occurred. An active programme of work providing accommodation in COW and ALARM Trenches, dugout work and wiring was carried on.

On the night of the 1st/2nd an inter-company relief took place. "B" Coy., in support relieving "D" Coy., on the left front, and "A" Coy., in Reserve relieving "C" Company on the right-front.

"D" and "C" Companies took up quarters previously occupied by their reliefs.

Tue., Jan 1, 1918

Captain H.B. Macdougall, Regimental Paymaster, left the Battalion to proceed to England on special duty. He had been with the Battalion since its organization and had rendered most valuable services at all times, not only in his own department but in many other spheres. His departure, which it is understood is for the purpose of proceeding on duty to the United States of America, was much regretted by all ranks of the Battalion.

Lieut. C.W. Illaley reported and was posted to "A" Company.

Fri., Jan 4 & Sat, Jan 5, 1918

The Battalion was relieved in the line by the 49th Canadian Bn. E.R. and on completion of relief moved into Divisional Reserve, SOUCHEZ, taking over accommodation vacated by the P.P.C.L.I.

The Battalion moved out of the line by train entraining at REDMILL – M.28.a.2.4. and detrained at LENS JUNCTION near SOUCHEZ. A number of the platoons, however, which were relieved early were given permission to proceed out on foot, which they did.

Total Casualties for the tour were :- Lieut. A.E. Worley. Accid. Inj. and 1 O.R. slightly wounded.

Accommodation at SOUCHEZ CAMP was not of the best, consisting of a few NISSEN HUTS and a large number of small corrugated iron huts, holding twelve men each. All the huts were in a bad state of repair and many were without stoves.

During its occupation of this area active steps were taken by the Battalion to improve the Camp and considerable improvement was under way by the time the Battalion moved out.

During the stay of the Battalion at SOUCHEZ CAMP extensive general training could not be carried out on owing to the unsuitable nature of the ground, the cold, and the various deficiency parades, etc., were required to be held. Deficiency inspection and parades, bath parades, parades to Gas School and inspection by the Armourer Sergt., were carried out as well as route marches. P.T. B.T. etc.,

During the stay at SOUCHEZ a beer canteen was opened and proved a great success.

continued.

Sun, Jan 6 to Tue., Jan 8, 1918

The Xmas and New Years Dinners for the Officers, N.C.Os., and men which had been postponed on account of the move into the line just previous to Christmas were held while in SOUCHEX CAMP.

Dinners were given to the four Companies, two at a time in large marquee tents provided by the Y.M.C.A. Two Companies in the morning of the 6th and two in the afternoon. Hq. at noon on the 7th.

The Officer's dinner was held in a Nissen Hut on the evening of the 7th. About forty sat down to dinner including the following guests:-

Major. W. Leggett. M.C.
„ Basil Wedd. M.C.
Capt. Lennox Black. M.C.
„ John McNaughton. M.C.

Tue., Jan 8, 1918

The dinner for the Transport and details at Transport Lines was held in a large estaminet at FOSSE 10 on January 8th.

The following Decorations and Honours appeared in orders.

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

Major Royal Lindsay Hamilton Ewing. M.C.

THE MILITARY CROSS.

Capt. Eric Barrett Finley.

„ Lennox Black. (att. T.M. Battery).

Lieut. Lorne Cuthbert Montgomery.

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

418658 Corpl (A/Sgt.) Bullock. (att. T.M. Battery).

MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES.

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan D.S.O.

Major W. Bovey.

„ Stanley Counter Norsworthy, DSO. M.C.

„ Royal Lindsay Hamilton Ewing. DSO. MC.

„ Hugh Crawford Walkem.

Capt. Edson Raymond Pearse. DSO.

„ (A/Maj/ Charles Beresford Topp.

„ Donald Alexander Bethune.

Lieut. Charles Burnaby Tinling (Died of wounds.)

Wed., Jan 9, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Jan 10 & Fri., Jan 11, 1918

On the night of the 10/11th the Battalion relieved the 49th Cdn. Battalion E.R. in the front line left sub-section, LENS.

The Battalion moved from LENS JUNCTION to RED MILL SIDING by rail and marched to the front line.

Dispositions:-

"C" Coy. right front.

"D" " left front.

"A" " Right support –one platoon in ACONITE, 3 platoons in ALARM

"B" " Left Support – 1 platoon in AMULET, 2 platoons in COW

1 platoon in Coy.Hq., in CITE ST
THEODORE.

Platoon of "B" Company in AMULET was for tactical purpose under command of O.C. "D" Coy.

Battalion Headquarters in "COW" Trench.

This tour was remarkable chiefly on account of the great efforts which were made every night of the tour to capture enemy prisoners or posts. The task presented the greatest difficulty, owing to the nature of the front which consisted of a line of posts scattered through the ruined houses of the city of LENS. The presence of debris, wire, etc., made movement at night very difficult, nevertheless from 5 to 7 patrols went out almost nightly with a view to capturing the Hun posts if possible. On the night of the 14th/15th a patrol from the right front company with rifle grenadiers, etc., carried out a minor operation with a view to capturing a post but without success. They were, however able to harass with rifle grenade fire a working party which was discovered behind the enemy lines.

During this tour extensive work was carried on by both the Companies in the front line and those in support. Companies in the front line carried on wiring in front and improvement of the trenches, etc., nightly. Support companies provided working parties for work on dugouts in ACONITE ALARM, AGUE and AMULET, also for the improvement of "COW" Trench.

Rations during the tour were carried up by the Support Companies for both themselves and Companies in the front line.

Sat, Jan 12, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Sun, Jan 13, 1918

Announcement was made of the total amount of the subscriptions of Officers, W.O.s, N.C.O.s. and men in the Battalion to the Fund for the assistance of sufferers from the HALIFAX disaster amounting to Francs 3,050.

Sun, Jan 13 & Mon., Jan 14, 1918

An inter-company relief took place "A" Coy., from right support relieving "C" Coy., in the right front. "B" Coy., from left support relieving "D" Coy., in the left front. "C" Coy., which was absent on the "M" Course of instruction at FERFAY.

Tue., Jan 15, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Wed., Jan 16 & Thu., Jan 17, 1918

The Battalion was relieved by the 49th Cdn BnE.R. and on completion of relief moved into Brigade Support, LIEVIN.

BATTALION HEADQUARTERS at M.33.c.30.36

"A" COMPANY. M.28.b.30.95

"B" ,, M.22.d.80.25

"C" ,, M.22.d.95.25

The platoons were quartered in cellars in close vicinity to Coy.H.Q.

"D" Coy., H.Q. and one platoon in cellars at M.23.b.8.0. one platoon at M.30.a.7.4. One platoon in CRAZY REDOUBT and one in CRONY CROOK REDOUBT.

"D" Coy., was located on the above lines to comply with the Brigade Defence Scheme, orders having been issued that in case of attack, platoons at M.23.b.8.0. would man CAVALRY Trench for about 75 yards on the LIEVIN ROAD, and the platoon at A.7.4. was to take up a position just East of the railway cutting at M.24.c.9.5. and extend for about 75 yards on each side of the 'MILL HILL ROAD'. The platoons in CRAZY REDOUBT and CRONY CROOK REDOUBT to man these strong points.

During the tour in Brigade Support one Company, namely "C" Coy., was detailed for work with 7th Field Coy., C.E. and supplied two parties of 1 Officer and 45 O.R. each night. Their work consisted of carrying wire, engineering material, etc., up the front line. In addition to this 1 N.C.O and 36 O.R. were detailed to man Brigade Posts, such as Gas Guard, Bath Fatigues, Drying Room, Gum Boot Stores, etc. A party of from 15 to 25 was detailed each night for burying cable under the Brigade Signal Officer. Two parties of from 75 to 100 each were detailed each night for work in cleaning CROCODILE TRENCH and wiring it.

Fri., Jan 18, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Sat, Jan 19 & Sun, Jan 20, 1918

The Battalion was relieved in Brigade Support, LIEVIN by 87th Cdn. Inf. Bn., On completion of relief the Battalion moved by route march to FOSSE 10 where it was quartered in billets. Train accommodation at 8.30 and 9.30 p.m. had been provided to carry the personnel of the Battalion but it was decided not to make use of this accommodation, a measure which proved advantageous in view of the fact that the relief was completed before 8 o'clock and the Coys., arrived at FOSSE 10 by route march sooner than they would have by rail.

Casualties during the tour were as follows:-

Lieut. A.B. Proven. Accidentally wounded.

1.O.R. Wounded.

Sun, Jan 20, 1918

Battalion stayed in Billets in FOSSE 10 from the night 19/20th to the morning of the 21st. The Battalion and 1st Line Transport moved by Route March from FOSSE 10 to NOUEX LES MINES where it occupied billets.

Sat, Jan 26, 1918

Captn. C.W.Hale M.C. reported for duty in relief of Cap t. C.G.Mills, who proceeded to report to No. 3 Cdn. C.C.S. [*Casualty Clearing Station*]

Mon., Jan 21 to Thu., Jan 31, 1918

Battalion remained in Army Reserve at NOEUX LES MINES during this period working parties were carried out on the Army Reserve Line by six working parties of fifty each working on various days.

General training was also carried on including Squad Drill, Close Order, Preliminary, Musketry, P.T. B.T. practice in new platoon formation, extended order. Working on the Sniping Range was carried out by the Snipers and Lewis Gun firing was carried out on the Rifle Range. Football and Baseball competitions were held.

During the stay in NOEUX LES MINES the 13th Battalion *R.H.C.* was quartered close by in BRACQUEMONT. This was the first occasion on which the two sister Battalions had been so close to one another for any length of time. Full advantage was taken of the opportunity which was much appreciated and games of football and baseball were played by the two Battalions and frequent visits exchanged.

Mon., Jan 28, 1918

Lieut. Cowing.T. reported to the Battalion and was posted to "D" Coy.

Bartlett McLennan

Lieut. Colonel.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET

Appendix 'A'

OPERATION ORDER NO.157. Copy.No.12..

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

JANUARY 3rd 1918.

-
1. INFORMATION. The 49th Cdn. Battn., E.R. from Brigade Support, LIEVIN will relieve the 42nd Cdn., Battn. R.H.C. in the front line, left sub-section. On completion of relief the 42nd Cdn. Bn. RHC will move into Divisional Reserve, SOUCHEZ, and take over Camp vacated by P.P.C.L.I.
 2. INTENTION. The Battalion will be relieved in the front line, left sub-section on the night of 4/5th Jan., 18 by the 49th Cdn. Bn., E.R. and proceed to Divisional Reserve, SOUCHEZ.
 3. TRAIN. The Battn., will entrain at RED HILL – H.23.a.2.4; LIEVIN at 9.30 p.m. Platoons which are relieved early may proceed by road to SOUCHEZ. For this purpose the Battalion Scouts will be posted at principal points on the road to direct troops.
 4. GUIDES. IN. The 49th Battn., E.R. will not require Guides to the line, but front line companies will have guides in the trench opposite each outpost in readiness to take out outpost reliefs.
OUT. The Battalion Scout Section will post guides as directed in Para.3. Asst/Adj., rear will arrange that necessary guides are posted on the road and to meet the train to lead the Coys., to their respective billets in the Camp.
 5. SIGNALS. Relief of Signallers will be under arrangements between S.O's concerned. Signallers will go out with their Coys.
 6. LEWIS GUN
DISCS. 16 discs per gun will be turned over to the advance party of the relieving Battn., and receipt obtained. Coys., will arrange to send down during the afternoon necessary men to take over an equal number from the relieving Battn. Same should be stacked at RED HILL Siding under guard.
 7. WATER TINS. Water Tins, less those taken over as Trench Stores, will be taken out by all Companies ad Hq., except right front line "A" Coy., who will turn theirs over to the relieving Companies on receipt.
 8. TRANSPORT. 2 Limbers will report at 9 p.m. at RED MILL siding to take Lewis Guns and Officers Baggage.
 9. OFFICERS Will be taken to RED MILL Siding before 9 p.m. and a guard posted over BAGGAGE.ETC. same, who will be responsible for their loading.
 10. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns of such platoons as may proceed by road will be taken to RED MILL Siding and guard posted over same who will be responsible for their loading.
 11. SANITATION.ETC. Company Commanders, etc., will be responsible that the trenches, dugouts, latrines, etc., are turned over in good order.
 12. TRENCH STORES. Receipts for trench stores will be obtained and forwarded to Orderly Room before 12.00 Noon on the 6th.
 13. REPORTS. On completion of relief Companies will report immediately by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.159 received at....."

Copy No.1. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.

R.L.H. EWING.

2	49th Cdn.Battn.E.R.	Major/Adjt.
3.	C.O.	
4.	O.C. "A" Coy.	
6	O.C. "B" "	
7	O.C. "C" "	
8	O.C. "D" "	
9	B.O., S.O.,I.O.	
10	M.O.	
11.12.13.	War Diary.	
14	T.O.	
15	File Copy.	

S E C R E T

OPERATION ORDER NO. 158

COPY NO. 15.

by
Lieut.Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion,
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAP REF. / 36c S.W. 1.

WEDNESDAY, JANUARY 9TH. 1918

1

INFORMATION

There will be an inter-Brigade relief on the night of the 10th/
11th January, 1918.

2

INTENTION

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from Brigade
Reserve SOUCHEZ and will relieve the 49th Canadian Battalion,
E.R. in the front line, left sub-section LENS.

3

DISPOSITIONS

C COY. – Right Front
D " - Left Front
A " - Right Support(1 Platoon in ACONITE
(3 " in ALARM
B " - Left Support 1 Platoon in AMULET
2 " COW
1 Platoon and Coy.H.Q. in
CITE ST.THEODORE.

The Platoon of B Company in AMULET will be tactically under
D Company.

4

ROUTE.

The Battalion will be transported from LENS Junction to NAPOO
Corner by Light Railway. Thence by march to positions.
CROCODILE Trench will be used by both Right and Left Front
Companies.

5

- TIME Battalion will entrain at about 4. p.m. 10th Jan., 1918, exact hour to be notified later.
- 6
ADVANCE PARTY Advance Party of 1 Officer and 8 O.R. per front line Company, and 1 Officer and 4 O.R. per each remaining Company and Headquarters will proceed to the line, leaving at 1. p.m., 10th instant, under Company arrangements.
- 7
GUIDES (a) Advance Parties of the front line Companies will arrange with the front line Companies of the 49th Cdn. Battalion E.R. to have guides placed in the trench opposite each outpost in readiness to lead out each outpost relief.
(b) C Company's Advance Party will furnish guides at the junction of CROCODILE and AMLULET Trenches to lead in their Platoons.
(c) A Company will furnish two guides for the H.Q. of B Company and platoon proceeding to Cite St. Theodore. These guides will report to B Company before entrainment.
- 8
RATIONS Rations will come up to SOUCHEZ Camp on the morning of the 10th and will be carried into the line on the men.
9.
WATER & FUEL Water tins and fuel will be brought up by limber to CROW Dump. 1 N.C.O. and 5 O.R. per Company and Headquarters will be told off to be placed in the first truck of the first train and to proceed to CROW Dump. These parties all distribute water and fuel to the Companies as the latter come in.
- 10
LEWIS GUNS Lewis Guns and 4 loaded discs per Gun will be carried in by Companies. 16 loaded discs per gun will be handed over to the 49th Battalion, E.R. Advance Party, and a similar number taken over from the 49th Battalion on reaching the line. The Advance Party will arrange with 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R. accordingly.

OPERATION ORDER 158 SHEET 2

- 11
SIGNALS Signals will relieve under arrangements by the S.Os. concerned.
- 12
OFFICERS' BAGGAGE ETC. (a) Officers' baggage, Orderly Room Boxes, etc. intended for the line will be stacked outside Orderly Room and Company H.Q. respectively by 2.30 pm. and will be carried up by limber to CROW Dump.
(b) Mens packs – containing Balmoral and one blanket will be piled opposite Company H.Q. and H.Q. Stores respectively by 9.30 a.m.
(c) Officers' surplus kits, Orderly Room Boxes, Mess Boxes etc.

13 intended for the Transport Lines will be stacked in separate piles at the same places ~~by 12 noon~~. As in (b) by 12 noon.

TRENCH STORES A copy of Trench Stores taken over will be forwarded to the Battalion H.Q. not later than 8. am. 11th instant.

14
REPORTS Completion of relief will be reported by phone using the code message "Your O.O. 158 received at " and will be confirmed by runner.

15
BN. HEADQUARTERS. Battalion H.Q. will be at COW Trench M.18.d.80.20.

16
BILLETS Billets in SOUCHES Camp will be inspected under Company arrangements.

C. G. HEWARD,

Lieut. Actg. Adjutant.

Copy No. 1	7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.	11	Quartermaster
2	49th Cdn. Battn. E.R.	12	M.O.
3	C.O.	13	T.O.
4	C.O. A Coy.	14-16	War Diary
5	C.O. B "	17	File.
6	C.O. C "		
7	C.O. D "		
8.	Bombing Off.		
9	Scout Officer		
10	Intelligence Off.		

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.159

Copy No..13....

By

Major.R.L.H.EWING.D.S.O,M.C.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battalion.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref Map Sheet 36.c.S.W.1.

JANUARY 15th 18.

1.INFORMATION. Battalion reliefs will take place on the 16/17th inst., as follows:-
P.P.C.L.I. from Brigade Support,LIEVIN,will relieve

R.C.R. in the front line right sub-section, LENS.

49th Canadian Battalion E.R. from Divisional Reserve, SOUCHEZ, will relieve 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. in the front line, left sub-section.

2. INTENTION.

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. in front line left sub-section will be relieved by the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R.

On completion of relief the 42nd Canadian Battalion, will move into quarters occupied by it during its previous tour in support, except that "D" Coy., will place 2 platoons in CROMY & CRAZY Redoubts.

3. SIGNALS.

Will be relieved under arrangements to be made between S.O.'s concerned. Company Signallers will go out with their companies.

4. GUIDES.

Guides will not be required by incoming Battalion, but front line companies will arrange to place guides in the trenches opposite each post to conduct the reliefs to the posts.

5. ROUTE.

Via CROCODILE C.T. or overland.

6. ADVANCE PARTIES.

Will proceed during afternoon of the 16th January to take over area in Bde. Support vacated by P.P.C.L.I.

7. RATIONS.

Will be dumped on the night of the 16th at NAPOO CORNER, and a guard from advance party placed over same. They will be drawn under company arrangements.

8. L.G. DISCS & CARRIERS.

Coys., will turn over 16 loaded discs (with carriers) per gun to relieving companies, except "A" Coy., which will turn these over less carriers for 16 discs.

Advance parties will take over from 49th Bn., corresponding number of loaded discs and carriers. Receipts will be given.

9. WATER TINS

Water Tins less Trench Stores will be carried out by all companies except "A" Coy.

10. TRENCH STORES.

Receipts for trench stores with separate receipt for Brigade Trench Stores handed over will be turned by Companies and B.S.M. into BN., Hq., at 10 a.m. 17th inst.

11. REPORTS.

Relief complete.
Move complete

"FANNY"
"ADAMS"

C.G. HEWARD.

Lieut. Act/Adjt.

1. Hq., 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
2. Hq., 9th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
3. O.C. 49th Cdn. Inf. Bn.
4. Cmdg. Officer.
5. Adjt.
6. O.C. "A" Coy.
7. O.C. "B" "
8. O.C. "C" "
9. O.C. "D" "

10. S.O. B.O. Sig.O
11. Q.M.
12. 13. 14. WAR DIARY.
15. FILE.
16. B.S.M.

W. Diary

Jan.16th.18.

O.C."D" COY.

COPIES TO O.C. A.B.C.COYS. B.S.M.

" WAR DIARY.

Reference to Bn.O.O.159. Para.2. sub-para 2

On completion of relief"D" Coy.,will move into the following quarters.

Coy.,Hq., and 1 Platoon at cellars at M.23.b.8.0.

1 Platoon cellars at M.30.a.7.4.

1 Platoon CRAZY REDOUBT.

1 Platoon CRONY CROOKREDOUBT.

Please arrange to scout routes to these quarters to-morrow and have an Officer call on company commander of P.P.C.L.I. at present occupying above quarters.

Lieut.Act/Adjt.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.160

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Comdg., 42nd Canadian Bn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref Maps. 36b38.c. 3?.S.W.1.

JANUARY 18th.1918.

1.INFORMATION. The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will be relieved in the LENS SECTOR by the 11th Cdn.Inf.Bde. Relief to be complete by 2.a.m. 21st January.

2.INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C.will be relieved in Bde. Support,LIEVIN, by 87th Cdn.Inf.Bn.,on the night 19/20th January.

3.ORDER OF RELIEF. Upon completion of relief companies will move off independently in the direction of RED HILL Siding. Intervals of 100 yards ~~will~~ between platoons will be

- maintained.
4. SIGNALS. Signals will be relieved under arrangements to be made with S.O's concerned, but company signallers will go out with their companies.
5. ADVANCE PARTIES. Advance parties of 10 O.R. per Company and 6 O.R. per Headquarters will proceed under Company arrangements at 12 Noon by route march to FOSSE 10 and will report to the Q.M.
6. RECEIPTS. Receipts will be taken from incoming Battalion for all trench stores in Company Areas and will be handed into Orderly Room by 9 a.m. 20th January.
7. MOVE. The Battalion upon completion of relief will move from RED HILL Siding to AIX NOULETTE by Light Railway and thence to FOSSE 10 by Route March.
Trains will be available at RED HILL Siding at 8.30 and 9.30 p.m. each accommodating 300.
8. BLANKETS. 1 Blanket per man will be carried banderole on the men. Remaining blankets will be tied in bundles of 10 clearly labelled and piled by Coys., at NAPOO CORNER by 4 p.m. and a guard placed over same. They will be carried to FOSSE 10 by limber.
9. LEWIS GUNS L.G.DISCs & CARRIERS. Lewis Guns, discs & carriers will be carried to FOSSE 10 by limber and will be piled at NAPOO CORNER by 4 p.m. on the 19th inst. An N.C.O. from "A" Coy., will superintend loading on the limbers.
10. OFFICERS KITS ETC. Officers kits, Orderly Room boxes, Mess boxes, etc., and all water tins, will be carried to FOSSE 10 by limber and will be piled at NAPOO CORNER by 4 p.m. January 19th.
11. BILLETS. Will be inspected under company arrangements.
12. GUIDES. The Assistant Adjutant rear will post guides at convenient points on the BETHUNE – ARRAS Road to guide platoons and Hq., to their respective billets.
13. REPORTS. Relief complete "BOX" at p.m. by wire to Orderly Room and confirmed by runner.
Move complete, is clear by runner to Battn. O.R. FOSSE 10.
-
14. INTENTION. The Battalion with first line transport, including Field Kitchens will move on January 21st from FOSSE 10 to ROEUX LES MINES, where it will occupy billets.
15. DRESS. Heavy marching order, including two blankets – details to be notified later.
16. ROUTINE. 21st January. REVEILLE 6.30 a.m.
BREAKFAST 7.00 a.m.
17. STARTING POINT. SHEET 36.b.S.E. R.3.c.1.6.
18. FALL IN. On BETHUNE ROAD with head of column opposite starting

- point at 8.50 a.m. 21st inst.
19. TIME. Head of column will pass starting point at 9.00 a.m. January 21st.
20. ORDER OF MARCH. HEADQUARTERS. A.B.C.D.COYS. TRANSPORT.
Pipers will report to their coys. P.T.O.
21. ROUTE. Via BRACQUEMONT.
22. MARCH DISCIPLINE. Intervals of 500 yards between Companies and between "D" Coy., and Transport will be maintained.
23. MARCHING OUT STATE. Marching out state will be handed into Orderly Room by 8 a.m. 21st January.
24. FIELD KITCHENS. Teams for Field Kitchens [*Kitchens*] will report at 8 a.m.
25. OFFICERS BED ROLLS, KITS MESS BOXES, etc. Officers Bed Rolls, Kits, Mess boxes, Orderly Room boxes, etc., will be carried by 1st line Transport and will be piled outside Battalion and Coy. Hq., at 8 a.m. 21st inst., and a guard placed over same.
26. BILLETS. Billets in FOSSE 10 will be inspected under company arrangements and the usual acquittance certificates will be forwarded to Orderly Room by 8 p.m. January 20th.

C.G. HEWARD.

Lieut. Act/Adjt.

Hq., 9th Cdn Inf. Bde.
87th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
C.O.
Adjt.
O.C. A.B.C.D.COYS.
M.O.
Q.M.
T.O.
B.O. SO. SIG. OFF.
FILE (Rear)
3 Copies WAR DIARY.

Fri., Feb 1 - Thu., Feb 21, 1918

The Battalion remained in Army Reserve at NOEUX LES MINES. During this period working parties were carried out on the Army Reserve Line by 2 parties of 50 each, working on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays of each week.

General training was also carried on including Squad Drill, Close Order, Preliminary Musketry, P.T., practice in New Platoon Formation, Extended Order, and tactical schemes in conjunction with the use of smoke. Work on the Sniping Range was carried out by the Snipers and Lewis Gun firing was practiced on the Rifle Range.

Football Matches were played with various Batteries in the vicinity, also a return game with the 13th Canadian Battalion.

21 Officers, 7 N.C.Os. and all the Scouts of the Battalion with the exception of one made a reconnaissance of the ST.EMILE and HILL 70 Sections. In addition a few of the Company Officers and N.C.Os. were conveyed by buss in order to look over the AVION and MERI-COURT Section.

Fri., Feb 1, 1918

Special Platoon from B Company proceeded to attend the "M" Course at Ferfay. At the inspection held at the end of the Course the platoon gained second place in the Brigade.

Sat, Feb 2, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Feb 3, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Feb 4, 1918

Lieut. Molson , W, brother of Major H. Molson who was formerly Commander of B Company, joined the Battalion and was posted to B Company.

Tue., Feb 5, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Feb 6, 1918

Following Honours and Awards were advised:

RUSSIAN ORDER OF ST. ANNE, 2nd. Class with Swords

Major E. C. Weyman

BELGIAN CROIX DE GUERRE

419055 C.S.M. Page, J.

RUSSIAN ORDER OF ST.GEORGE

418761 Pte. Waldvogel, J.

Thu., Feb 7, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Feb 8, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Feb 9, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Feb 10, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Feb 11, 1918

The G.O.C, 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, made a very close inspection of the Battalion and saw the syllabus laid down for the day carried out. In his report he expressed satisfaction at the work performed by the Battalion paying special tribute to the turn out of the Transport and also the good condition of the Field Kitchens.

Tue., Feb 12, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Feb 13, 1918

A Concert was given to the Battalion in the Y.M.C.A Hut, HERSIN, by the Dumbell Concert Party, 3rd. Canadian Division. The entertainment was extremely good but owing to the lack of accommodation it was impossible for the whole Battalion to be there.

Thu., Feb 14, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Feb 15, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Feb 16, 1918

Lieut. E. W. Auld proceeded to report to the 3rd. Cdn. Div. Signals after having rendered invaluable services as Signalling Officer of the Battalion during the past sixteen months. Everyone regretted his departure.

Sun, Feb 17, 1918

Major G.G.D. Kilpatrick being temporarily at 3rd. Canadian Division H.Q., acting as Senior Chaplain, Major A.P. Shatford conducted the Service which was held in the Y.M.C.A. Hut at 10.30 am.

Mon., Feb 18, 1918

The Y.M.C.A. Concert Party gave a performance of the "Private Secretary" in the Y.M.C.A. Hut, NOEUX LES MINES, which was thoroughly enjoyed by all ranks.

Tue., Feb 19, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Feb 20, 1918

157 all ranks of D Company proceeded to Ferfay by lorry to attend "M" Course. It had been decided that better results were likely to be obtained by having the entire Company, and by calling for one Company from each Battalion in the Brigade it meant a entire Battalion practising together.

Thu., Feb 21, 1918

The Battalion received Orders to move by route march on this day from NOEUX LES MINES (Sheet 36.b.) to RISPIN CAMP, VILLERS AU BOIS. Transport to move by road to lines at LA TARGETTE – F.11.b.4.1. (Sheet 51.c.N.E.) occupied by 31st. Battalion.

The Battalion moved off at 10.30am. with intervals of 100 yards between Companies and between rear Company and Transport. A halt was made from 1. to 2.pm. during which time men were served with hot tea from the cook kitchens. The Battalion reached RISPIN CAMP at 3.15 pm. The men were quartered in large French Huts while the Officers were in Nissen Huts. The quarters taken as a whole were comfortable.

Fri., Feb 22 - Mon., Feb 25, 1918

The training during this period was similar to that carried on at ROEUX LES MINES. On two nights Companies practiced patrol work. La Motte Range – F.2.d. was allotted to the Battalion for three days. During this period all Companies had an opportunity of firing. One day was allotted to Lewis Gunners. The Battalion played football matches with other Battalions in the Brigade also with the 31st Battalion at CHATEAU DE LA HAIE, and maintained an unbeaten record.

Whilst the Battalion was in RISPIN CAMP it was decided that in view of the facilities being available to have a Battalion Officers' Mess. This gave the Officers a opportunity of coming in closer touch with one another.

Fri., Feb 22, 1918

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, DSO. proceeded on 30 days leave to England and Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO., MC. assumed Command of the Battalion.

Sat, Feb 23, 1918

Major A.O.Meredith, 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade, gave a lecture to the Officers and Sergeants of the Battalion on the subject of "Information & Training".

Sun, Feb 24, 1918

A team of eight Snipers proceeded by lorry to the Corps School at PERNES where a Brigade competition was held. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion won first place in Sniping with a score of 509 points out of a possible 832 (or 61%). In the observation test the 42nd. Battn. again came first with 65 points out of 100. In his report Major N.A.D. Armstrong,MC. wrote "The shooting of the 42nd.and 49th Cdn. Battalion teams was exceptionally good. It would be difficult to find another Bona Fide Sniping Section in the Canadian Corps that could beat these two teams."

Lieuts. W.J. Ballentyne and Kingston of the 45th Canadian Battery, together with 6 O.R. of the C.E. were attached to this Battalion to undergo a course of instruction in the Lewis Gun with particular reference to Anti-Aircraft protection.

Mon., Feb 25, 1918

Lieut. Kingston of the 45th Cdn. Battery gave a short and instructive lecture to the Battalion in the Y.M.C.A. His subject was "Artillery"

Tue., Feb 26, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Feb 27, 1918

Football Team, and Hockey Team of Officers, proceeded by lorry to Ferfay to play teams picked from the personnel of the 3rd. Cdn. Div. Wing, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*]

Thu., Feb 28, 1918

Dumbell Concert Party gave a performance for the Battalion in the theatre at CAMBLAIN l'ABBE. The performance was splendid and was greatly appreciated by all ranks. Amongst those present was the Corps Commander.

On this day instructions were received for the Battalion to move from RISPIN CAMP, VILLERS AU BOIS to HILLS CAMP, EUVILLE ST.VAAST on March 1st.

*Hamilton Ewing
Major
Cmdg 42nd Can. Bn. RHC.*

"A"

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 162.

by

Lt. Col.B.McLennan D.S.O.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

WEDNESDAY, FEBRUARY 20th 1918.

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will move with Transport on the 21st., inst., to VILLERS AU BOIS-NEUVILLE ST.VAAST Area – Divisional Reserve.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will move with Transport from NOEUX LES MINES to RISPIN CAMP, VILLERS AU BOIS by road on the 21st inst.
3. BN. ASSEMBLY
POINT. Battalion Parade Ground.
4. ASSEMBLY HOUR. Battalion will fall in, in mass formation, ready to move off at 10.15 a.m.
5. TRANSPORT. Will be parked with head at K.18.d.10.30 ready to move off at 10.20 a.m.
6. BDE. STARTING
POINT. Q.5.b.5.0. HERSIN, which point will be passed by Noon,
7. ROUTE. Via COUPIGNY – GRAND SERVINS – to VILLERS AU BOIS.
8. MARCH
DISCIPLINE. 100 yards interval between Coys., and between rear Coy., and Transport.
Halts will be made from 50 to 60 minutes after the hour and from 1.p.m. to 2.p.m.
9. DRESS. Heavy Marching Order.
10. BLANKETS. G.S.Wagon will report to Coy., and Bn.Hq., at 9.00 a.m. to load blankets which are to be made up in rolls of 10.
11. RATIONS. Unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried on the men. Water Bottles will be filled.
12. OFFICERS
KITS, ETC. Officers Kits, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room Boxes, etc., will be piled on the road side in front of Coy.H.Q., and Bn.H.Q., at 8.45 a.m.
13. PIPERS. Pipers will report to their respective Coys., at 10.10 a.m.
14. BILLETS. Company Commanders and B.S.M. will arrange to have billet clear of men and ready for inspection by 9.00 a.m.
Clearance certificates will be sent to Orderly Room by 9.45 a.m.

15. MARCHING
OUT STATE.

Will reach Orderly Room by 9.a.m.

.H. EWING
Lieut. Act. Adjutant.

Copies to. Hq. 7th C.I.Bde.
C.O.
Adjt.
O.C. A. Coy.
O.C. B "
O.C. C "
Q.M.
T.O.
M.O.
P.M.
SIGNALS.
I.O.
FILE.
WAR DIARY. (3 copies).

TRANSPORT ARRANGEMENTS FOR
MOVE ON 21ST FEBRUARY 1918.

FOR VILLERS AU BOIS.

Limbers.	2 Machine Guns of A.B. & C. Coys.
"	½ "A" Coys. Officers kits & mess utensils.
"	½ "B" do. do. do.
"	½ "C" do. do. do.
"	½ "B" Mess do. do. do.
"	½ Headquarters Officers Kits.
"	½ Piper Kits.
"	1 Headquarters <u>Mens</u> cooking Utensils and Orderly Room Boxes.
Mess Cart.	1 Mess Boxes and Cooking Utensils H.Q. Mess.
M.O. Cart.	1 Medical Supplies & Paymaster Boxes.
G.S. Wagons.	1 "A" Coys. Blankets.
	1 "B" " "
	1 "C" " "
	1 "HQ" "

FOR TRANSPORT LINE.S

LIMBERS. 1 Transport Cooking Utensils and Trans. Stores.
" 2 Quartermaster Stores.

NOTES.

BLANKETS. Blankets to be rolled in bundles of ten and piled at
Coy., Store Rooms.

Blankets of H.Q. should be rolled by Units & clearly
marked.

Wagons will report to Coys., at 9 a.m.

Coy., Commanders may put a bag with cups also a parcel
of sandwiches on Mess Cart or Limber, but Mess Boxes must
be taken on limbers supplied.

Fri., Mar 1, 1918

The Battalion proceeded by route march from VILLERS AU BOIS to NEUVILLE ST
VAAST Area.

Fri., Mar 1 - Wed., Mar 6, 1918

During this period Battalion H.Q. and A.C. & D Companies were quartered in HILLS
CAMP, NEUVILLE ST VAAST. Accommodation here was excellent, consisting of Nissen
Huts in a good state of repair. B Company had two platoons at the Barrier on the LENS-
ARRAS Road, and two platoons in VIMY VILLAGE. All four platoons were quartered in
dugouts and cellars. During this tour all four Companies carried out working parties in front of
the Ridge, working in conjunction with the 123rd. Pioneer Battalion.

Wed., Mar 6 - Thu., Mar 7, 1918

On the night 6th/7th, the 7th Cdn. Infantry Bde. relieved the 9th Canadian Inf. Bde. in
the line, AVION Sector, and the Battalion relieved the 116th Cdn. Battalion in the front line left
sub-section AVION. The disposition was as follows:-

A Company.....	Right Front
C " 	Centre
D " 	Left Front
B " 	Support

The frontage extended from the VIMY-AVION Railroad exclusive to the SOUCHEZ
RIVER.

The Support Company was quartered in Cellars in the Brewery in LA COULOTTE. Battn. H.Q.
was in LA COULOTTE. The relief was completed without casualties at 11. pm. The 4th Cdn.
Division was on our left and the R.C.R on our Right.

The character of the sub-section held by the Battalion was a curious one, as the right and
centre Companies ran through AVION VILLAGE, but the left Company was in front of a large
flooded Area known as "The Lake" on the other side of which was a large rail way embank-
ment. The outpost line of the right and centre Companies was very complex, and the Left Com-

pany was remarkable for the distance for which several of the listening posts were pushed out from the front line; in one case nearly 300 yards. The listening posts were in all cases connected with the front line by pull wire. Constant patrolling was carried out during the night by all three Companies, and especially the right and Centre Companies. The work of the patrols on the latter two Companies' fronts was very difficult owing to the fact that the ground, which was covered with a great quantity of debris, stones, timber etc. from the ruined houses, made noiseless patrolling almost an impossibility. During the tour Lieut. H. B. Trout of A Company made frequent daylight reconnaissance of NO MANS LAND on the Company front with a view to ascertaining whether the enemy occupied the outpost line in advance of the embankment during the day. On the second to last day of the tour, March 11th, Lieut. Trout, while making a daylight reconnaissance spotted an enemy sentry in a suspected enemy post in SALINE Trench at N.33.a.37.70. Lieut. Trout was himself spotted by the sentry at the same time he spotted the latter.

Fri., Mar 8, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sat, Mar 9, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sun, Mar 10, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Mar 11, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Tue., Mar 12 - Wed., Mar 13, 1918

As a result of this reconnaissance it was decided to carry out a daylight raid. At 9. am. March 12th, supported by Artillery and Trench Mortar barrage. The party consisted of Lieut. H. B. Trout and 15 O.R. plus 2 Stretcher Bearers, including Sergt. Smith and Corpl. Trowse of A Company. The raid was carried out exactly according to schedule and with the greatest dash by the whole party. Unfortunately on reaching the objective the post was found to be empty. The party threw stokes shells into an old cellar close to the post and part of the party told off for the purpose moved down SALLOW Trench and located a night post at N.38.a.4.8. During the operation the party was sniped at from the railway embankment, but no M.G. fire was directed towards them, and enemy's artillery retaliation was weak, consisting of Trench Mortars commencing 4 minutes after Zero, 77.mm. fire commencing 7½ minutes after Zero, and 4.1s. commencing Zero plus 30. The party returned without casualties to our lines at 9.15 am.

Detailed report of raid is attached hereto.

The following appeared in Battalion Orders in connection with the raid:-

6193 CONGRATULATORY.

The Commanding Officer wishes to express his appreciation of the excellent way in which Lieut. H. B. Trout and party carried out the raid on March 12th, which reflects the greatest credit on all those concerned.

Tue., Mar 12, 1918

Lieut. L. H. Biggar, who had been wounded at PASSCHENDAELE, was taken on strength of the Battalion as Signalling Officer and proceeded to 1st. Army Signal School.

Tue., Mar 12 - Wed., Mar 13, 1918

On the night March 12th/13th the Battalion was relieved in the front line by the 49th Canadian Battalion, ER. and on completion of relief the Companies moved to the following quarters:-

A COMPANY.....	RED Trench from CLUCAS Trench to the left.
B "	..... in Cellars at LA COULOTTE BREWERY
C "	..... 3 Platoons in ANXIOUS Trench and 1 Platoon in DAWSON Trench.
D "	..... Cellars at LA COULOTTE BREWERY
BN. H. Q.	..... PIANO DUGOUTS – ANXIOUS TRENCH.

During the relief a fairly heavy bombardment by gas shells was laid down by the enemy in the vicinity of Battalion H. Q., and the relief and move was somewhat delayed as a result. The relief was completed at 10.15 pm. and the move by 12. midnight.

"A" Company in RED Trench was placed at the disposal of the Area Commandant of the BOIS de l'HIRONDELLE Locality for the purpose of organization of the defences of the locality. The two Companies in the Brewery had battle positions assigned to them in ADEPT Trench. B Company being responsible for the southern extension of ADEPT Trench from its junction with ACTRESS to VIMY-AVION Railway, and thence along the junction of BEAVER inclusive. D Company had battle positions assigned to it in ADEPT from the junction with BALSAM inclusive to the left along ADEPT astride CLUCAS. The two platoons of B Company garrisoning the southern extension of ADEPT were instructed to take up quarters in the battle positions by the 15th March and in the meantime to "Stand To" night and morning in their battle positions. These orders were carried out but it required most energetic work on the part of the Company concerned to complete the erection of Beehive shelters in the trench sufficient to accommodate the whole of the garrison. During this tour in support A Company under the Area Commandant of the BOIS de l'HIRONDELLE Locality, and the other three Companies, besides working in their own areas, carrying rations etc., supplied working parties to the 9th Field Company C.E. to the extent of 10 platoons nightly. The work carried on consisted of carrying up material, construction of dugouts, wiring, pushing material on the light railway, trench wardens parties, trench improvement parties, construction of trench shelters etc.

Thu., Mar 14, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Mar 15, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sat, Mar 16, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sun, Mar 17, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Mon., Mar 18 - Tue., Mar 19, 1918

The Battalion relieved the 49th Canadian Bn. E.R. in the line in the same sector as before.

B Company	on the right
D	" Centre
C	" Left
A	" Support

The relief was carried out without any unusual event and was complete at 9.15 pm. The 4th Canadian Division was on our left and the P.P.C.L.I. on our Right, the latter being relieved by the R.C.R. twenty-four hours later.

Wed., Mar 20, 1918

While making his round of the posts by daylight Lieut. Scott of D Company spotted one of the enemy about 30 yards in front of one of our posts. Lieut. Scott fired three shots at him and two shots were fired at Lieut. Scott in return. The Hun, who was evidently part of a small daylight patrol, then disappeared.

Thu., Mar 21, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Fri., Mar 22, 1918

Lieut. H. L. Hoyles of C Company carried out a most daring patrol. At 9 am. he proceeded, accompanied by Sergt. Savage, to the waters edge by way of ELK Trench, taking off his equipment and tunis he waded in and when the water got deeper swan [swam] until he reached the CULVERT in embankment at N.26.b.60.45 where he remained listening to some of the enemy talking and then returned to the point at the waters edge where he had entered the lake. During this daring reconnaissance he was covered by Sergt. Savage from the edge of the lake. Valuable information was obtained as the result of this patrol, the report of which is as follows:-

"(Avion Section) – 42nd. Battalion: Daylight patrol: Morning being hazy patrol of Lieut. H. L. HOYLES and SGT. SAVAGE, C.D. left our lines at 9.30 am. at junction of CO LUMBIA and ELEU SOPPORT Trenches (N.26.c.7.5.) and proceeded overland to water edge at N.26.b.55.40 Patrol then crossed water and entered culvert under railway embankment N.26.b.60.45. Voices of 2 Germans were heard talking on embankment around corner to left. Water about halfway across on our side is shallow, thence on deep in spots, swimming for a few strokes being necessary. Considerable amount of tangled wire is in water on enemy side of channel and two strands of wire are strung along near side of embankment. Culvert is blocked at far side the obstruction projecting about a foot and a half above water level. Owing to shallow-

ness of water on our side, and depth and wire on enemy side, it would be easier for enemy to cross than for us to send raiding party over. Patrol returned to our lines at 10.30.am.

During the whole of this tour the Battalion carried on constant patrols at night also working parties, wiring the front line and improving their trenches. Support Company worked under the supervision of the 9th Field Company on ADEPT, as well as carrying material to the front line and rations.

Sat, Mar 23, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date]

Sun, Mar 24 & Mon., Mar 25, 1918

The Battalion was relieved in the line by the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., and on relief the Companies moved as follows:-

A COMPANY.....ADEPT Trench from the right of the southern extension to junction with BEAVER.

B COMPANY.....BOIS de l'HIRONDELLE Locality, including DAWSON Trench.

C COMPANY.....Cellars at LA COULETTE, with battle positions I ADEPT Trench, from BALSAM to left extremity

D COMPANY.....BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE Locality.

The relief was complete at 9.40 p.m. and the move of all Companies at 10.40 p.m.

Mon., Mar 25, 1918

The dispositions were changed by moving two platoons of B Company from BOIS DE L'HIRONDELLE to SOURIS Rd., and placing them tactically under the O.C. P.P.C.L.I.

At 11.45 pm. the following wire was received from Brigade:-

"Units will "Stand to" in readiness to move at one hours notice from 5.30 am. morning March 26th. Acknowledge by wire."

All Companies and H.Q. accordingly "Stood To" at 5.30 am. in readiness to move. At 7.55 am. on the 26th the following wire was received from Brigade "All Units may now "Stand down"

Tue., Mar 26 & Wed., March 27, 1918

The disposition was again changed by the 49th Cdn. Battn. E.R. moving its Company from Battalion Support to relieve four platoons of the P.P.C.L.I.

C Company moved into the area vacated by the Company of the 49th Bn., placing two Pltns. in ADEPT & 2 platoons in dugouts at LA COULOTTE on the right of the LENS-ARRAS Rd. B Company, including the two platoons in SOURIS Rd. moved into the area vacated by C Company at LA COULOTTE. On completion of these moves A.C. and B Companies had battle positions stretching from the junction of ACTRESS and BETTY, along ACTRESS up southern extension of ADEPT and along ADEPT to the left Divisional Boundary.

A Company garrisoned its battle positions and C Company had two platoons garrisoning its battle positions. The remainder of C Company and the whole of B Company, who were in LA COULOTTE and on the right of the road, as above stated "Stood to" in their battle positions.

The numerous changes in the disposition carried out as above were made for the purpose of extending to the right the frontage held by the 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde., and consequently the frontage held by each of the front line Battalions of the Brigade.

During the tour in Brigade Support D Company worked under the Area Commandant in BOIS de la CHAUDIERE, the remaining three Companies supplying working parties at night for the 9th Field Company C.E., wiring, carrying material, constructing dugouts, improving trenches etc., and in addition carried out work under Battalion and Company arrangements in their own Company Areas.

Battn. H.Q, which under the Brigade Defence Scheme was responsible for the defence of IRISH Trench from Prescott Road left to 50 yards left of CLUCAS Trench, wired this frontage, using small parties each night completing the three to four belts of wire already commenced across the whole frontage.

Thu., Mar 28, 1918

At 6.30 am. on the 28th a wire was received from Brigade as follows:-

"Following from TABBY "Stand To" Acknowledge."

These orders were immediately forwarded to all Companies and Headquarters,; Companies "Standing To" at once in their battle positions. The reason for the order was the enemy attack which was taking place to the south from OPPY to the SCARPE RIVER. The Artillery bombardment covering the attack was easily heard and in fact the Brigade Area was subjected to bombardment at the same time. Half-hourly reports were received from A Company and D Company on the situation, A Company's facilities for observation being especially good.

VIMY Village and VIMY-AVION Railroad, and on occasions the BOIS DE L'[LA]CHAUDIERE Locality were subjected to fairly heavy bombardment. Vimy Village receiving special attention from the enemy heavies.

Under instructions from Brigade, parties were detailed to man Battle Straggler positions, and all precautions were taken to meet an enemy attack.

The weather turned cold and wet in the afternoon. All working parties were cancelled for the evening. At 6.05 pm. the following order was received from Brigade:-

"Men may "Stand To" in dugouts but must be able to turn out quickly. Battn. Commanders will be responsible that men can get into battle positions quickly"

These orders were carried out.

At 9.30 pm. orders were received from Brigade to "Stand Down"

Fri., Mar 29, 1918

Capt. J. D. Mcleod, who was wounded at PASSCHENDAELE, returned to duty with the Battalion.

Capt. R. F. Studd, MC., who had been in command of the 42nd. Company, 7th C.I.B. Training Battalion, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*] since 1.1.18, returned to duty with the Battalion.

Sat, Mar 30, 1918

An inspiring message referring to the enemy offensive was received from the G.O.C., Canadian Corps. It read as follows:-

"In an endeavour to reach an immediate decision the enemy has gathered all his forces and struck a mighty blow at the British Army. Overwhelmed by sheer weight of numbers the British Divisions in the line between the SCARPE and the OISE have fallen back fighting hard, steady and undismayed.

Measures have been taken successfully to meet this German onslaught. The French have gathered a powerful Army, commanded by a most able and trusted leader and this Army is now moving swiftly to our help. Fresh British Divisions are being thrown in. The Canadians are soon to be engaged. Our Motor Machine Gun Brigade has already played a most gallant part and once again covered itself with glory.

Looking back with pride on the unbroken record of your glorious achievements, asking you to realize that today the fate of the British Empire hangs in the balance, I place my trust in the Canadian Corps, knowing that where Canadians are engaged there can be no giving way.

Under the orders of your devoted officers in the coming battle you will advance or fall where you stand facing the enemy.

To those who will fall I say "You will not die but step into immortality. Your mothers will not lament your fate but will be proud to have borne such sons. Your names will be revered forever and ever by your grateful country and God will take you unto Himself"

Canadians, in this fateful hour, I command you and I trust you to fight as you have ever fought with all your strength, with all your determination, with all your tranquil courage. On many a hard fought field of battle you have overcome this enemy.

With God's help you shall achieve victory once more." (Sd) A.W.Currie, Lieut.General,
Cmdg. Canadian Corps.

Sat, Mar 30 - Sun, Mar 31, 1918

The Battalion relieved the 49th Canadian Bn. E.R. in the lines, left subsection AVION.

Owing to the extension of the Brigade front the Battalion relieved four Companies in the front line instead of three. The 46th Imperial Division was on our left having relieved the 4th Canadian Division a few days before. The P.P.C.L.I. were on our right. The disposition from right to left was A.B.C.D. Coys. with Battalion H.Q. at LA COULOTTE.

In conformity with orders to thin out the Observation Line of the Division the outpost line of the Brigade front was thinned out and the front line, or resistance line, which in the left subsection consisted of AVION & SASKATOON Trenches, was strengthened.

AUGUST Trench was held simply by Posts and Patrols, Day and Night, and a Secondary Outpost Line established in front of AVION Trench.

During the last week of the month, owing to the enemy offensive, all Schools and Courses were dispersed and all personnel in attendance, whether as Instructors or taking the Courses, were returned to their Units. As a result every Company had at least 6 Officers and Headquarters was also very strong.

CASUALTIES DURING THE MONTH.	Officers Killed NIL. O.R.	Officers Wounded Lt.K.R.Lindsay(gassed) O.R.
------------------------------	------------------------------------	---

Killed.
1

Wounded.
16.

Bartlett McLennan
Lieut.Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET.

I
OPERATION ORDER NO 164
by
Major.R.L.H.Ewing,DSO.,MC.,
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

TUESDAY,MARCH 5th 1918.

- 1.INFORMATION. The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will relieve the 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde. in the line AVION Sector on the night 6/7th March 18.
- 2.INTENTION. The 42nd Battn.,less "B" Coy.,will move from NEUVILLE VAAST [*Neuville St. Vaast*] and relieve the 116th Cdn. Bn.,in the front line,left sub-section. "B" Coy.,will move from VIMY and BARRIER, LENS-ARRAS Rd., and relieve the 116th Bn.,Coy. in Support.
- 3.ORDER OF RELIEF.

"A" Coy.,42nd Bn.,will relieve 116th Bn., Right Front Coy.
"C" " " " " " " Centre front coy.
"D" " " " " " " Left front Coy.
"B" " " " " " " Support Coy.

(under company arrangements).
- 4.ROUTE.

Relieving Units will not pass over VIMY RIDGE before 6PM

No.1. Route. NEUVILLE ST VAAST – LENS – ARRAS Rd.

No.2. QUARRIES Rd.,to PLANK Rd –LA COULOTTE Rd., and thence along LA COULOTTE Rd., to LENS-ARRAS Rd.

Unless otherwise advised No.1. Route will be used, and Scout Officer will arrange to place guides at convenient plac[es.] The Coys.,will be met by guides of the 116th Bn., at the junction of CLUCAS TRENCH and LENS-ARRAS Rd., N.31.c.9.7.
5. TIME.

Coys., will move off in the following order at 5.45 p.m. with 100 yards interval between Coys.

"A" Coy.
"C" "
"D" "
"B" " independently.
6. DRESS. Battle Order with one blanket banderole in rubber sheet.
7. ADVANCE PARTY. Advance Party of 1 Officer per Coy., and at least ??O? per Coy.,with Lieut.Turner and the B.S.M. and 2 O.R. of H.Q.

- will proceed to the line at 1.00 p.m. under company arrangements. "B" Coy., will make its own arrangements.
8. RATIONS. Rations will be carried in on the men, with the exception of "B" Coy., whose rations will be dumped at Battn. H.Q., LA COULOTTE.
9. LEWIS GUNS Will be piled in open space opposite side of road
- OFFICERS TRENCH facing Orderly Room at 5.p.m. Limber will report to "B"
- KITS & COY., Coy., VIMY at 6.30 p.m. for Lewis Guns, etc.
- COOKING UTENSILS.
10. SIGNALS Signals will relieve under arrangements between the Signalling Officer 116th Bn., and Signal Sergt. 42nd. Bn.
11. PACKS & OFFICERS SUR- Will be piled on open space opposite side of road facing
- PLUS KITS & Orderly Room by 9.p.m.
- SURPLUS BLANKETS.
12. INSPECTION Huts will be cleaned, clear of men and ready for inspection
- OF BILLETS. at 5.p.m.
- 13 TRENCH A copy of trench stores take over will be forwarded to
- STORES. Bn.Hq., as soon as possible, not later than 8.a.m. on the morning of the 7th.
14. BN.HQ. Will be at LA COULOTTE.
15. RELIEF. Completion of relief will be reported by 'phone using the code message "Your O.O. 164 received at" and will be confirmed by runner.

? FLEMING,
LIEUT. ACT. ADJT.

Copies to 7th C.I.B.	O.C. "C"	
9th C.I.B.	O.C. "D"	B.S.M.
11th Battn.	Q.M.	File.
??	T.O.	3 Copies War Diary.
Adjt.	M.O.	
O.C. "A"	I.O.	
O.C. "B"	SIGS.	

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 165

by

Major. R.L.H. Ewing. D.S.O., M.C.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MARCH 11th 1918.

1. INFORMATION. As a result of a daylight reconnaissance by an Officers Patrol, enemy post has been located at H.33.a.37.70 – SALIN TRENCH.

2. INTENTION.

A raid will be carried out for the purpose of securing identification and to destroy dugouts, etc.

3. ZERO HOUR.

9 a.m. 12st March 1918.

4. RAIDING
PARTY

Lt.H.B.Trout and party from "A" Coy., of 15 O.R. (and 2 Stretcher Bearers with Stretchers) consisting of riflemen, R.G's and Bombers in Battle Order in addition to which they will carry 12 smoke bombs and 6 Stokes Shells, will leave "AUGUST" Trench at approximately N.30.b.98.80 at ZERO hour and will move forward as far as barrage on the point to be raided permits.

5. ARTILLERY
BARRAGE

Artillery barrage will open at ZERO hour as per attached Table No.1. Batteries firing on local concentration on the point to be raided will lift at ZERO plus 3. Barrage will continue for 20 minutes.

6. DIVISIONAL
T M BARRAGE

Div.T.M's will fire a crash on point to be raided at ZERO – time not to succeed ZERO plus 1 and will do counter mortar work as per barrage table No.2 attached

7. M.G.BARRAGE

The 7th Bde.M.G.will open at ZERO on enemy approaches as per table No.3., and continue until ZERO plus 20.

8. GARRISONS

O.C's Right and Centre Coys., will reduce L.G. garrisons to 3 men per gun, all other personnel to be under cover and "standing to" by 8.15 a.m. with the exception of Officers actually on duty, and will remain under cover until ZERO plus 40. In the event of an enemy shoot Coy., Commanders will use their judgement as to time of resuming regular day garrisons.

Care must be taken in the withdrawal of the garrison that it is done one man at a time so as not to create any noticeable movement in the trenches.

9. SYNCHRONIZING
WATCHES

Watches will be synchronized through Brigade and at 12.00 midnight and at 6.00 a.m. runners will be sent to Coys., concerned from Bn.Hq., for this purpose.

10. STRETCHER
BEARERS.

In addition to the 2 S.B's accompanying the raiding party a party of 4 men will be detailed to stand by in "AUGUST," Trench near jumping off point with four stretchers. An Officer on duty from Centre Coy., will be i/c and in the event of additional men being required for stretcher bearing purposes No 3's of the L.G.crews may be used.

11. ADVANCED
R. A. P.

Advance R.A.P. [*Regimental Aid Post*] will be established in cellar N.38.c.7.4. just S.E. of junction of BALSEM and AVION trenches.

C G HEWARD

Copies to 7th CIBde
8th CIBde

(6) L.O.Hvy Arty
(c/o 7th CIBde).

Lieut.Act.Adjt.

R.C.R.
7th M.G.Coy.
Div.T.M.Group
L.O.9th CFA.

C.O.
O.C's A B C D COYS
War Diary (3)
File 1.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.166

by

Major R.L.H.Ewing.DSO.MC.

Ref Map.
36.c.S.W.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Battn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MARCH 11th 18.

1. INFORMATION.

On the night 12/13th March 18., the 49th Bn., E.R. will relieve the 42nd Canadian Battalion in the line AVION, left sub-sector.

2. INTENTION.

On completion of relief companies will move to the following quarters:-

"A" Coy., 42nd Bn., RED TRENCH formerly occupied by "A" Coy., 49th Battalion.

"B" Coy., 42nd Bn., CELLARS at LA COULOTTE formerly occupied by "C" Coy., 49th Bn.

"C" Coy., 42nd Bn., "ANXIOUS" Trench formerly occupied by "B" Coy., 49th Bn.

"D" Coy., 42nd Bn., CELLARS at LA COULOTTE formerly occupied by "D" Coy., 49th,

"HQ" 42nd Bn., PIANO DUGOUTS "ANXIOUS" Trench.

3. GUIDES

(a) For incoming Battalion.

"A" Coy., 49th Bn., will provide 1 guide per platoon to report to 49th Bn., H.Q. "ANXIOUS" Trench S.6. Central at 6.30 p.m. to guide platoons of "B" Coy., 49th Bn.

"C" Coy., 42nd Bn., will provide one guide per platoon to report to "C" Coy., (49th Bn) H.Q. at LA COULOTTE at 6.30 P.M.

"D" Coy., 42nd Bn., will provide guides as already arranged with O.C. "D" Coy., 49th Bn.

(b) For outgoing Battalion.

"Guides will not be supplied unless one or more platoons of "B" Coy., 49th Bn., are moved prior to relief to "DAWSON" Trench, in which case one guide for each platoon so moved will report Bn. H.Q., LA COULOTTE at 6.30 p.m. to meet and guide platoons of "C" Coy., 42nd Bn., which will be detailed to occupy "DAWSON" Trench.

4. ADVANCE PARTIES. An Officer from each Coy., will proceed to look over the quarters to be occupied by the Coy., upon completion of relief. An advance party of 1 N.C.O. per Company and 1 O.R. per platoon will proceed under company arrangements during the day time to take over the quarters to be occupied.
5. RATIONS. Will be dumped on the night 12/13th by Light Railway as follows:-
 HQ. A & C.Coys., at SPIDER DUMP junction of RED TRENCH and Light Railway.
 For "B" & "D" Coys., at LA COULOTTE DUMP.
6. TRENCH STORES. Disposition Maps, receipts for Trench Stores, etc., will be forwarded to reach BN.HQ., by 10.00 a.m. 13th inst.
7. BN.HQ. Upon completion of relief will be at PIANO DUGOUTS "ANXIOUS" Trench – S.6. Central.
8. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn.Hq. using the code phrase "NEW YORK"
 Completion of move by code phrase "BOSTON"

Copies to 7th C.I.Bde.	O.C. "A" Coy.	C.G.HEWARD.
49th Bn.E.R.	O.C. "B" "	Lieut.Act.Adjt.
CO.	"C" "	
M.O.	"D" "	
T.O.& Q.M.	R.S.M.	
File.	War Diary 3.	

OPERATION ORDER 167
BY

MAJOR R.L.HEWING.D.S.O. M.C.
 CMDG.42nd.CANADIAN BATTALION
 Refc.Map. 36.c.S.W.1/20.000. ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA. MARCH.17th.18

1. INFORMATION In accordance with 7th.Canadian Infantry Brigades Operatio Order 135. The 42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C. will relieve the 49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R. in the front line AVION Sector left sub-sector on the night of 18/19th.March.1918.
2. INTENTION The 42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.will relieve the 49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R.on the night 18th/19th., March. 1918.in the left sub-sector.
 "B" Coy.42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.will relieve
 ""B"Coy.49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R.on the right Coy frontage.
 "D"Coy.42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.will relieve "C"Coy.
 49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R.on the Centre Coy.frontage.
 "C"Coy.42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.will relieve "D"Coy.

49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R.on the left Coy frontage.
 "A"Coy.42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.will relieve "A"Coy.
 49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R.in Support.

3. RELIEF

All details of relief will be arranged directly between Company Commanders concerned.

4. MOVING OFF.

Companies and Headquarters will move off independently under Company arrangements but must not move before 7.15p.m.

5. ADVANCE PARTIES

1 Officer and 4.O.R. per Coy,and 1 N.C.O.from H.Q. will proceed to take over during the day of the 18th.inst.

Movement by advanced parties,

Officers servants etc. by daylight will be reduced to a minimum and will in all cases be kept to the Trenches.

6. PERMANENT

will be relieved by the 49th.Canadian Battalion E.R. on the night of the 17th.inst.

WATER AND GAS

Coys,will detail guides as follows to report to 49th.Canadian Battalion.E.R. Hdqrs. LA COULOTTE at 9.00p.m. 17th.inst. to guide the reliefs for these posts.

GUARDS ETC.

"A" Coy,guide for water guard at S.11.a.6.8. (CLUCAS TRENCH)

"B" Coy guide for water piequets at N.31.c.2.9. and N.31.c.7.9.

"C" Coy guide for water guard in BLUE NOSE TRENCH.

The Brigade Gas Guard will also be relieved on the night of the 17th.inst,but guides will not be necessary.

7.DISPOSITION

Disposition Maps,Trench Strength States,Receipts for Trench

MAPS RECEIPTS ETC.

Stores will be forwarded to reach Battalion Hdqrs, by 8.00.a.m. on the day following relief.

8. RATIONS

Will be dumped on the night 18th/19th by light railway at LA COULOTTE Dump for all Coys,and Hdqrs.

9. BATTN.H.Q.

Battalion headquarters will be established at LA COULOTTE upon completion of relief.

10. REPORTS

Completion of relief to Battn.H.Q. by use of code word HAGGIS.

11.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

C.G.HEWARD.

LIEUT.ACT.ADJT.

Copies to

7th.Can.Inf.Brigade

O.C. A.B.C.D.Coys.

49th.Can.Bn.E.R.

R.S.M.

C.O. M.O. T.O. Q.M.

War Diary 3. File 1

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER No.168.

by

Major.R.L.H.Ewing.D.S.O.M.C.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Bn.R.H.C.

FRIDAY MARCH 22nd.18.

1.INFORMATION.

Under instructions from 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., the southern

Brigade Boundary will run as follows:- T.9.b.8.5. T.9.cent.
T.13.cent.S.17.b.5.0 and thence as before and the boundary between
Right and left front line Battalions left sub-sector will now be the
VIMY-AVION Rly., which will be inclusive to the right Battalion.

2. INTENTION. The 42nd Cdn. Battalion. R.H.C. will relieve the garrison at
present maintained by The Royal Canadian Regiment on the left of
VIMY-AVION Rly., on the night 22/23rd.

3. RELIEF. "B" Coy., 42nd Cdn. Bn., will relieve two platoons of "D"
Coy., Royal Canadian Regiment in AVION Trench. Details of relief
will be arranged direct between Coy. Commanders concerned. The
garrison in AVION Support Trench on the left of the Railway will
not be relieved.

4. MOVE. Relief of the two platoons in AVION Trench will be made as
soon as possible after dark, but not before 7.30 p.m.

5. TRENCH
STORES. ETC. List of trench stores, disposition states etc., will be forwarded
to reach Battalion Hq., by 8 a.m. 23rd inst. "B" Coy., will arrange to take
over Trench Stores in AVION Support as well as in AVION Trench
from The Royal Canadian Regt. and give receipts for same.

6. RELIEF. Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion Hq., by wire by
using code phrase "MULLIGAN – UP".

Copies to:- Hq. 7th CIBde. C.G. HEWARD.
R.C.R. C.O. Lieut. Act. Adjt.
Coys.
I.O. File
WAR DIARY (3)

OPERATION ORDER NO. 169

SECRET

by

Major. R.L.H. Ewing. D.S.O., M.C.

Ref. Maps: 36.?

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.

?./?./20,000

Royal Highlanders of Canada

MARCH 24th 1918.

1. INFORMATION.

On the night of 24th/25th March 1918 the 49th
Canadian Battalion. E.R., will relieve the 42nd Cdn.
Battalion. R.H.C., in the front line, AVION, left ??????
sub-sector.

2. INTENTION.

On completion of relief Companies will move to the
following Quarters:-

"A" Coy. 42nd Bn. "ADEPT" Trench formerly occupied
by "A" Coy., 49th Bn.

"B" Coy., 42nd Bn. BOIS DE L'HIRONDELLE (including
DAWSON Trench) formerly occupied by "C" Coy. 49th Bn.

"C" Coy., 42nd Bn. Cellars at LA COULOTTE formerly occupied by "D" Coy., 49th Bn.

"D" Coy., 42nd Bn. BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE formerly occupied by "B" Coy. 49th Bn.

3. SIGNALS.

Signals will be relieved under arrangements to be made between Signal Sergeant & S.O., 49th Bn., but Company Signallers will go out with their Companies.

4. GUIDES.

Guides will be arranged where necessary between Coy. Commanders concerned.

5. ADVANCE PARTIES.

An Officer from each Company will proceed to look over the quarters to be occupied by the Company upon completion of relief. An advance party of 1 N.C.O. per Coy., and 1 O.R. per platoon & 1 N.C.O. & 1 O.R. from Hq. will proceed under Company arrangements, during the day to take over the quarters to be occupied. Movement by daylight by Officers servants, cooks, etc., will be reduced to a minimum and will in all cases be confined to the trenches.

6. PERMANENT POSTS.

Permanent Posts will be relieved as per schedule "A" annexed, the relief for these posts leaving at dusk. Arrangements to be made directly between Coy. Commanders concerned.

7. RATIONS.

Will be dumped on the night 24/25th by Lt. Rly., as follows:- Bn. Hq., & 3 Platoons of "B" Coy., at SPIDER DUMP junction of RED TRENCH and LIGHT RAILWAY.

"C" Coy., and No. 8 Platoon of "B" Coy., at LA COULOTTE DUMP.

"D" Coy., at VICTORIA DUMP T. 13.b.80.80.

The rations for "A" Coy., will be brought up by limber to the Junction of VICTORIA ROAD and "ADEPT" Trench.

8. TRENCH STORES.

Disposition Maps, receipts for Trench Stores, etc will be forwarded to reach Bn. Hq. at 8 a.m. 25th inst.

9. Bn. H.Q.

Upon completion of relief will be at PIANO DUGOUTS – ANXIOUS TRENCH – 5&6. central.

10. REPORTS.

Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. H.Q. using the code phrase "VIOLET".

Completion of move by code phrase "LORAIN".

11. ACKNOWLEDGE.

C.G. HEWARD. LIEUT. ACT. ADJT.

Hq. 7th C.I. Bde. Adj. Sigs. War Diary (3)

O.C. 49th Cdn. Bn. T.O. I.O.

C.O. Q.M. B.S.M.

C.O. A, B, C, D, Coys. M.O. File.

SCHEDULE "A"

PERMANENT POST.	STRENGTH N.C.Os . O.R.		TO BE MANNED BY -----	AT PRESENT MANNED BY
Bde.Gas Guard._	1	5	H.Q.(Scts).	H.Q. (49th Bn).
Water Guard	1	10	"D" Coy.	"B" Coy.(49th).
Bluenose T.				
Water Grd.				
CLUCAS T.		3	"A" C	"A" Coy.(49th).
S.11.a.8.8.				
Water Grd.				
COLUMBIA T.		3	"A" C	"A" Coy.(49th).
Water Grd.				
LA COULOTTE.		3	"C" Coy.	"A" Coy.(49th).
Water Grd.				
BEAVER T.				
just south of jct. with "ADEPT"		2	"A"	R.C.R's.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.170

by

Lt.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Bn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map. 36.c.S.W.
1/?0.000

FRIDAY MARCH 29th 18.

1.INFORMATION.

On the night 30/31st March the 42nd Cdn.Bn.R.H.C. will relieve the 49th Cdn.Bn.E.R. in the front line, left sub-section, AVION. On relief the 49th Cdn.Bn.E.R. will move into Brigade Support.

2.INTENTION.

The 42nd Cdn.Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the 49th Cdn.Bn.E.R. in

the front line, left sub-section on the night March 30/31st.

"A" Coy., 42nd Bn. will relieve "B" Coy, 49th Bn in the Right Coy., front.

"B" Coy., 42nd Bn. will relieve "D" Coy 49th Bn in the right centre Coy., front.

"C" Coy., 42nd Cdn. Bn. will relieve "C" 49th Bn in the left centre Company front.

"D" Coy., 42nd Bn., will relieve "A" Coy., 49th Bn in the Left Company Front.

All details of relief including guides where necessary will be arranged direct between Coy. Commanders concerned.

3. SIGNALS.

Signals will be relieved under arrangements to be made between Signal Officers concerned.

4. MOVING OFF.

Coys., and Hq., will move off independently under Coy. arrangements, but must not move off before 7.30 p.m.

5. DISPOSITIONS

MAPS, RECEIPTS
ETC.

Disposition Maps, Trench Strength states, Trench distribution states, receipts for trench stores and list of trench stores taken over will be forwarded to reach Bn. Hq., by 8 a.m. 31st inst.

6. ADVANCE

PARTIES.

1 Officer per Coy., and at least 1 O.R. per platoon & 1 N.C.O. from Hq., will proceed to take over during the day of 30th inst.

Movement by advance parties, Officers servants etc., by daylight will be reduced to a minimum and in all cases will be kept to the trenches.

7. PERMANENT
BDE. POSTS.

Permanent Bde. posts, Water & Gas Guard, Traffic Control posts and Battle Straggler posts supplied by 42nd Bn. will be relieved by 10.00 p.m. on the night of relief.

8. BN. HQ.

Upon completion of relief will be at LA COULOTTE.

9. RATIONS.

Will be dumped on the night of the 30/31st by Light Railway at LA COULOTTE DUMP, for all Coys., at Hq.,

10. REPORTS

Completion of relief will be reported to BN. Hq., by using the code phrase "Splendid at....."

11.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

C.G. Heward.

Copies to:-

7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
49th Cdn. Bn. E.R.
O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS.
I.O.S.O. M.O. (1)
Q.M. & T.O. (1)
FILE. WAR DIARY (3)

Lieut. Act. Adjt.

REPORT ON MINOR OPERATION CARRIED OUT BY RAIDING PARTY
42ND. CANADIAN BATTALION, R.H.C. at 9 a.m. 12th March, 1918.

The raiding party consisted of Lieut. H.B.Trout and 15 O.R. (plus 2 stretcher bearers) including Sergt. Smith and Corpl. Trowse left our line from "AUGUST" Trench at N.32.b.98.80 under cover of Artillery Barrage at 9.a.m. and proceeded to suspected enemy post in SALINE Trench at N.33.a.37.70, where Lieut. Trout in a daylight reconnaissance yesterday had seen a sentry. The party was divided into 3, 2 of which moved approximately 50 yards to the right and left of the point to be raided to act as blocks in SALINE Trench, while the remainder went through the post and around the ruin in the rear. On reaching the point it was found to be empty. It consisted of an old cellar in the ruin apparently not used for living in. A number of cylindrical sticks, etc., were found. The party threw Stokes Shells into the cellar. Blocking party No. 2 located a night post in SALON Trench approximately N.37.a.4.8. consisting of a funk hole with cylindrical sticks and egg bombs. During the operation the party was sniped at from Railway Embankment but no M.G. fire was directed towards them. They returned to our line at 9.15am. without casualties.

BARRAGE

Our barrage was most satisfactory.

ENEMY

RETALIATION

Enemy's retaliation was weak, the first T.M's coming four minutes after ZERO in the neighbourhood of junction of AVION Trench with Railway and around BEAVER followed by some .77 c.m. gun fire in same area 7½ minutes after ZERO. At ZERO plus 30 enemy opened with 4.1s in vicinity of track and south of same.

Arrangements made all worked out satisfactorily the one bad bit of luck being that no enemy were encountered.

I consider that great credit is due to Lieut. Trout, not only for the way in which he carried out the raid, but for his determined and persistent patrolling during this tour to determine whether the enemy occupied his out-post line in advance of the embankment by day or not, which finally resulted yesterday morning in seeing a sentry and being spotted by him. It is possible that on this account the post was withdrawn or may have made a get away when the shoot started.

I should like to express my keen appreciation of the excellent work done by Lieut. Livingstone the L.O. attached to us in arranging the barrage, which it was necessary to do in comparatively limited time, and fore the support given by the Artillery, the Divisional T.Ms. and 7th M.G. Coy.

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

9TH CANADIAN ARTILLERY BRIGADE 201 Copy No. 9
Minor Operation Order No. 2,

by

Major D. A. MacKinnon, DSO. Cmdg.

11th of March 1918

INFORMATION. 1. As a result of a daylight reconnaissance by an Officers patrol, enemy post has been located at N. 33. a. 27. 70. SALINE TRENCH.

INTENTION 2. A raid will be carried out for purposes of securing identification and to destroy dugouts, etc.

ZERO HOUR 3. 9.00 A.M. 12th of March 1918

RAIDING PARTY 4. Lieut. H. B. Trout and party from "A" Coy., of 15 O.Rs. (& 2 stretcher bearers with stretchers) consisting of riflemen R.Gs, and Bombers in Battle Order in addition to which they will carry 12 smoke bombs and 6 Stokes shells, will leave AUGUST Trench at approximately N.32.b.98.80. at ZERO Hour and move forward as far as barrage on the point to be raided permits.

ARTILLERY SUPPORT 5. Artillery Barrage will open at ZERO HOUR and barrage will continue for 20 (twenty) minutes as per attached table.

SYNCHRONIZATION. 6. Runners will be sent by batteries to this Brigade Headquarters to synchronize watches, at 7.00 am. 12th instant.

CORRECTOR 7. Corrector will be established before Zero Hour. In firing for corrector shooting should be done well away from point proposed to be raided.

METEOR CORRECTIONS 8. Will be very carefully worked out.

O.Ps. 9. Officers on duty will be on the alert and will report immediately any unusual occurrence.

L.Gs. 10. Liaison Officers will forward reports as soon as possible after the raid takes place.

L/ 11. In the event of the raid being cancelled, the code word "CREAM" will be wired to all concerned.

Major,
A/C.O. 9th Canadian Artillery Brigade

Issued at p.m.

Copy No. 2. to O.C. 31st. Battery
 3 O.C. 33rd. "
 4 O.C. 45th "
 5 O.C. 36th "A" "
 6 O.C. 36th "B" ,"
 7 L.O. Infantry Brigade
 8 L.O. Right Battalion
 9 L.O. Left Battalion
 10 3rd. C.D.A. (for information)
 11 G.O.C. R.A. Cdn. Corps (for information)
 12 C.D.D.O. (do)
 WAR DIARY (3)

9TH CANADIAN ARTILLEY BRIGADE.

Minor O.O. No. 2.
11.3.18

BARRAGE TABLE

<u>BATTERY</u>	<u>TIME</u>	<u>GUNS</u>		<u>LOCATION</u>
33rd.	ZERO to + 3	3	Enemy Post	N.33.a.37.70.
	+ 3 to + 20	3	Rly Embk.	N.33.a.60.50
			From	N.33.a.70.85
			To	
		1		N.33.a.52.35
45th		1		N.33.a.45.40
		1		N.33.a.57.26
		1		N.33.a.70.95
		1		N.27.c.27.55

	1	N.27.c.55.10
	1	N.27.c.75.05
31st	1	N.27.c.30.65
	1	N.27.c.35.38
	1	N.27.c.35.30
	1	N.27.c.50.31
	1	N.33.a.65.15
35th "B"	1 (Howr)	N.27.c.40.80
	1	N.27.c.60.40

RATE OF FIRE

ZERO to + 5 mins	-	INTENSE
+ 5 to + 15 "	-	NORMAL
+ 15 to + 20 "	-	SLOW

AMMUNITION

18¼ p dr.	50% "A"
	50% "AX"

36 "A"	1 (Howr)	N.27.c.95.10
	1	N.33.a.80.30
	1	N.33.b.37.42
	1	N.33.d.10.97

Mon., Apr 1, 1918 **AVION SECTOR, FRANCE**

Battalion still in front line AVION Sector.

Tue., Apr 2, 1918 **AVION SECTOR, FRANCE**

As explained in last months War Diary the former outpost line in "AUGUST" Trench had, under orders from Brigade, been thinned out and "AUGUST" Trench was manned night and day by standing patrols and patrols only. At 11pm. on this date, the night being exceedingly dark, Lieut. W. C. Baber was proceeding along "AUGUST" Trench on the left of the AVION Rd. in a standing Lewis Gun patrol which was posted in the AVION Rd. from a standing patrol posted on the extremity of AUGUST Trench. Her was accompanied by 4 O.R. and had already made a trip to left standing patrol. On the return trip when the party had reached a point a few yards to the left at the junction of CLUCAS and AUGUST Trenches, a party of the enemy estimated at strength of 15 threw stick grenades into the trench on each side of the patrol and

swarmed over the parapet firing their revolvers and instantly overpowering the patrol. Lieut. Basber and Pte. Grant were seized and after a struggle lifted over the parapet by the party. One of the patrol was left in the bottom of the trench for dead and the two remaining members of the patrol succeeded in making their escape. The enemy party then proceeded towards their lines down the AVION Rd. Lieut. Baber in charge of three of the enemy one of whom marched behind with revolver at Lieut. Baber's head. When they had proceeded a few yards from the trench, the enemy party was apparently alarmed by the noise made by the standing patrol on the right which was coming down the trench to investigate the disturbance, and Lieut. Baber seized the opportunity to wrench himself free and made good his escape, in spite of the fact that one of captors fired his revolver at him at point blank range, wounding him with a grazing wound in the head. Pte. Grant did not succeed in escaping and has been reported "Missing, believed prisoner of War" Lieut. Baber succeeded in making his way to Company H. Q. where he reported the incident. Besides the wound in the head he was wounded by revolver shots in leg and arm and by a bomb in the other leg.

Immediately on receipt of the report Major Willcock, MC. In command of "C" Company took out a strong patrol to examine the locality and endeavour to recover Pte. Grant, and he was assisted by Major Topp in command of B Company on his right who took out a patrol for a similar purpose. No trace of Pte. Grant could be found, although the trench and No Mans Land in the vicinity were carefully searched. These patrols and a daylight patrol which went out at daylight next morning established the fact that enemy party had cut a way through our wire making a path by pieces of paper fastened to the stakes and had proceeded down AVION Rd. to AUGUST Trench where the party divided into two smaller parties and had lain in wait on the parapet of the trench. A cap belonging to an N.C.O. of a Jaeger Bn. was picked up in the trench at the scene of the encounter.

Wed., Apr 3, 1918

The appointment of Major S. C. Norsworthy, DSO, MC. as temporary Brigade Major, 8th Canadian Inf. Brigade appeared in Divisional Orders.

The appointment of Capt. J. D. MacLeod as Adjutant appeared in Battalion Orders.

Thu., Apr 4, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Apr 5, 1918

A minor operation was carried out by Lieut. A. J. MacLachlan and one platoon of C Company, in conjunction with the Heavy Artillery at 9.a.m. The purpose of the operation was to make a daylight reconnaissance from the area from AUGUST Trench N.26.d. to the railroad. If identifications were secured the party were to return if not they were to proceed through the Culvert to N.27. c.80.05 and investigate and destroy known dugouts. The feature of the operation was a shoot by Heavy Artillery on carefully selected points, while the 18 pndrs. fired smoke shells on three selected targets believed to contain M.G. emplacements. The party was divided into three:-

Party A A/Sgt. George, J. proceeded to junction of SALINE & SALLOW N. 33.a. 35.85, and worked down SALLOW Trench to approximately N. 27 c 65. 35.

Party B A/L/Sgt. Matthews, H. and 7 O.R. proceeded straight down AVION Rd. to the right of trees to same point N. 27. c. 65. 35 to block trench, remaining there until joined by Party A.

Party C Lieut. A. J. McLachlan and 6 O.R. went straight through ruins in a bee-line to same point and acted as covering party for other 2 parties. Here very heavy M.G. fire was experienced firing from the left. One of these M.Gs. was located at approximately N. 27.c.80.70, rifle fire from embankment was also encountered. Party therefore could advance no further and withdrew very successfully under cover of smoke bombs thrown by themselves and fire from our snipers who had been posted to cover the operation.

No identifications were obtained and no casualties occurred but valuable information as to the locality was obtained.

Copy of detailed report of the operation with observations thereon is attached.

Fri., Apr 5 & Sat, Apr 6, 1918

The Battalion was relieved in the front line by the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., and on completion of relief moved to Brigade Support.

A COMPANY – BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE Locality

C " - ACTRESS Trench, Southern extension of ADEPT Trench and ADEPT Trench proper

B " - ADEPT Trench and dugouts on LENS-ARRAS Rd. LA COULOTTE AREA

D " - CELARS at LA COULOTTE

Sun, Apr 7, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Apr 8, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Apr 9, 1918

Publication of the award of the M.C. to the Battalion Transport Officer Lieut. Hugh McMaster Scott appeared in the London Gazette. This decoration was awarded for the work of this Officer while Brigade Transport Officer of the 12th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the PASSCHENDAELE Operations.

Wed., Apr 10, 1918

Orders were received for the relief of the Brigade in the AVION Section by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the nights 11/12th and 12/13th April. On completion of relief the Brigade was to go into billets at NEUVILLE ST. VAAST. The Battalion was to be relieved on the night 11/12th by the 116th Canadian Bn. and the 75th Canadian Bn., and on completion of relief was to move to HANSON CAMP, NEUVILLE ST.VAAST.

Thu., Apr 11, 1918

The order for the relief of the Brigade by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade, was cancelled and an order was issued which provided for the relief of the Brigade on that portion of the front north of T.3.a.4.0. by a Brigade of the 4th Canadian Division and ordered the Brigade to relieve the 137th Imperial Brigade in the LENS Section.

Capt E. C. Evans returned to the Battalion. This Officer was one of the original Officers of the Battalion, but had been absent since he was wounded at the SOMME in September 1916.

Capt. Munroe, C.A.M.C. reported to replace Capt. Hale, MC. C.A.M.C. Medical Officer of the Battalion who had been sent to the Corps Rest Station, sick.

Fri., Apr 12 & Sat, Apr 13, 1918

On this night the Battalion in accordance with the last mentioned order, moved from Brigade Support in AVION Section, 3 Companies of the Battalion relieving the 6th North Staffords in the left front line, LENS Section, and one Company of the Battalion relieving one Company of the 5th S. Staffords in Brigade Support LENS Section. Upon completion of the relief disposition of the Battalion was as follows:

D COMPANY in the front line ARGYLE AMALGAM ALOOF AND AMULET Trenches.

A COMPANY in Support COW and ALARM Trenches.

B COMPANY in right reserve, quartered in eastern part of LIEVIN, with battle positions in CAVALRY Trench and ADROIT Post, garrison of ADROIT post living there.

C COMPANY in left reserve in ST.JEANNE D'ARC with battle positions in CAVALRY, PAUL, PETER and JOHN'S Posts. The Battn. frontage in the front line extended from N.20.a.00.52 to the railway cutting at N.13.d.64.12, the cutting being inclusive to the Bn. Although shortly afterwards this was changed and the Brigade on our left made responsible for the cutting.

The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade were on our left and the Royal Canadian Regiment on our right. The P.P.C.L.I. moved into the Support positions in the AVION Sector which had been vacated by the Battalion.

Sun, Apr 14, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Apr 15 & Tue., Apr 16, 1918

Inter-Company relief.

A Company in support relieved D Company in the front line.

B Company right reserve, relieved A Company in Support

D Company on relief moved to right reserve.

C Company remained unchanged.

Wed., Apr 17, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Apr 18 & Fri., Apr 19, 1918

Inter-Company relief.

B Company in Support relieved A Company in the front line.

C Company, left reserve, relieved B Company in Support

A Company, on relief, moved into the left reserve.

D Company remained unchanged.

Fri., Apr 19, 1918

Lieut. J. M. Morris who had been absent on command as Musketry Officer on the 3rd Div. Wing, since December 1917 returned to the Battalion, was posted to DCompany.

During the morning Battalion Headquarters was heavily shelled, over 300 5.9's being put in the immediate vicinity.

In the afternoon between 60 and 70 shells were thrown, one of which crashed through the tunnel in the Officers Quarters. Battalion Headquarters was moved to Stafford House that same night.

Sat, Apr 20, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Apr 21, 1918

Lieut. G. L. Ogilvie proceeded on temporary duty to 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade as Orderly Officer to the G.O.C.

Sun, Apr 21 & Mon., Apr 22, 1918

Inter-Company relief.

C Company, in support, relieved B Company in the front line.

D Company, in the right reserve, relieved C Company in Support

B Company, on relief, moved into right reserve

A Company remained unchanged.

Mon., Apr 22, 1918

Capt. Wm. Hale, MC. resumed his duties as Battalion M.O.

Major Leggat, MC., 3rd Cdn. Siege Batty. carried out an excellent shoot on proposed objectives

Tue., Apr 23 & Wed., Apr 24, 1918

Preparations were made to carry out a raid on the enemy's lines at 3. am. on the morning of April 24th in conjunction with smoke barrage, simulating a gas projection. It was arranged that gas projectors which were in position in CITE ST. THEODORE, if weather conditions were favourable, would be fired at 12.midnight on the 23/24th April, and that this projection should

be followed at 3.am. (ZERO Hour) by a projection with drums of smoke and asimulated projection of gas by flashes. As however the night 23/24th was unfavourable for gas though not unfavourable for smoke the gas projectors were not fired on that night but arrangements in regard to smoke projection and asimulated projection of gas by flashes were carried out.

At 2. am. on the morning of the 24th the enemy opened an intense Trench Mortar barrage on our posts 4 and 5, the latter of which was one of the points selected for the jumping off place for the proposed raid. At 2.15 am. the enemy 20 strong attempted to raid our posts 4 and 5 but were driven off by Machine Gun fire. As a result of the bombardment however Corpl. Hughes was killed and 7 O.R. from C Company wounded.

45 minutes later our raid was carried out according to schedule. The raiding party was divided into 2 – Party A under Lieut. W. J. Kavanagh and 12 O.R. from C Coy. Party B Lieut Cowing, T. and 12 O.R. D subdivided into raiding party of 7 O.R. and covering party of 5 under Sergeant Bestwetherick.

Party A, on the projection of the smoke and the discharge of the dummy gas projectors, left our post no. 2 at N.20.a.20.75 and pushed forward to enemy post at N.20.a.28.92. They got right forward to the post where they encountered heavy wire which had apparently been newly put up, which it was impossible to penetrate. While they were trying to find an opening the enemy spotted them and opened with rifle fire, Mills grenades and cylindrical sticks to which our party replied with a large number of Mills grenades and then withdrew covering their withdrawal with No. 27 smoke bombs. They returned to our lines at 3.19 am. with two slight casualties only. No prisoners were obtained.

Party B. At ZERO Hour on the projection of smoke the party went forward and reached Railway Embankment at N.14.c.02.17 without being fired on. At the top of the embankment the shell holes were found full of wire and light concertina fence had been put up since the previous night. A M.G. opened on the right but was immediately silenced by bombs and rifle grenades fired by the covering party on the top of the embankment. The raiding party got over the wire and rushed the enemy concrete post in the trench that runs along reverse slope of the embankment. The garrison of the post retired down the trench. Lt.Cowing and L/C Mavor, who had got ahead of the party in getting through the wire, chased this garrison up the trench to the left towards Culvert for a distance of about 100 yards where they found wire block placed just to the south of the Culvert. Lt.Cowing opened with his revolver, climbing to the side of the trench and L/C Mavor started throwing bombs and cylindrical sticks at the enemy who put up a stiff fight from the other side of the wire blocks. Just as the rest of the party joined Lt. Cowing he was hit on the head and fell unconscious to the ground. L/Cpl. Mavor then went to his help leaving three men at the block to cover withdrawal and pulled back Lt. Cowing along the trench. He and Pte. Dineson lifted Lieut. Cowing over the embankment, the covering party in the meantime engaging a party of 8 of the enemy who were approaching from the south along a path at the foot of the embankment, and the three bombers who had been placed at the wire block continued to bomb the enemy vigorously Severe casualties are throught to have been inflicted on the party approaching along the path and also on the party to the south of the block, who were engaged with rifle grenades from the top of the embankment at point blank range. As soon as L/Cpl. Mavor and Pte. Denison had got Lt. Cowing safely over the embankment, covering parties withdrew. Lieut. Cowing was found to be severely wounded on the head and was still unconscious when he was evacuated, a stretcher case.

Copy of detailed report of the raid is attached hereto.

Following comment by the G.O.C. Division was made as a foot note of the report sent to Division.

"A good enterprise skilfully carried out. It was unfortunate that the leader (refers to Lt. Cowing leader of Party B) became a casualty. He seems to have acted with great determination and dash and must be a v.g. officer.

(Sgd.) L.J.Lipsett, M.C.

Wed., Apr 24 & Thu., Apr 25, 1918

Inter-Company relief.

D Company, in support, relieved C Company in front line.

A Company, in left reserve, relieved D Company in Support

C Company, on relief moved into left reserve.

B Company remained unchanged.

Fri., Apr 26, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Apr 27 & Sun, Apr 28, 1918

Inter-Company relief.

With this relief a new system of holding the area was inaugurated, namely, front line and support line were distributed half of each to each of the two Companies instead of having one Company responsible for the front line and the other for the Support. To carry this out the following moves took place-

A Company took over right front sub-sector – 2 platoons of A relieved 2 platoons of D in ARGYLE, AMALGUM & AMULET Trenches. 2 platoons of A remained as garrison of ALARM and ARGUE Trenches and ADROIT Post.

B Company took over the left front line left sub-sector. 2 Platoons of B Company relieved two platoons of D Company in ALOOF, COTTON and ALARM Trenches. 2 Platoons of B relieved 2 platoons of A in COW Trench.

D Company on relief moved into right reserve.

C Company remained unchanged in left reserve.

CROCODILE Trench was boundary between the two front line companies.

Mon., Apr 29, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Apr 30, 1918

The month terminated with the Companies still in the line, this being the fifty-fifth day, but with promise of relief on the night of May 1st/2nd.

Casualties: Total for the tour:

	<u>KILLED DIED OF WOUNDS WOUNDED TO HOS. WOUNDED AT DUTY</u>			
OFFICERS			2	
O.R.	5	2	28	6
	<u>UNACCOUNTED FOR</u>			

OFFICERS
O.R.

1

Bartlett McLennan
Lieut. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Bn. R. H. C.

SECRET. 1 OPERATION ORDER NO.171. Copies to. 12
by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.DSO.
Ref. Map.36.c.SW.1 Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battn.R.H.C.
" " " " 3. THURSDAY. APRIL 4th 1918.

1/10,000

1.INFORMATION. On the night 5/6th April 18 the 49th Cdn.Bn.E.R. will
relieve the 42nd Cdn.Bn.R.H.C. in the front line ,left sub-section,
AVION.

On relief the 42nd Canadian Battalion will move into
Brigade Support.

2.INTENTION. On the night 5/6th April 42nd Cdn.Bn.R.H.C.will be relieved in
the front line,left sub-section,by the 49th Cdn.Bn.E.R. Details of relief
to be arranged directly between Coy.Commanders concerned.

3.MOVES. On completion of the relief,the Coys.,will move as follows:-

"A" Coy. BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE Locality – area vacated
by "B" Coy 49th Bn.

"C" Coy., "ACTRESS" southern extension of ADEPT and
ADEPT TRENCHES, Area vacated by "A" Coy.49th Bn.

"B" Coy,ADEPT Trench and dugouts on right of LENS-ARRAS
RD, LA COULOTTE Area vacated by "C" Coy. 49th Bn.

"D" Coy.,CELLARS at LA COULOTTE vacated by "D" Coy.
49th.

4.SIGNALS. Will be relieved under arrangements to be made between Signal
Officers concerned. Coy.Signallers will go out with their Coys.

5.ADVANCE
PARTIES. Advance parties of 1 Officer per Coy.,and at least 1 O.R. per
platoon and 1 N.C.O. from Hq.,will proceed during the afternoon and
take over the quarters to be occupied by the Companies on completion
of relief.

Movement by advance parties,Officers servants,etc. will be
reduced to a minimum and will in all cases be confined to the trenches.

6.WATER GUARDS
ETC. Water & Gas Guards,Traffic Control posts, etc. supplied by
the 49th Bn.,will be relieved by 10.00 p.m. on the night 5/6th inst.,
and Hq.,in accordance with schedulke "A" attached.

7. WORKING PARTIES. Bde. working parties as supplied by 49th Bn. will be taken over by 42nd Bn., from 10 a.m. on the day following relief. Detailed instructions will be issued later.
8. DISPOSITION MAPS. ETC. Disposition Maps, Trench distribution states, Trench strength state, receipts for Trench stores handed over, and list of trench stores taken over, will be forwarded to reach Bn. Hq., by 8 a.m. 6th inst.
9. RATIONS. Will be dumped as follows:- on the night 5/6th & nightly thereafter during the tour in support .
 "A" Coy. At VICTORIA DUMP by Light Railway.
 "C" Coy. At jct. of VICTORIA Rd. & ADEPT Trench by limber.
 Bn. Hq., "B" & "D" Coys. at LA COULETTE DUMP by Light Railway.
10. BN. HQ. On completion of relief will be at PIANO DUGOUTS, ANXIOUS TRENCH, S.6. cent.
11. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using code phrase "your O.O. 171 received at.....p.m." .
 Completion of move will be reported to Bn. Hq.,
 A NXIOUS Trench by wire using code word "BACON" atp.m."
12. ACKNOWLEDGE.
- Copies to 1. Hq. 7th CIBDE. 8. SO. IO. BO. C. G. HEWARD.
 2. 49th Cdn. Bn. ER. 9. QM & TO. Lieut. Act. Adjt.
 3. C. O. 10. FILE.
 4. 5. 6. 7. O. C. A. B. C. D. COYS. 11. 12. 13. WAR DIARY.

SCHEDULE "A" IN CONNECTION WITH O.O. 171.

WATER & GAS GUARD, TRAFFIC CONTROL, POSTS, ETC.

		Personnel. At present supplied by. 49th Bn.	To be taken over by 42nd Bn.
1.	Bde. Gas Guard.	1. N.C.O. 5 men	Hq. Scts. Sec.
2.	Battle Stragglers Post DEAD HORSE CORNER approx S.4.c.95.10.	1 N.C.O. 5 "	Hq. "D" Coy.
3.	Water Guard,		

	BLUE NOSE. 1 N.C.O. 11 men	"B"	"A"
4.	Water Guard 2 men. BEAVER Tr.nr ADEPT.	"A"	"C"
5.	Water Guard CLUCAS TR. 3 "	"D"	"D"
6	Water Guard COLUMBIA TR. 3 "	"D"	"D"
7	Water Guard. LA COULOTTE. 3 "	"D"	"D"
8.	Railway Control Post. 2 " LA COULOTTE.	"D"	"D"

- . - . - . - . - . - . - . - . - .

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.172.

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Battn.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map.36.c.S.W.3.

" " 36.c.S.W.1.

1/10.000.

----- THURSDAY APRIL 4th 1918. -----

1. INTENTION.

A minor operation will be carried out for the purpose of securing identification. It is proposed to make a daylight reconnaissance of the area from AUGUST TRENCH N.26.d. to the railroad. Should identifications be secured the party will return, if not they will proceed through Culvert at N.27.c.80.05, and investigate and destroy known dugouts.

The operation will be carried out by 1 Platoon of "C" Coy., under Lieut.A.J.MacLachlan, in conjunction with the Heavy Artillery, who will fire on selected targets for the purpose of creating a diversion, and Field Artillery who will use smoke – as per attached tables.

2. ZERO HOUR.

Will be fixed hour plus 17 namely 9.00.a.m.5th April 1918

3. ARTILLERY
TABLE.

As per attached schedules.

4. GARRISON.

Day positions only will be maintained. All Officers & O.R.

not directly concerned except those on duty are to be under cover by 15 minutes before zero.

5. SNIPERS. 6 Battalion Snipers will report to O.C. "C" Coy., 4 for use with his covering party; 2 to be detailed to the right of the railroad.
6. SIGNALS. S.O. will run a line and establish a 'phone in O.P. in SULLIVAN TRENCH for purposes of this raid.
7. STRETCHER BEARERS. 2 Stretcher Bearers will accompany the raiding party. O.C. "C" Coy., will detail a party to stand by in AUGUST Trench near jumping off point with a reserve of four stretchers
8. SYNCHRONIZING WATCHES. Watches will be synchronized through Brigade at 6.a.m. Runners will be sent to Coys., concerned from Bn.Hq., with the time.
9. CODE WORDS. BLACK. Operation takes place.
GREEN. Operation cancelled.

J.D.MCLEOD.

Copies to Hq., 7th C.I.Bde.
H.L.O. Bde.Hq.
C.R.? L.O.
R.C.R.
C.O. A.B.C.D. COYS.
FILE.
WAR DIARY.

CAPTAIN.ADJUTANT.

SCHEDULE "A" . TABLE OF HEAVY ARTILLERY FIRE, in connection with 42nd Canadian Battalion.O.O. 172.

HEAVY ARTILLERY.
RATES OF FIRE.

Rapid	-	1 round per gun per minute.
Normal	-	½ round per gun per minute.
Slow.	-	¼ round per gun per minute.

If wind is favourable 6" Hows. will fire gas
for the slow period.

TARGETS.	No.1.	Embankment N.33.b.30.35	6" HOWS.
	No.2.	Objective.N.27.c.82.10.	6" HOWS.
	No.3.	Turntable N.27.b.12.05	6" HOWS.
	No.4.	Bn.Hq.,N.27.b.15.52	9.2 HOWS.
	No.5.	O.P. N.21.c.85.15	8"HOWS.

TIME TABLE.

No.1. Target.	Zero plus 1 to zero plus 4	Rapid.
	" " 4 " " " 21	Normal.
	" " 21 " " " 31	Slow.
No.2.Target.	Zero to zero plus 3.	2 guns rapid then stop.
No.3.Target.	Zero to Zero plus 3.	Rapid.
	Zero plus 3 to zero plus 20	Normal.
	" " 20 " " " 30	Slow.
No.4.Target.	" " 2 " " " 5	Rapid.
	" " 5 " " " 22	Normal.
	" " 22 " " " 32	Slow.
No.5.Target.	" " 1 " " " 4	Rapid.
	" " 4 " " " 21	Normal.
	" " 21 " " " 31	Slow.

-

SCHEDULE "B"
TABLE OF FIELD ARTILLERY FIRE, in connection with
42nd Canadian Battalion.R.H.C. O.O. 172.

FIELD ARTILLERY 18 pndrs. firing Smoke Shells.

From ZERO plus 3 to ZERO plus 6 – 2 round per minute on each, of the 3 Corps
Log targets,namely:-

No. 10 Corps Log Target.	N.33.a.70.25
22 " " "	N.33.b.55.25
23 " " "	N.27.d.10.95.

ZERO plus 6 to ZERO plus 16 - one round per-minute on each of the

on each of the above targets.

ZERO plus 10 to ZERO plus 20 – one round per minute on each of the following targets,namely:-

N.27.d.60.00
N.34.b.50.70.
N.22.c.50.70.

3.

1918.

Headquarters.

7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Following is report of minor Operation carried out at 9.00 a.m.
this morning :-

As a result of the operation,which was an experiment of using the Heavies to create a diversion, it would appear that had we laid down a Field Gun barrage, the Machine Guns and Snipers who bothered us might have been silenced,and think it probably desirable for this type of ground to use a combination of the Heavies and Field Artillery barrage.

The smoke shells thrown by the Field Artillery on the right were absolutely effective,and the prompt use of smoke grenades by the party themselves undoubtedly enabled it to get forward within a few yards of the culvert,and get back without casualties. Parties all carried on in accordance with the arrangements, and the Officer & N.C.O's i/c the party deserve the greatest credit for the way they got forward and in the withdrawal.

In view of the rapidity with which the enemy Snipers and M.G's opened, it would look as though some positions must have been maintained on the left,on a basis of "night conditions"on account of the very heavy fog and rain. Previous daylight patrols in this area have drawn no fire from this direction. One Machine Gun was located at approx N.27.c.80.70.

Our Snipers were only able to get one or two targets before the smoke grenades thrown by patrols obscured view,after that they only fired in direction of sounds.

LIEUT.A.J.MACLACHLAN and 22 O.R. left our lines AUGUST TRENCH at jct. with VICTORIA ROAD. Artillery assistance is known to you.

Party assembled before zero to right of Church(N.33.a.25.95) one party "A" A/Sgt.GEORGE.J. and 7 O.R. proceeded to jct.SALINE and SALLOW (N.33.a.35.85) and worked down SALLOW Trench to approximately N.27.c.65.35

Party "B" A/L/Sgt.MATTHEWS.H. and 7 O.R.proceeded straight down VICTORIA ROAD to right of trees to same point N.27.c.65.35 to block trench, remaining there till joined by party "A".

Party "C" LIEUT.A.J.MACLACHLAN & 6 O.R. went straight through ruins in bee line to same point and acted as covering party for other two parties.

Here very heavy M.G. fire was experienced firing from the left,one of which was located at approx.N.27.c.80.70, also rifle fire from embankment. Party therefore could advance no further,and withdrew very successfully under cover of smoke bombs (K.J.)and fire from our Snipers.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Enemy wire very heavy,but has been badly smashed by our Artillery and Stokes,and no difficulty was experienced in getting through it at any point.
2. SALLOW Trench very shallow but bath-matted pretty continuously.
3. A "T" Sap off SALLOW Trench at approx.N.27.c.55.10 apparently used as a night post,there being stick bombs and post in good repair.
4. Apparently no day post this side of Culvert.

continued

SHEET 2.

REMARKS.

Artillery fire accurate. Same applies to Stokes.

Smoke,of Artillery and Hand Bombs very effective in obscuring Enemy's view of active M.G. and rifle fire would seem that during withdrawal casualties were directly avoided by use of hand smoke bombs.

RECORD OF EVENTS. as reported from forward Signal Station in advance of AUGUST TRENCH.

9.05½	German two red flares.
9.06	" one red flare.
9.08	Some Sniping and little M.G.fire.
9.10	Two M.G's firing.
9.12	M.G's very active.
9.14	Intermittent bursts of M.G.fire.
9.15	Enemy T.M's
9.16½	Party returning.
9.20	Party all in.

Bartlett McLennan

Lieut.Col.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.173

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Ref.Map.36.c.SW.1.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Batt.

" " 36cS.W.3.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

APRIL 10th 18.

-
1. INFORMATION. The Brigade will be relieved in the line AVION SECTION by the 9th Canadian Inf.Bde.,on the nights 11/12th and 12/13th April.18.
 On completion of relief the Brigade will go into billets at NEUVILLE ST.VAAST with Bde.Hq.,at Fort George.
 2. INTENTION. On the night 11/12th the 42nd Cdn.Bn.,R.H.C.will be relieved in Brigade Support,left sub-section by the 116th Cdn.Bn. On completion of relief the Battalion will move to HANSON CAMP.
 3. ROUTES. The Companies will go out by the following routes:-
 "A" Coy., RED TRENCH and LENS-ARRAD [S] RD.
 "B" " BALSAM TRENCH and LENS ARRAS RD.
 "C" " CYRIL TRENCH and LENS-ARRAS RD.
 "D" " & Hq., LA COULOTTE RD,PLANK ROAD and Bath Mat Walk.
 Officer i/c Scout Section will place guides at junctions to guide outgoing Units.
 4. SIGNALS. Will be relieved under arrangements to be made between Signal Officers concerned. Coy.,Signallers will move out with their Coys.
 5. ADVANCE PARTIES. As already arranged. Movement by Officers servants, etc., will be reduced to a minimum and will in all cases be confined to the trenches.
 6. GUIDES . Guides on the basis of 1 per Bn.Hq., and 1 per Coy., Hq., and 2 per Platoon will rendezvous at junction of RED TRENCH and LENS-ARRAS RD.,at 8.45 p.m. 11th inst., reporting to Lieut.H.A.Sewell at that

point.

(NOTE:- Coys., of the relieving Battalion have only three platoons).

7. L.G's, OFFICERS
KITS, DIXIES, WATER
TINS. ETC.

L.G's, Officers Kits, Dixies, Water Tins., etc., will be piled at dumps as follows:-

"A" Coy., junct. RED TRENCH and LENS-ARRAS RD.

"C" " " " CYRIL TRENCH and LENS-ARRAS RD.

"B" "D" & "Hq"., junction LA COULOTTE RD & PRESCOTT R

Limbers will report to these dumps at 10.30 p.m. Coy.,
Commanders will arrange for a guard of 1 N.C.O. & 2 O.R. who will
also act as loading party.

8. TRENCH STORES.

Receipt for trench stores handed over will be forwarded
to reach Bn.Hq., at 6.0 p.m. to-morrow 11th in

9. REPORTS.

Completion of relief will be reported to Bn.Hq., by wire
using code phrase "Your O.O.173 received at"

Completion of move will be reported to Bn.Hq., HANSON
CAMP by runner.

Copies to Hq., 7th C.I.Bde. 116th Cdn.Bn
C.O. Adjutant.
C.O. A.B.C.D.COYS.
Q.M. & T.O. (1) SO.IO.BO.(1)
Rear. File.
War Diary(3). B.S.M.

J.D.MACLEOD.
CAPTAIN. ADJUTANT.

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.174

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Ref.Map

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Bn.

LENS 36.c.SW.1.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

THURSDAY APRIL 11th 1918.

-
1. INFORMATION. (a) On the night 12/13th April the 7th Cdn.I.Bde., will be
relieved on that portion of the front south of T.3.a.4.0 by
a Brigade of the 4th Cdn.Division.
(b) On the same night 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will relieve the
137th (Imperial) Inf.Bde., in the LENS Section.
The 9th Cdn.I.Bde., will be on the left of the 7th
Cdn.Inf.Bde., in the new section and the 4th Cdn.Div. on
the right.

- The Boundary between the 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,and the 9th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will be as follows:-
N.13.d.7.0. – N.13.b.0.3. – N.13.a.0.3. across Railway to M.18.b.4.3 – M.18.b.9.7. – M.16.a.6.4.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Bn.R.H.C. (less *ONE* Coy) from Bde.,Support AVION Section will relief the 6th North Staffords in the Left front line,LENS Section.
ONE Coy,of the 42nd Bn.,from Brigade Support AVION Section will relieve 1 Company of the 5th South Staffords in Brigade Support.(N.18) LENS Section.
- 2 "D" Coy.,42nd Bn.,will relieve front line platoons of B & C Coys.,of 6th North Staffords in the front line
"A" Coy.,42nd Bn.,will relieve support platoons of "B" & "C" Coys., 6th North Staffords in supports.
"B" Coy., 42nd Bn.,will relieve "A" Coy., 5th North Staffords in right reserve.
"C" Coy.,42nd Battalion will relieve "D" Coy.,6th North Staffords and 1 Coy.,5th North Staffords in Left Reserve.
3. ORDER OF MARCH. D. A. C. B. COYS. Companies will move off at dusk.
4. ROUTES. Via RED TRENCH, thence along BARROW ROAD to NAPOO CORNER Battalion Scouts will be placed at intervals along route to direct.
5. ADVANCE PARTIES. (a) Advance parties of 1 Officer per Company and 2 O.R. per platoon and 1 Officer and 4 O.R. from Headquarters will proceed at 1.00 p.m. to-morrow 12th inst and take over trench stores etc.
(b) Advance parties of the P.P.C.L.I. will report to Companies to-morrow afternoon 12th inst.,to take over thye present area as per arrangements between Bn.Commanders concerned.
Movement by advance parties,Officers Servants etc., will be reduced to a minimum and will in all cases be confined to the trenches.
6. SIGNALS. Signals will be relieved under arrangements to be made between Signal Officers. Coy.Signallers will go out with their Coys.
7. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will go out with their companies, and crews will carry 10 discs per gun, 8 discs per gun will be placed at dumps and taken over on limbers.
8. OFFICERS KITS ETC. Officers Kits,Mess boxes,Dixies,Water Tins and 8 L.G. discs per gun will be piled at dumps as follows:-
A & C.Coys., & Hq., at junction of LA COULOTTE & PRESCOTT ROADS.
Coy.,Commanders will arrange for a guard of 2 O.R. who will also act as loading party.
9. TRANSPORT. Limbers will report at Dumps as soon after dusk as possible and will deliver to CROWE DUMP.
- 10, GUIDES (a) Guides on the basis of 1 per platoon well be supplied by the 6th North Staffords and 5th South Staffords who will meet relieving

- Units at NAPOO CORNER.
 (b) 1 O.R. per platoon of 42nd Bn., advance party will after taking over trench stores, etc., report to NAPOO CORNER at 2 o'clock to Lieut. H.A. Sewell, and will act as joint guides with the Staffords to take in Platoons.
11. TRENCH STORES. Receipts for Trench Stores handed over and list of trench stores taken over will be forwarded to reach Battalion Hq., by 8 a.m. 13th inst.
12. DISPOSITION MAPS. ETC. Disposition Maps, Trench distribution States, Trench Strength states, will be forwarded to reach Bn. Hq., by 8 a.m. 13th inst.
13. RATIONS. Will be dumped as follows:-
 Headquarters A.B. & D. Coys. CROW DUMP
 "C" Company. VICTORIA JUNCTION.
14. BN. HQ. On completion of relief will be at M.23.c.60.75
15. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using code phrase –Your O.O.174 received atp.m.". *C Coy. will report by Runner*

J.D. MACLEOD.

CAPTAIN. ADJUTANT.

Hq., 7th Cdn Inf. Bde.
 6th North Staffords.
 5th South Staffords.
 P.P.C.L.I.
 C.O.
 Adjutant.
 O.C. A. COY
 B "
 C "
 D "
 I.O. B.O. S.O. 1.
 Q.M. & T.O. 1
 B.S.M.
 File.
 WAR DIARY (3).

S E C R E T.

April 14th 1918.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 175.

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.DSO.

Cmdg.,42nd Cdn.Battn.R.H.C.

1. INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on the night 15/16th April and the following moves will take place.
"A" Coy, in Support will relieve "D" Coy., in the front line
"B" " Right Reserve will relieve "A" Coy in Support.
"D" Coy., on relief will move to Right Reserve.
2. RELIEF. All details of relief will be arranged between Company Commanders concerned.
3. PATROLS. The relief must not interfere with aggressive patrolling. "A" Coy., will arrange to have patrols go out as early as possible.
4. WORKING PARTIES. Coy,Commanders will see that the work programme is carried on. Working parties will report immediately on completion of relief.
5. RATIONS. O.C. "C" Coy.,will detail a party of 1 N.C.O. & 15 O.R., to carry rations for "A" Coy.,on night of relief.
Other companies will carry their own rations on completion of move.
6. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn.Hq., by wire using code phrase "Your O.O.175 received atp.m."

J.D.MACDONALD.

CAPTAIN. ADJUTANT.

S E C R E T.

OPERATION ORDER NO.176 April 17th 1918.

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Bn.R.H.C.

1. INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on the night 18/19 April and the following moves will take place.
"B" Coy.,in support will relieve "A" Coy.,in the front line.
"C" Coy., left Reserve will relieve "B" Coy.,in support.
"A" Coy.,on relief will move into left reserve.
2. RELIEF. All details of relief will be arranged between Company Commanders concerned.
3. PATROLS. The relief must nor interfere with aggressive patrolling

- "B" Coy., will arrange to have patrols go out as early as possible.
4. WORKING PARTIES. Coy. Commanders will see that the work programme is carried on. Working parties will report immediately on completion of relief.
5. RATIONS. "D" Coy., will furnish party to carry "B" Coys., rations, of 1 N.C.O. & 15 O.R. Party will report at CROW DUMP at 9.00 a.m. Other companies will carry their own rations on completion of relief.
6. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using code phrase "Your O.O. 176 received atp.m."

J.D. MACLEOD.

CAPT. ADJUTANT.

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 177. April 21st 1918.
by
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battalion.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

1. INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on the night 21/22nd April and the following moves will take place.
- "C" Coy., in support will relieve "B" Coy., in front line.
"D" Coy., in Right Reserve will relieve "C" Coy., in Support.
"B" Coy., on relief will move into Right Reserve.
2. RELIEF. All details of relief will be arranged between Coy., Commanders concerned.
3. PATROLS. The relief must not interfere with aggressive patrolling.
"C" Coy., will arrange to have patrols go out as early as possible.
4. WORKING PARTIES. Coy. Commanders will see that the work programme is carried on.
5. RATIONS. "A" Coy., will furnish party to carry "C" Coy., rations of 1 N.C.O. & 15 O.R. Party will report at CROW DUMP at 9.00 p.m. Other companies will carry their own rations on completion of relief.

6. REPORTS.

Completion of relief will be reported to Bn.Hq., by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.177 received atp.m".

.J.D.MACLEOD.

CAPTN. ADJUTANT.

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.178.

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

Ref.MapLENS 36.c.S.W.1.

APRIL 22ND 1918.

1. INTENTION.

A raid will be carried out on the night 23/24th April 1918 for the purpose of obtaining identification and destruction of dugouts, etc.,under a dummy gas projection,provided weather conditions are favourable.

(A) Under arrangements with Captn.Summer,Special Coy.R.E.,who will project 25 drums of smoke at Zero hour & simulate the discharge of 200 projectors by the use of black powder.

(B) Conditions being favourable Special Coy.,E.R.will project Gas at Zero minus 3 hours in the centre of the area N.14.c.and d. N.20 a and b.

2. ZERO HOUR. Zero hour 3 a.m. on the night 23/24th April,wind being favourable.

3.SMOKE PROJECTION. Smoke will be projected on the following points:-

N.14.c.10.60.

N.14.c.07.37

N.14.c.20.38

N.14.c.20.06

N.20.a.40.90

and simulate the discharge of 200 projectors.

4.OBJECTIVES. Suspected enemy posts to be raided are:-

(1) Enemy post at Jct.LENS-LIEVIN Rd., & Railway N.20.a.25.?6

(2) Enemy post Jct.LENS-ARRAS Rd.,with Railway at N.20.a.44.78

(3) Enemy post at Culvert in Railway Embankment N.14.c.10.37 and dugouts in vicinity.

5.RAIDING PARTIES. "A" Party consisting of Lt.W.J.Kavanagh and 1 Section approximately 12 O.R. with such additional connecting files,??? etc., that may be necessary,will raid objectives Nos 1 & 2.

"B" Party,consisting of Lt.T.Cowing and 1 Section as above will raid objective No.3.

6.ASSEMBLY POINTS. "A" Party will assemble at xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx Post No2.in advance of ARGYLE Trench N.20.a.71.08.

- "B" Party will assemble at Culvert in Railway at N.17.d.70.33.
- 7.SIGNAL TO START. Discharge of Projectors will be Signal to Start.
- 8.SIGNAL THAT PARTIES A green flare fired from ARGYLE & ALOOF Trenches
HAVE RETURNED. respectively.
- 9.ARTILLERY. 7th Canadian Inf.Bde.,will arrange:-
(1) To have Artillery S.O.S.line on portion of our front concerned
to be as follows from Zero minus 10 minutes,until notified that the
operation is complete.
N.14.c.27.87 – N.14.c.46.80 – N.20.a.75.60 – N.20.a.80.25.
- (2) If it is desired to call down a barrage for protection or to cover
withdrawal ,this should be placed on the normal S.O.S. line (A) plus
100.
- 10.L & R T.M's. 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will arrange:-
That L& M T.M's. do not fire on the area in question.
- 11.L & R M.G's. 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will arrange that M.G.'s do not fire on the
area in question.
- 12.GARRISON. Garrison of the front line – ARGYLE-AMALGAM-ALOOF with the
exception of two sentries per post and L.G's will be withdrawn and
"stand to" in their dugouts.
- 13.SIGNALS. S.O. will install 'phones at Culvert – ALOOF Trench & at
dugout in rear ARGYLE Trench.Jct,LENS-LIEVIN Road.
- 14.SYNCHRONISATION. Watches will be synchronised at 8.p.m. & 11 p.m. 25.4.18. Watch
will be sent by Runner from Bn.Hq's
- 15.CODE WORDS. Operation cancelled - SNAP.
Operation complete - CAKE.
(Call for barrage - SOUP.
on normal S.O.S.line plus 100 yds. OVER.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

J.D. MACLEOD.

CAPT. ADJUTANT.

Hq. 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.
Capt. Summer. O.C.Special Coy.R.E.
C.O.
O.C. A.B.C.D.COYS.
File.
War Diary (3).

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO.179.
by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

April 23rd 18.

Cmdg. 42nd Cdn. Battn. R.H.C.

1. INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on the night 24/25th April and the following moves will take place.
 "D" Coy., in support will relieve "C" Coy., in front, line.
 "A" Coy., in Left Reserve will relieve "D" Coy., in Support.
 "C" Coy., on relief will move into Left Reserve.
2. RELIEF. All details of relief will be arranged between Coy., Commanders concerned.
3. WORKING
PARTIES. Coy. Commanders will see that work programme is carried on without interference.
4. RATIONS. "B" Coy., will furnish a party of 1 N.C.O. & 15 men to carry "D" Coys., rations. Party will report at CROW DUMP at 9.00 p.m.
 Other companies will carry their own rations on completion of relief.
5. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 179 received at.....p.m.".

J.D. MACLEOD.

CAPTN. ADJUTANT.

REPORT ON MINOR OPERATION CARRIED OUT AT 2

3. A.M. THIS MORNING BY 42ND. CANADIAN BATTALION, R.H.C.

At 3. a.m. on projection-----April 24th, 1918
of smoke to simulate a gas attack :-

Party of "A" Lieut. W.J. Kavanagh and 12 O.R. left our Post No. 2 at N.20.a.20.75 and pushed forward to enemy post at N.20.a.28.92. No difficulty was encountered from wire in getting forward and none was found in the Sunken Road until the party got right up close to post. The smoke afforded an effective screen and they were not spotted until reaching a high belt of concertina wire around post. This was impossible to get through and while trying to find a way, the enemy spotted them and opened with rifle fire, Mills Grenades and Cylindrical sticks. Our party replied vigorously with a large number of Mills Bombs and after finding it impossible to get into the post, and throwing a lot of bombs they withdrew covering their withdrawal with No. 27 bombs. This party returned at about 3.19 a.m. There were two slight casualties.

Just prior to going out a wiring party was reported and it is thought that the belt of concertina barbed wire around the post must have been out during the night. The Officer i/c was enthusiastic about the smoke projection, stating that they were able to get to the post before enemy realized it and had it not been for the wire no difficulty should

have been experienced in cleaning up the post.

Lt. Kavanagh and Party carried out the operation in a very creditable manner.

Major R. Wilkcock, whose idea of simulating dummy gas by smoke was acted on, supervised, the right party from an advanced post in "No Mans Land"

"B" Party- Lieut. T. Cowing and 12 O.R., which were sub-divided into raiding party of 7 O.R. and a covering party of 5 under Sergt. Bestwetherick.

At 3. a.m. on the projection of the smoke, party went forward and reached the Railway Embankment at N.14.c.0.2.17 without being fired on. When the party reached the top of the Embankment, shell holes were found full of wire, and light concertina fence had been put up since last night. A machine gun opened on the right, and was absolutely silenced by bombs and rifle grenades fired from the covering party on top of the embankment. Party got over the wire and rushed enemy concrete post which was in the trench that runs along the reverse slope of the Embankment. The garrison of this post retired down the trench. This trench which is about 2½ ft. deep and is dug along back of embankment so that a man standing in it can just see over the track.

Lt. Cowing and L/C Mavor who had got ahead of the party getting through the wire chased the garrison of this post up the trench to the left towards the culvert. They went up the trench about 100 yards where they found a wire block placed just to the south of the Culvert. Lt. Cowing climbed to the side of the trench and opened fire with his revolver, L/C Mavor then throwing Mills and Cylindrical sticks, a bag of which he had picked up in the trench, at the Hun who put up a stiff fight.

Just as the remainder of the party joined these two, Lieut. Cowing was hit on the head and fell unconscious to the ground. L/Cpl. Mavor then went to his assistance, placing 3 men at the barrier to cover withdrawal of the wounded Officer, who he pulled back along the trench. At that moment he saw a party of 8 men approaching from the south along path at the foot of embankment which decided him to go directly over the embankment instead of the way they had come. With the assistance of Pte. Dineson he got Lt. Cowing lifted over the embankment. The covering party meantime [meantime] engaged the party approaching from the south and the bombers whom he had placed at block continued to bomb the enemy vigorously there; meantime Sergeant Bestwetherick's party had bombed several dugout entrances. The leading man of the party of 8 was hit with rifle fire and crumpled up; the remainder were bombed at close range with Mills and several of them must have been wounded, as a number of bombs were thrown at close range right into the party.

P. T. O.

- -

- 2-

During the operation Rifle Grenadiers engaged the party to the south f [of] the block from the top of the Embankment and state they were able to fire point blank into the trench and must have caused casualties.

When it was realised that Lt. Cowing was severely wounded, the [m]ain effort of the party was to get him back to our lines. When L/C Mavor and Pte. Dineson had got him safely over the embankment, the two parties withdrew.

Owing to the fact that Lt. Cowing was very severely wounded in the head it was impossible to obtain any report from him, but those taking part were most enthusiastic about the way he led the party.

L/Cpl. Mavor also deserves special credit for the way he succeeded in getting Lt. Cowing in an unconscious condition out of a stiff fight.

The work of the covering party under Sergt. Bestwetherick was excellent it not only succeeded in silencing a machine gun but used sound judgement in dealing with the situation throughout.

The smoke projection on the left which was more widely distributed, and of which a number of drums fell short, was not so satisfactory as on the right, but afforded a sufficient screen for the whole of the party to reach the top of the embankment before they were spotted.

The enemy encountered were not wearing gas helmets.

(Sd.) Bartlett McLENNAN, Lt. Col.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

7th Canadian Inf. Brigade

B.M.R. 30/16

3rd. Cdn. Div. "G"

Forwarded.

A.O. Meredith, Major

for Brig. General

Cmdg. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade

24. 4. 18.

s

A good enterprise, skilfully carried out
It was unfortunate that the leader became
a casualty; he seems to have acted with
great determination and dash, and must be
a v.g. officer.

(Sd) Lipsett, M.G.

REF. MINOR OPERATION BY 42ND. CDN. BN. MORNING Apl. 24th, 1918
SUMMARY OF VERBAL MESSAGES RECEIVED AT ADVANCED REPORT CENTRE
& BATTALION H. Q. FROM O.C. "D" & "C" COYS. AT JUMPING OFF POINTS.

FROM

3.	a.m.	All quiet, no flares	
3.02	"	Good cloud	RT
3.03	"	Projector barrage good	LT
3.05	"	White chain lights & scattered shots	RT
3.06	"	Large Fritz flare to left of embankment	LT
		Bombs.	RT. & LT.
3.07	"	Grenade fighting takes place	LT
3.08	"	Bombs & Mills grenades	LT
3.08	"	Rifle Shots	RT
3.08	"	M.G. single shots	RT
3.09	"	Bombs right & left	RT
3.09	"	Hand grenade fighting continuously	LT
3.09½	"	White chain flare on left	RT
3. 10	"	do do	RT
3. 11	"	More Mills	RT
3. 12	"	Rifle smoke grenades (ours)	RT.
3. 13	"	White flare on track	RT
3. 14	"	Single M.G. shots	RT
3. 14½	"	White flare on track	RT
3. 15	"	White flare on left track	RT
3. 16	"	Fritz ground flare on track	RT
3. 16	"	SOUP	RT & LT
3. 17	"	Our heavies shooting up rear area	RT
3. 19	"	2 double green flares	RT
3. 20	"	Right party back-no success-no casualties	RT
3. 20	"	Double green flare relayed back	RT
3. 22	"	More SOUP H.A.opening up on right front	RT
3. 22	"	M.G. bursts on our left	RT
3. 22	"	M.G. fire on right	RT
3. 23	"	Two darts	RT
3. 24	"	Another dart	RT
3. 25	"	Our 18 pndrs putting over shrapnel	RT
3. 25½	"	Two green flares on left	RT
3. 25¾	"	Minnies	RT
3. 26	"	Two red flares on left Mr. Cowing wounded	LT
3. 28	"	Two red flares on left	RT
3. 29	"	Gas. Enemy gas shell s or pineapples	RT
		slight	
3. 31	"	Two red flares on left	RT
3. 31½	"	Mill strafe both ways	
3. 33	"	Gas is shell gas – phosgene	
3. 34	"	One white flare on left	
3. 34	"	Things quieting down-one white flare on left	
		Some stokes	
3. 35	"	His guns shooting to our rear	
3. 37	"	Cancel SOUP	
3. 38	"	Keep up retaliation "Captn.Grafftey"	LT

3. 40	"	Open up again on normal line	
3. 40	"	4.1's on left	LT
3. 41	"	Darts on front line	RT
3. 41½	"	343½ 4.1's on left <i>Quiter but our guns were shooting again</i>	
3. 45	"	Retaliation no longer needed	
3. 45	"	Artillery quiter Darts on the right	
3. 45½	"	White flare on left	
3. 46	"	Have M.O. get ready for Mr. Cowing.	
3.47	"	German post retired when party went across embankment	LT
3. 48	"	Hun dugouts bombed	LT
3. 48	"	Our 4.5's shooting short near barrer. [<i>barrier</i>]	RT
3. 49	"	From a little to right of Lens-Lievin Rd.	RT
		Still dropping short near post 27	??
3. 53	"	"LT" coming in (Capt. Grafftey).	LT.
3. 54	"	All quiet.	LT.
3. 55	am.	Our guns shooting again	RT
3. 56	"	Was correct but all quiet now	RT
3. 57	"	Everything normal. Coming in.	RT

Following are messages receiced from Report Centre from 2 i/c
 "TO TAKEN.

CAKE at 3.29 a.m. aaa. prison ers NIL aaa Right and Left
 party all returned 2 known casualties & Lt. Cowing.
 From 2 i /c Taken"

 "Lt.Kavanagh reports men held up by high belt of wire
 just outside post enemy threw Mills and cylindrical sticks our
 party bombed posts aaa 3 casualties"
 4. a.m. From 2 i /c Taken"

 "Lt. Cowing revolver wounds scalp aaa stretcher case has
 not reached here yet"
 4.05 a.m. From 2 i /c Taken"

 "Lt. Cowing was over embankment and 25 yards up track
 when hit in head by revolver shot became unconscious and had
 to be carried out his withdrawal covered by our bombers."
 From 2 i /c Taken".

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 180 April 27th 18.
 by.
 Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
 Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.

5th Royal Canadian Highlanders of Canada.

1. INTENTION.

There will be an inter-company relief on the night 27/28th April, when the following moves will take place:-

"A" Coy., will take over the right front sub-sector.

2 Platoons "A" will relieve 2 platoons "D" Coy., in ARGYLE-AMALGAM- & ALOOF Trenches.

2 Platoons "A" Coy., will garrison ALARM & AGUE Trenches and ADROIT post.

"B" Coy., will take over the left front line sub-sector

2 Platoons "B" will relieve 2 platoons "D" Coy., in ALOOF-COTTON & AMULET Trenches.

2 Platoons "B" will relieve 2 platoons "A" in COW Trench.

"D" Coy., on relief will move into billets in right reserve.

2. BOUNDARIES.

CROCODILE Trench will be the boundary between "A" & "B" Coys. Posts 4 & 10 will be inclusive to "A" Coy., & "B" Coy., will be responsible for the defence of CROCODILE from COW to AMALGAM.

3. COY. HQ.

Coy., Hq., for the right front line sub-sector will be at the junction of ALARM & ABSALOM Trenches-

Coy., Hq., for the left front line sub-sector in COW trench.

4. RELIEF.

All details of relief will be arranged between Coy., Commanders concerned.

5. WORKING PARTIES.

Coy., Commanders will arrange that work programme is carried on with as little interference as possible.

6. RATIONS.

"B" Coy., will leave a rear party to carry in Company rations.

"C" Coy., will detail a party to carry "A" Coys., rations.

Both parties will consist of an N.C.O. and 15 O.R., and will report at CHOW DUMP at 9.30 p.m.

7. RECEIPTS FOR TRENCH STORES.

Front line Coys., will hand in receipts for trench stores taken over by 10 a.m. 28th inst.

8. REPORTS.

Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 180 received atp.m.

J.D. MACLEOD.

CAPT. ADJUTANT.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.181.

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg.,42nd Canadian Battalion.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map.36.c.S.W.1/10,000

MAY 1 st 1918.

1 .INFORMATION,

The 3rd Canadian Division will be relieved by the 18th Corps,comprised of 20th and 24th Divisions.

Moves will commence April 30th,reliefs to be complete by 6.00 a.m. May 3rd.

The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will be relieved:-

(a) in LENS Section by the 61st Brigade on night of 1st/2nd May.

(b) In AVION Section by the 60th Brigade on the night of 2nd/3rd May.

2.INTENTION.

The 42nd Canadian Battalion.R.H.C.,will be relieved by the 7th D.C.L.I.,on night 1st/2nd inst.

"A" Coy.7th D.C.L.I.,will relieve "A" Coy.,42nd Bn.in right front sub-sector.

"B" Coy.7th D.C.L.I. will relieve "D" Coy.,42nd Cdn.Bn.in right reserve.

"C" Coy.7th D.C.L.I. will relieve "B" Coy.,42nd Cdn.Bn., in left front sub-sector.

"D" Coy.,7th D.C.L.I., will relieve "C" Coy.,42nd Cdn.Bn.,in left reserve.

After relief the Battallion will em-bus under instructions to be issued and proceed to CAUCOURT Area.

Lt.C.G.Howard will act as em-bussing Officer.

Lt. H.A.Sewell will act as de-bussing Officer.

In the event of trains being used to LENS JUNCTION

Lt.A.Fleming will act as en-training Officer.

Lt.V.E.Hobart will act as de-training Officer.

3. GUIDES.

Guides will be detailed on the basis of 2 per platoon and one per Coy.Hq. They will report to Lt.A. Fleming at Bn.Hq.,Stafford House at 7.30 p.m.

4.L.GUNS.

4 L.G's per Coy., and 12 discs per gun will be carried out. The remaining gun and discs will be placed at the dump at Jct.RED TRENCH and LENS-LIEVIN Rd., and will be taken out by limber.

Coy.,Commanders will see that full complement of discs are taken out and that they are loaded.

5. Officers KITS
Etc.,

Officers Kits,Mess Boxes,Dixies,and 10 water tins per Coy.,will be piled at dump at Jct.of RED TRENCH & LENS-LIEVIN Rd.

Coy.,Commanders will each detail a guard of 1 O.R. who will also act as loading party.

H.Q.Baggage will be piled at Bn.Hq.

6.TRANSPORT.

Limbers will report at dump at Jct.RED TRENCH & LENS-

LIEVIN Road., and Battalion Hq., at 9.30 p.m.

7. TRENCH
STORES.

All maps of the area, Defence schemes, aeroplanes, photos, log books and trench stores will be handed over and receipts will be forwarded to reach Bn.Hq., by 8 o'clock to-night.

8. REPORTS.

Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq., by wire using code phrase "Your O.O.No.181 received atp.m."

Copies to Hq., 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.

IG. ? O.S.O.

O.C. 7th D.C.L.I.

Q.M. & T.O.

C.O.

M.O.

O.C.A.B.C.D. COYS.

B.S.M.

J.D. MACLEOD.

REAR

WAR DIARY(3)

FILE

CAPT. ADJT.

Wed., May 1, 1918

The Battalion still in the line in the LENS Sector. On this date orders were received for the relief of the 3rd. Canadian Division by the 18th Corps, composed of 20th and 24th Imp. Divisions. On the night of May 1st/2nd. the Battalion was relieved by the 7th Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry. The relief was effected quietly with the exception of some shelling which took place as the last Platoon of "D" Coy., was moving up CROCODILE TRENCH, and L/Sgt. Finnie was killed and 1 O.R. Wounded. The relief brought to an end the longest continuous tour which the Battalion had ever done in the front line, the Battalion as a whole having completed 57 days in the line and "B" Coy., 63 days in front of VIMY RIDGE.

On completion of relief the Battalion entrained on light railway trucks at RED MILL SIDING; the platoons arrived and detrained on the CARENCEY-SOUCHEZ Road, close to LENS Junction, where 30 'busses were waiting. The last train load arrived about 11.30 pm. and the 'busses moved off in two convoys of about 1½ hours interval to CAUCOURT. The last 'busses reached CAUCOURT about 4. am., and the Battalion moved into comfortable billets. The transport had moved on the morning of May 1st. to CAUCOURT reaching there in the evening.

Thu., May 2, 1918

Capt. Wm. Hale, M.C., M.O. of the Battalion returned from Rest Camp, and Captain Munroe, who had replaced him, ceased to be attached.

During the stay in the CAUCOURT AREA, the Battalion was fitted out in kilts, re-equipped, bathed, and training commenced, including range practice for Lewis Guns and Rifles on the ranges in the vicinity of the village, which however were not of the best.

Fri., May 3, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sat, May 4, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sun, May 5, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Mon., May 6, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Tue., May 7, 1918

The Battalion, with the rest of of the Brigade, moved by Route March to the ST. HILAIRE [*ST. HILAIRE*]-BURBURE Area. The Battalion left CAUCOURT at 7. am. and completed the journey to ST. HILAIRE by 3.30pm. Transport moved with the Battalion. The beginning of the journey took place in a downpour of rain, but the weather cleared during the middle of the morning. The column stopped for lunch in a large wood near CALONNE-RICOUART. The route taken was R??EUVE – HOUDAIN – DIVION – FERFAY – AMES to ST. HILAIRE, where the Battalion moved into billets.

While in the ST.HILAIRE Area the Battalion was under orders to be ready to move at 4 hours notice.

During the first week of the stay daily reconnoitring parties were sent to the forward area in the vicinity of ROBECQ, HINGES and MT. BERNENCHON, to look over the front line and routes of approach. Almost immediately on arrival at ST.HILAIRE a period of intensive training commenced, the greater part of the time allotted being devoted to tactical schemes and musketry.

The LINGHEM AREA was allotted to the Battalion on certain days and many useful tactical schemes both by Coys., and as a Battalion were carried out. The excellent ranges at T.15.b. near AUCHY AU BOIS were allotted to the Battalion on frequent occasions and Range practices, L.G. Practices and Field Practices, both for riflemen and Lewis Gunners were carried out.

Wed., May 8, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Thu., May 9, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Fri., May 10, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sat, May 11, 1918

Lieut. G. S. Ashby who had been in ill-health for some time was invalided to England.

Sun, May 12, 1918

Captain F. S. Allen reported to the Battalion was supernumerary Captain and was posted to "D" Company. He had been Second-in-Command of the 134th Cdn. Battalion which formed part of the 5th Division. On the disbanding of the latter he reverted to the rank of Captain in order to avail himself of an opportunity of coming to France under a new policy by which officers were attached as supernumerary and absorbed in the rank to which they had reverted as soon as vacancies occurred.

Mon., May 13, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Tue., May 14, 1918

The Battalion took part in Brigade Manoeuvres in the LOZINGHEM Area. The Battalion proceeded by Route March to ALLOUAGNE leaving at 7.30 am. in the morning and proceeding via LESPRESSES, HURIONVILLE, BURBURE, ALLOUAGNE to LOZINGHEM Area.

The Scheme carried out was an attack scheme by the entire Brigade. The R.C.R. on the Right and 42nd. Cdn. Battalion on the Left, assaulted and captured the enemy's position up to and including the intermediate objective (Blue Line on attached map). When this line had been consolidated the P.P.C.L.I. on the Right and the 49th Cdn. Bn. on the Left passed through the 2 other Battalions and moved to the assault, and captured the enemy position in the Final Objective (Green Line on attached map). The disposition of the Battalion for the attack was C Company on the Right on a 1 platoon frontage with four platoons distributed in depth – D Company on the Left with 2 platoon frontage, 2 platoons in support – B Company (less 1 platoon) in support – A Company (less 1 platoon) in reserve. One platoon of B Company was attached to C Company, and one platoon of A Company was attached to D Company, for mopping up Strong Points in C.23.a. & b. Attached to the Battalion was one battery of Heavy M.Gs. which were distributed 2 guns to each of the attacking Companies, 2 guns for the Support Company, and 2 guns in Reserve. The manoeuvres were very successful from every point of view, and many useful lessons were learned. The importance of the use of smoke grenades was especially brought to the attention of all who took part. Attached to the Brigade in the attack were two contact aeroplanes and a battery of Field Artillery. The 9th Cdn. Inf. Brigade acted as enemy. On completion of manoeuvres the Battalion marched back to ST.HILAIRE. Practice Operation Orders and instructions are attached, also map showing area, objectives and boundaries.

Wed., May 15, 1918

The announcement appeared in orders of award of the Military Medal to 418494 A/L/C. Mavor, J.H., for his part in the raid April 23rd./24th, 1918

Thu., May 16, 1918

Lieuts. D. G. MacPherson, W. G. Scott, J. A. P. Hayden and H. M. Fierro reported and were attached to the Battalion, being posted to D.B.C. and A Companies respectively.

Fri., May 17, 1918

Lieut. J. D. LeMoine, who had been invalided sick to England in September 1917, returned to the Battalion, was taken on strength and posted to his former Company – A Coy.

Sat, May 18, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sun, May 19, 1918

Lieut A. Wilson proceeded on command to 3rd. Cdn. Div. Wing, C.C.R.C. *[Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp]*, to take charge of the 42nd. Battalion Platoon of the Reinforcement Company.

Mon., May 20, 1918

Lieut. D. G. MacPherson, who had been attached, was taken on strength.

Notification was received that Lieut T. Cowing, who had been wounded in the raid of April 23rd/24th, had been invalided *[invalided]* to England.

The Battalion took part in Divisional Scheme in the LOZINGHEM Area. The Battalion left ST.HILAIRE and proceeded by Route March to BOIS ST. PIERRE near RAIMBERT. All Transport except two wagons moved off. The route was via LIERES – AMES. Dinner was served in BOIS ST. PIERRE at 10.30 am. The manoeuvres were based on the following general idea:

The Brigade was considered to be holding an area which the enemy had attacked, of which the front line was AUCHEL-LOZINGHEM Road. The enemy attacked and broke through the defences, outpost line, and main lines of resistance at some points. The 49th Cdn. Battalion were holding on the Right and the P.P.C.L.I. on the Left. The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion and the R.C.R. who were in close reserve and reserve respectively, were ordered to counter-attack on the Right and Left respectively, and restore the original main line of resistance. The Battalion attacked on a 3 Company Frontage, A Company on the Right, B Centre, C Left, with D in close reserve, C Company being called upon to make a flanking movement to overcome the resistance in the wood which formed part of the enemy line. The attack took place as ordered and some very interesting movements were carried out. A Battery of M.Gs. was attached to the Battalion, and the Brigade had at its disposal a Battery of Field Artillery and 2 contact aeroplanes. On completion of the manoeuvres the Battalion marched back to ST.HILAIRE.

Tue., May 21, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Wed., May 22, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Thu., May 23, 1918

The announcement appeared in Orders of the award to Lieut. T. Gowing of the M.C. for the part he played in the raid on April 23rd/24th, 1918.

Fri., May 24, 1918

On this date it has been planned to carry out Divisional Manoeuvres in the BOMY Area. The Battalion with the rest of the Brigade embussed at 7.30 am., and proceeded to the Area but as the rain which had been falling all morning gave no signs of letting up, the manoeuvres were cancelled by Divisional Commander and the Brigade returned without debussing.

Sat, May 25, 1918

The announcement appeared in the List of Appointments and Commissions of the promotion of Lieut. Lorne Cuthbert Montgomery, M.C., Second-in-Command of B Company, to be temporary Captain.

Sun, May 26, 1918

Major R. Willcock, M.C. proceeded on command to Corps School to act as Instructor temporarily.

41 O.R. who were in need of a rest were sent to the 3rd. Div. Wing, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*] and exchanged for a similar number of reinforcements.

Announcement was received that Lieut. V. E. Hobart, who had been invalided to Hospital sick had been sent to England.

Captain Girvan of the Canadian Dental Corps and his Staff were attached to the Battalion for rations and orders, in order that a dental station might be opened in close proximity to the Units in the Brigade.

Mon., May 27, 1918

The Battalion took part in Divisional Manoeuvres in the BOMY Area, proceeding to the Area by bus leaving at 7.30 am., and arriving at 9. am. On debussing the Brigade was informed that the enemy had attacked on the night previous and broken through our line which was at that time uncertain. Patrols of the enemy were reported in the villages of ABOMY and PETIGNY and ERNY ST. JULIAN. [*JULIEN*] The P.P.C.L.I. was put out as a screen to cover the debussing of the Brigade. The 49th Battalion was then sent forward to clear the enemy out of the villages of BOMY and PETIGNY and the surrounding wooded country. When word was received that

these villages and surrounding country had been cleared of the enemy the 42nd. Battalion on the Left and the R.C.R. on the Right were sent forward to attack the enemy's line which he was holding in strength just west of the villages of PETTIGNY and ERNY ST.JULIEN. Of the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion A Company was on the Right and D Company on the Left with B Company in Right Reserve and C Coy. in Left Reserve. The enemy consisted of the 52nd. Cdn. Battalion, a Company of Heavy M.Gs. and a squadron of Cdn. Light Horse. The manoeuvres were most instructive and were particularly noticeable for the use of mounted Cavalry patrols and a rather ridiculous Cavalry charge at the conclusion of the manoeuvres. The Battalion embussed near ERNY ST.JULIEN and returned to ST.HILAIRE.

Tue., May 28, 1918

The Battalion acted as enemy for the 9th Cdn. Inf. Brigade and carried out similar manoeuvres to those carried out by the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade on the day previous. The defending forces consisted of the Battalion, a Company of M.Gs. and a squadron of Light Horse. The Battalion learned many valuable lessons by carrying out the opposite side of the manoeuvres which they had taken part in the day previous. On the conclusion of the Field day the Battalion returned to ST.HILAIRE by 'bus.

Lieut. R. Crowe reported as reinforcement, was taken on strength, and posted to B Company. Lieuts. H. M. Ferro and ? G. Scott, who had been attached were taken on strength.

Wed., May 29, 1918

Lieut. M. K. Craig reported to the Battalion and was taken on strength.

During the month most of the spare time was occupied in sports and games.

On May 25th the Brigade Sports which were of a humorous nature took place on A Coy's Parade Ground. There were special events for civilians and also many numerous events for Officers and Men.

The Battalion Football team during the course of the month played five games as follows-

The 44th Field Ambulance	– Result:	44th F.A.	1 Goal	42nd.	1 Goals
do	do	"	"	"	0 Goals
49th Cdn. Battalion E.R.		49th Bn.	0 "	"	4 "
51st.Div. A.S.C.		51st.ASC	3 "	"	2 "
P.P.C.L.I.		P.P.C.L.I.	0 "	"	0 "

The Baseball Team played three games as follows:

7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade	- Result:	7th C.I.B.	4	42nd.	6
7th Cdn. Engineers		" 7thCdn.Engineers	4	"	5
P.P.C.L.I.		" P.P.C.L.I.	6	"	7

Besides this the Officers Indoor Baseball Team played games with The 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., 7th C.I.Bde H.Q. (2 games), 3rd. Cdn. Division "A" , P.P.C.L.I., 7th Bn. Engineers. We won all games except that with 3rd. Div. H.Q. "A".

During the month also several opportunities were given for attendance at the 3rd. Cdn. Div. "DUMBELLS" Concert Party which were much enjoyed.

3. GUIDES Guides will be detailed on the basis of 2 per Platoon and one per Coy. Hq. They will report to Lt. A. Fleming at Bn. Hq., Stafford House at 7.30 pm.
4. L. GUNS 4 L.Gs. per Coy. and 12 discs per gun will be carried out. The remaining gun and discs will be placed at the dump at Jct. RED TRENCH and LENS-LIEVIN Rd. and will be taken out by limber.
- Coy. Commanders will see that full complement of discs are taken out and loaded.
5. OFFICERS KITS Officers Kits, Mess Boxes, Dixies and 10 water ETC. tins per Coy. will be piled at dump at Jct. RED TRENCH L LENS-LIEVIN Rd.
- Coy. Commanders will each detail a guard of 1 O.R. who will also act as loading party.
- H.Q. baggage will be piled at Battalion Hq.
6. TRANSPORT Limbers will report to dump at jct. RED TRENCH L LENS LIEVIN Rd., and Battalion Hq. at 9.30 pm.
7. TRENCH All maps of the area, defence schemes, aeroplane STORES photos, log books and trench stores will be handed over and receipts will be forwarded to reach Bn.Hq. by 8 q'clock tonight
8. REPORTS Completion of relief will be reported to Bn. Hq. by wire using code phrase "Your O.O.No.181 received atpm"

O. . A.B.C.D. Coys. J.D.MacLeod
Q.H. AT.O. Capt.Adjt.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 183

by

Lieut.Col. B.McLennan.D.S.O.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Batt.

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Maps.LENS1

MONDAY, MAY 6th 1918.

HAZEBROUCK.

-
1. INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade group will march to the ST.HILAIRE-BURBURE Area on the 7th May, 1918.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will march to ST.HILAIRE on the 7 th inst., where it will occupy billets.
3. STARTING Cross Roads – P.16.a.4.7 (Ref.map 36 b).
- POINT.
4. TIME OF The Battalion will fall in in column of route on Rue du Calvaire,

<u>START.</u>	with head of column at junction of road ?l football field, ready to move off at 7 a.m. and will pass Brigade starting point at 8.20 a.m.
5. <u>ORDER OF MARCH</u>	Headquarters. A Coy. B " C " D " Transport.
6. <u>ROUTE.</u>	Via REBREUVE – HOUDAIN – DIVION – FERFAY - ?ES.
7. <u>MARCH DISCIPLINE.</u>	Interval s of 100 yards will be maintained between Coys. 100 yards between Rear Coy., and Battalion Transport.
8. <u>HALTS.</u>	Following halts will be observed :- From 25 to 30 minutes after the hour. From 50 to 60 minutes after the hour. There will be a long halt from 9.30 a.m. to 10.00 a.m. and from 11.30 a.m. to 1 p.m. <i>and</i> from 3.00 p.m. to 3.30 p.m.
9. <u>FIELD KITCHENS.</u>	Will go with their Coys.
10. <u>STEEL HELMETS.</u>	Will be carried by Officers, N.C.O's & Men.
11. <u>MESS BOXES</u>	Mess Boxes will be piled in field near Q.M. Stores by 6.15 a.m.
12. <u>COOKING ON THE MARCH</u>	The Headquarters men will get their midday meal from A.B. & & C. Coys.,kitchens.
13. <u>BAGGAGE</u>	All surplus baggage with the exception of Officers kits, mens kits & cooking utensils to be handed into Q.M. sto res by 5 p.m. to-night.
14. <u>OFFICERS KITS & MENS PACKS.</u>	Officers Kits,Mens packs, will be piled by Coys., in the Field near Q.M. Stores by 6.30 a.m. tomorrow w morning. Blankets and greatcoats will be put in the packs.
15. <u>LOADERS.</u>	The Battalion & Coy., Storemen will act as loaders and unloaders. On arrival at the new area they will get all their Officers & mens kits ready for the Battalion coming in. The Coy., Storemen will al so act as guides to their Coys.
16. <u>BILLETS.</u>	Billets will be clean and ready for inspection by 6.15 a.m.
17. <u>MARCHING OUT STATE.</u>	Marching out state will be handed into Orderly Room by 6-30 a.m. 7th inst.
18. <u>ROUTINE MAY 7th</u>	Reveille 5.00 a.m. Breakfast 5.30 " M.O's Sick Parade.5.45 "
Copies to	Hq. 7th C.I.Bde. C.O. Adjt. O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS. Q.M.
	B.O. L.G.O. I.O. M.O. B. S.M.
	J. B. MACLEOD. CAPT ADJUTANT.

T.O.
S.O.

File.
War Diary (3)

21 SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 184.
by
Lieut.Col.B.MacLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAY, 13th 1918.

1. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will march to LOZINGHEM to-morrow for Brigade Practice Scheme.
2. STARTING POINT. Jct. of BOURECQ-LIERES Roads.
3. TIME. 7.30 a.m.
4. ROUTE. LES PRESSES – HURIONVILLE – BURBURE – ALLOUAGNE.
3. ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters.
A.
B.
C.
D.
Interval s o f [*Intervals of*] 100 yards will b e maintained between Units.
7. DRESS. Battle Order without Steel Helmets.
8. TRANSPORT. L.G.Limbers,pack animals,& Field Kitchens will accompany the Battalion to assembly area.
9. ROUTINE. Reveill e..... 6.00 a.m.
Breakfast6.30 "

J. B.MACLEOD.

CAPT. ADJUTANT.

Hq., 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.

C.O.
Adj.
O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS.
L.O.
S.O.
D.G.O.
Q.M.
T.O.
B. S.M.
War Diary(3)
File.

21.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 185

Copy

by

Lieut.Col.B.McLennan.D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref.Map

36.b.N.W. 1/20,000

SUNDAY, MAY 19th 1918.

1. INFORMATION.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move to the LOZINGHEM SECTION to-morrow morning 20th inst., to take part in 3rd Canadian Divisional Manoeuvres.

2. INTENTION.

The 42nd Cdn. Bn. R.H.C., will march from ST. HILAIRE to the BOIS ST.PIERRE (C. 14) to-morrow 20th inst. On completion of Operations, the Battalion will return to billets at ST.HILAIRE.

3. STARTING POINT
& TIME.

The Battalion will fall in, in column of route on the main road, with head of column at junction of BOURECQ and LIERES Roads, ready to move off at 7. a.m.

4. ORDER
OF MARCH.

"D" "C" "B" "A" Coys. & "Hq" Details.
Interval of 100 yards will be maintained between Units.

5. ROUTE.

Via LEIRES – AMES.

6. DINNER.

Dinner will be served at 10.30 a.m. at the BOIS

- ST.PIERRE.
 7. DRESS. Battle Order without steel helmets.
 8. TRANSPORT. All Transport less Tool Carts will accompany the Battalion.
 9. BATTN. H.Q. C.8.d.60.0.

J. D.MACLEOD
CAPTN. ADJUTANT.

Copy No.1. Hq., 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.
 " 2. C.O.
 " 3. 2 i/c.
 " 4. Adjt.
 " 5 O.C. "A" Coy.
 " 6 O.C. "B" "
 " 7 O.C. "C" "
 " 8 O.C. "D"
 " 9 I.O. B.O. S.O. L.G.O.
 "10 T.O.
 "11 Q.M.
 12. 13. 14. War Diary. V
 No. 15. Fil e.

SECRET. OPERATION ORDER NO. 186
 by
 21 Lieut. Col. B.McLennan.D.S.O.
 Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Bn.R.H.C.

Ref.Maps
 HAZEBROUCK 5-a 1/100,000. THURSDAY MAY 23RD 1918.
 Sheet 36-a 1/40,000.

1. INTENTION. The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will move by 'bus to the BOMY Area to-morrow 24th inst., to take part in 3rd Cdn. Div. Tactical Scheme.
 2. INTENTION. The 42nd Cdn.Bn.R.H.C., will move by 'bus from ST. HILAIRE to-morrow morning 24th inst., to the BOMY Area & will return on *completion* of manoeuvres.
 3. EMBU SSING POINT & TIME. The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS – ST.HILAIRE ROAD with head of column 100 yards S.E. of "A" Coys., parade ground at 7-15 a.m.
 Coys., will fall in in the following order:-
 Headquarters details.

- A.B.C.D. COYS.
4. DE-BUSSING POINT. BEAUMETZ-CUREM ROAD at road junction W of B in BONCOURT.
Lieut. C.G.Howard will act as embussing Officer & Lieut. A. Fleming will act as debussing Officer.
- On completion of manoeuvres the Battalion will fall in on the COYECQUE-THEROUNINE Road at Cross Roads N.E. of D in DELETTE.
5. S.A.A. No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the busses carry ? unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on return to the billets.
6. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manoeuvres.
7. RATIONS. Haversack Rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make Tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Battalion returns to billets.
Cooks will go with their Coys., and bring dixies. They will remain with the busses.
8. TRANSPORT Transport will not move. Officers horses will be sent out to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by T.O. to be there by 8.30 a.m.
9. DRESS. Battle Order without steel helmets.
10. MARCHING OUT STATE. Marching Out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6. 45 a.m. to-morrow morning.
- Copies to Hq. 7th C.I.Bde. C.O. 2 i/c Adj. J. D.MACLEOD.
O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS. I.O. B.O. L.G.O. S.O. CAPTN. ADJT.
T.O. Q.M. B. S.M. File. War Diary(3).

21
SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 187

by

Lieut. Col. B.McLennan. D.S.O.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Bn.R.H.C.

Ref.Maps.HAZEBROUCK 5-a 1/100,000

Sheet 36-a 1/40,000.

WEDNESDAY MAY 26th 1918.

-
1. INTRODUCTION. The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will take part in 3rd Canadian Div. Tactical scheme in the BOMY area to-morrow 27th inst.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Bn.,R.H.C. will move by 'bus from ST.HILAIRE to the BOMY Area to-morrow 27th

inst.,

On completion of manoeuvres the battalion will fall in on the COYECQUE-THEROUNINE Road at Cross Roads N.W. of D in DELETTE.

3. EMBUSSING
POINT & TIME

The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS – ST.HILAIRE Road with head of Column 100 yards S.W. of "A" Coys., parade ground at 7. 30 p.m.

4. ORDER OF
EMBUSSING.

Will be as follows:-

Hq., details – A.B.C.D. COYS.

5. DE-BUSSING
POINT.

BEAUMETZ-CUREN RD., at junction W of B in BONCOURT.

Lieut. C.G.Howard will act as embussing Officer & Lieut.

A Fleming as de-bussing Officer.

6. S.A.A.

No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A., has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the 'busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on the return to billets.

8. RATIONS.

Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make Tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Battalion returns to billets.

Cooks will go with their Coys., and bring dixies
They will remain with the busses.

9. TRANSPORT.

Transport will not move. Officers Horses will be sent out to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by T.O. to be there at 8. 30 a.m.

10. DRESS.

Battle Order without steel helmets.

11. MARCHING
OUT STATE.

Marching Out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6.45 a.m. to-morrow morning.

12. CONFERENCE.

There will be a conference on the ground at the completion of the Operation on the place at which Officers Call is first sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

Copies to- Hq. 7th C.I.Bde. C.O. 2 i/c. Adjt.

J. D.MACLEOD.

I.O. B.O. LG.O. S.O.

ADJUTANT.

O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS. T.O. Q.M. B. S.M.

File. War Diary (3).

SECRET 2/

OPERATION ORDER NO. 189

by

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O.

Ref.Map.

Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.

HAZEBROUCK 5-a

Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAY 27 1918

Sheet 36. c. 1/40,000

1. INFORMATION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. will act as enemy to-morrow in a tactical scheme to be carried out by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the BOMY Area.
2. INTENTION. The Battalion will move by 'bus from ST.HILAIRE to DELETTE in the BOMY Area to-morrow morning 28th inst., and will return to billets on completion of manoeuvres.
3. EMBUSSING POINT & TIME. The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS – ST. HILAIRE ROAD with head of column 100 yards S.W. of "A" Coy., parade ground at 7. 15 a.m.
4. ORDER OF EMBUSSING. Hq., details A.B.C.D. COYS.
Lieut. C.G.Howard will act as embussing Officer.
Lieut. A. Fleming will act as debussing Officer.
5. S.A.A. No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the 'busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on the return to billets.
6. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in 'buses during manoeuvres.
7. RATIONS. Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make Tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Battalion returns to billets.
Cooks will go with their Coys., and bring dixies.
They will remain with busses.
8. TRANSPORT. Transport will not move. Officers Horses will be sent out to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by T.O., to be there by 8. 30 a.m.
9. DRESS. Battle order with Steel Helmets.
10. MARCHING OUT STATE. Marching Out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 8.45 a.m. to-morrow morning.
11. CONFERENCE. At the conclusion of the operations a conference will be held on the ground where the Officer's call is first sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

Copies to Hq., 7th C.I.Bde. C.O. 2 i/c. Adjt.
O.C. A.B.C.D. COYS. I.O. B.O. L.G.O. ?O.
?O. Q.M. B. S.M. War Diary(3).

J. D.MACLEOD.
CAPTN. /ADJUTANT.

SECRET

PRACTICE ATTACK SCHEME No. 2. Copy No. _____

by

Lt. Co. B. McLennan, D.S.O.

Ref. Map

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Sheet France 36.a.

Friday May 18th 1918.

1.

INFORMATION.

1. (a) Since attack May 4th 1918, enemy line has become defined as follows:- LA TURMAND 8.5.d. thence N.E. along road LA COUTURE – N. 31.d. – N.32.C. – a – ‘ 9 26 d. – 27 a to cross roads Pt. 33-4 thence along road to MAZINGHEM.
- (b) Enemy is reported to have outpost positions pushed forward from this line and is believed to be holding the line in strength.
2. British line [r]uns LIGNY-RELY, thence along RELY-FONTES Road as before
"X" Imperial 1. Brigade occupy Brigade frontage from N. 28 d.0.8. to N. 34 a.4.7. with the 7th 1. Battalion in the line.
3. The 43rd Battery C.F.A. will fire at a slow rate of fire on the enemy's front line and approaches one hour prior to the attack, and thereafter [thereafter] will be governed by the situation

2.

INTENTION

- (a) The 7th C.I.B. will attack enemy line from N.27.a.95.95. (road on right flank exclusive) to N.26.d.6.2.
- (b) The 42nd Battalion attacking on the right, the R.C.R. on the left
- (c) The dividing line between Battalions being junction of five roads in N.26.b – road from N. 26.b.3. to N. 27.d.8.0. inclusive to the left Battalion.
- (d) The 43rd. Cdn. Battalion will be on the right flank.
- (e) 7th T.M. Battery will detail 4d Stokes Guns with crews to attacking Battalions.
- (f) The Battalion will attack in conformity with the above Orders, passing through our present front line at _____ am. tomorrow and advancing to the attack.

3.

DISTRIBUTION

- (a) The Battalion will attack with two companies on a two platoon front, each with two platoons in close support.
A. Company on the right B. Company on the left
C. and D. Companies will be in reserve and move 300 yards in the rear of attacking companies.
- (b) Attacking Companies will move in artillery formation as far forward as tactical situation will permit.
Reserve Companies will be in artillery formation

- (c) 1 Stokes Gun will be attached to each of the attacking Companies, 2 will remain in reserve with C. Company.

4.

ASSEMBLY POINT The Battalion will move from ST.HILAIRE in order to attack at am. and assembly immediately in rear of present front line, from N.28 D.0.8. to N.28 d.1.2.

5

ROUTE Via.-

6.

EQUIPMENT Battle Order – Steel helmets worn on back.

7.

RATIONS L Filled water bottles will be carried.

P.T.O.

8.

WATCHES Watches will be synchronized at Battalion H.Q. at 8 am. 11-5-18.

9.

R.A.P. R.A.P. near junction of cross roads N.29 c.2.7.

10.

TRANSPORT

11.

REPORTS until Battalion H.Q. – Junction of cross roads N.28 d.9.8. am. then with C. Company.

J.D. Macleod,
Captain/Adjutant.

SECRET

PRACTICE OF OPERATION ORDER -43.

by

Lieut.Col.B McLennan. D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion. R.H.C.

Monday May. 13th. 18.

1

INFORMATION. Our Patrols report enemy are in force in Sunken Road N.27.b.

2

INTENTION (a) The Battalion will attack with 2 Companies on a two

Platoon front position from N.27.b.9.8. to N.27.b.9.8. to N.27.d.9.85.

(b) 1 Battery 3rd. Div.M.G. Coy. (8 Guns) are attached .

(c) 1 Section 7th.T.M. Battery (4 Guns) are attached.

(d) R.C.R. on right – 5th.C.M.R. on left.

3

TIME

4

DISTRIBUTION

(a) "A" Company on right

"D" Company on left

"B" & "C" in reserve, move about 300 yds in rear of attacking Companies.

(b) Machine Guns – 2 for attacking Companies

4 in reserve with C Company

5

BATTN.H. Q.

With C Company.

J. D. MacLeod.

Captain. Adjt.

Sheet 2.

"B" Coy., less one platoon will be in Support [*Support*]

"A" Coy., less one platoon, will be in Reserve.

1 Platoon from "B" Coy., will be attached to "C" Coy., and

1 Platoon from "A" Coy., will be attached to "D" Coy., for

mopping up strong points in C.23. a & b.

O.C. "C" Coy., will detail 1 Platoon to bring enfilade fire on ??od in C.17.c. using his 2 Divisional M.G's immediately behind his platoon to assist in this operation.

When the final objective has been reached, it will be held by the troops capturing it disposed in depth. The R.C.R. , will move into Support along line on road C.10.a.8.9. – C.16.a.55. 65. The 42nd Battalion will remain in Brigade Reserve along line of the Intermediate Objective.

5. ARTILLERY. Action of Artillery will be notified later.
6. MACHINE GUNS. 1 Battery of Machine Guns will be attached to the Battalion and distributed as follows :-
- 2 Guns to each of the attacking Coys.
2 Guns for the Support Coy.
2 Guns in Reserve.
7. CONTACT PATROL. Will fly at Zero Plus 2 hours and Zero plus 2½ hours
Ground flares will be shown on call from aeroplane.
8. LIGHT SIGNALS. White Very Lights :- Intermediate Objective gained.
Green Very Lights :- Final Objective gained.
Red Very Lights :- Artillery Support required.
S.O.S.
To be notified later.
9. ZERO HOUR. Will be at 11.30 a.m.
10. BN. HQ. To be notified later.

J. D. MACLEOD.
CAPTN. ADJUTANT.

P.T.O.

- Copy No. 1. Hq. 7th C.I.Bde.
2 P.P.C.L.I.
3. R.C.R.
4. C.O.
5. 2 i/c.
6. Adjt.
7. O. C. A. COY.
8. O. C. B. "
9. O. C. C. "
10. O. C. D. "
11. I.O.
12. L.G.O.
13. S.O.
14. Q.M.
15. T.O.
16. B.S.M.
17. 18. 19. WAR DIARY.
20. File.

SECRET.

PRACTICE.
OPERATION ORDER NO. 5.
by
Lieut.Col.B.M.cLennan. D.S.O.
Cmdg., 42nd Canadian Battn.
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Copy No.....

Ref Map.
Sheet 36.B.N. W.
1/20,000

MAY 13th 1918.

1. INFORMATION.

In accordance with instructions already issued, the 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., will attack the enemy's positions in the LOZINGHEM Sector on the 1st inst., passing through the Brigade at present holding the Sector :-

(a)

"?" Brigade is attacking on the Right :-

"?" Brigade is attacking on the Left.

(b)

BOUNDARIES OF ATTACK.

Right Brigade Boundary :- From enemy front line at C. 18.d.6.0. – along the LOZINGHEM-BURBURE ROAD inclusive – C.11.d.2.7. – C.11.c.7.6. – thence in a straight line to C.3.a.9.7.

Left Brigade Boundary :- From C.23.d.9.9. – in a Straight Line to C.9.a.1.7

Boundary Between Battalions :- A straight line from C. 24.d.8.7. to C.3.c.0.65.

(c)

OBJECTIVES.

Intermediate Objective – The BLUE LINE – The North Western side of the road running from C.11.d.1.7. to C. 16.d.70.75.

Final Objective – The GREEN LINE – The Western side Of BURBURE-HAIMBERT road from C.3.a.9. to C.9.a.1.7

(d)

FORMATION FOR THE ATTACK

(a) First Phase. The R.C.R. on the Right and 42nd Bn., on the Left will assault and capture the enemy's position up to and including the Intermediate Objective(BLUE LINE).

(b) Second Phase. The P.P.C.L.I. on the Right and the 49th on the Left will pass through the troops engaged in the first phase when the [they] have completed the capture of the Intermediate Objective, and assault and capture the enemy's position up to and including the final objective(GREEN LINE).

2. INTENTION.

The 42nd Cdn.Bn., will attack, capture, and consolidate the enemy's position up to and including Intermediate Objective.

3. BOUNDARIES

Right Bn. Boundary. – A straight line from C.24.d.8.7

OF ATTACK.

to C.17.a.65.40.

Left Battalion Boundary. From C.23.d.9.9. in a straight line to C.9.a.1.7.

4.DISPOSITIONS.

"C" Coy., will attack on right on a 1 Plat. frontage with ? Plat. distributed in depth.

"B" Coy., will attack on left xxxx on 2 Plat. frontage with 2 Platoons in Support.

SECRET.

ARTILLERY INSTRUCTIONS.

IN CONNECTION WITH O.O. NO. 5 (PRACTICE) May 13th 18.

- (x) 3rd Canadian Divisional Artillery (less three sections of 18 pndrs., and one section of 4.5" Hows.) will co-operate by laying down creeping and standing barrage and smoke screens.

- (a) Creeping barrage will open at ZERO at a line from C.23.b.6.1 to C.24.b.4.8 where it will remain for 3 minutes.

Barrage will then lift for at intervals of 100 yards for 3 minutes until it reaches the line C.17.a.5.0 – C.18.a.3.4 where it remains for 7 minutes.

At ZERO plus 3? It again lifts at Interval s of 100 yards for 3 minutes until it reaches line C.16.b.4.1 – C.17.d.4.5 where it will remain for 13 minutes.

- (b) The standing barrage will be as follows:-

Hour – 4.5" Hows. and one battery of 18 pndrs. will lay down an enfilade barrage on the village of LOZINGHEM from C.18.d.5.6 – C.18.a.3.0 from ZERO to ZERO plus 27 when the 18 pndrs. will take their place in the creeping barrage, and the 4.5" Hows. will fore [*fire*] on enemy S.Ps., at C.17.a.3.0 – C.17.a.3.7 – C.16.b.1.7 – C.11.a.9.2.

One 4.5" How. will engage dugouts at C.23.b.3.7 from ZERO till the creeping barrage comes within 100 yards of it, when it will lift to the wood in C.17.c.3.5.

The remaining five 4.5" Hows. will fire from ZERO on enemy S.Ps. at C.17.a.5.3 – C.17.c.5.6 – C.17.d.1.9 – C.17.b.5.2 and on the road at C.17.c.3.5 until the creeping barrage comes within 100 yards of them when they will lift to enemy S.Ps. within their Brigade zones beyond the second objectives.

When the creeping barrage comes within 100 yards of S.Ps. beyond second objective,

4.5" Hows. will lift and will form a protective barrage 100 yards in front of the 18 pndr. protective barrage on second objective until ZERO plus 65.

- (c) The Howitzers and 18 pndrs. detailed to place a standing barrage on LOZINGHEM will fire 50% smoke so as to screen the advancing infantry.

The placing of the smoke screen will be governed by the wind, but must not be outside the boundaries as shown on attached tracing for the standing barrage.

- (d) 4.5" Hows. detailed to fire on road in C.17.a.3.5 will fire 50% smoke.

NOTE. Creeping barrages and standing barrages on LOZINGHEM will be represented by men waving signal flares.

RATE OF FIRE. ZERO to ZERO plus 65. 18 pndrs. 2 rds.per gun per minute. 4.5" Hows. one round per gun per minute.

The action of the Special Battery 3rd Canadian- Div.

Artillery consisting of six 18 pndr., and 2-4.5" Hows. will be as follows:-

- (a) This battery will not take part in the First Phase unless specially called upon by G.O.C. 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde., but will move up behind the attacking infantry to position from which it will be able to support the Second Phase of the attack.
- (b) When suitable positions are reached, the battery will engage the line of the final objective, but will be prepared at all times to engage targets of opportunity or to support the Infantry then called upon by Battalion Commanders.
- (c) Closest touch must be maintained with the advance of the Infantry through liaison officers, and O.Ps [*Observation Posts*]., so as to ensure that the advance is not delayed by our artillery fire.

SECRET

PRACTICE OPERATION ORDER No.4

Copy No. _____

by

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Monday May 13th 1918.

1.

INFORMATION Patrols report enemy occupy in strength, Sunken Road N.27.a. and N. 26.d.

2.

INTENTION Battalion will attack position from N. 27 a.8.7. to N. 26.d.7.3. with 3 Companies, less 1 platoon.
One Company in Reserve.

3.

TIME

4.

DISTRIBUTION (a) "A" Company on right with flank resting on N. 28 a.

- 8.7. for 300 yards S.W.
 "B" Company Centre – 200 yards frontage
 "C" Company, less 1 platoon – 300 yards frontage –
 1 flank to be on N.26 d.7.3.
 1 Platoon "C" Company will garrison present line.
 "B" Company in reserve will move about 300 yards in
 rear of attacking Companies.
 (b) Machine Guns – 2 Guns will be attached to each of
 the attacking Companies.
 (c) T.Ms. – 2 T.Ms. attached to "D" (Centre Coy)
 2 with Reserve Company.

5.
Batt. H.Q.

With "B" (Reserve Company)

J.D.MacLeod,
 Capt./Adjt.

Map 42nd BN. R.H.C.
14TH MAY 1918.

Sat, Jun 1, 1918

The month began with the battalion still in rest billets at ST. HILAIRE. The Brigade Rifle Meet on Auchy au Bois ranges was held, lasting all morning and part of the afternoon. Each battalion had 15 entries in the individual matches and 10 in the aggregate. In the individual matches the battalion had prizewinners placed as follows:- Competition I 5th place, Competition II. 2nd, 3rd and 5th places, Competition III. 2nd place and 3 firers in 4th place, Competition IV. 1st and 6th places, and 4 firers in 8th place. In the aggregate the battalion team got 2nd place, P.P.C.L.I. team being first and R.C.R., 49th and Brigade Headquarters, 3rd, 4th and 5th respectively.

In the officers team match the battalion got 3rd place, P.P.C.L.I. and 49th being 1st and 2nd, R.C.R. and Brigade Headquarters being 4th and 5th respectively.

Sun, Jun 2, 1918

The Brigade Sniping Competition was held at the 1st Army S.O.S. School Ranges, LINGHEM. The battalion sniping section did excellent work and won the aggregate with 8 points, 49th 2nd 7 points, R.C.R. 3rd 6½ points P.P.C.L.I. 4th 1½ points.

Mon., Jun 3, 1918

The battalion took part 3rd Canadian Divisional Tactical Scheme in DOMY area. Embussing at 7. 30 a.m. the battalion debussed near BASSE BOULONGNE. Many valuable lessons were learnt as a result of the manoeuvres. The battalion returned by bus at the end of the day.

Tue., Jun 4, 1918

Lieut. H.A.Sewell was sent to hospital, suffering from a wrenched knee, which he had received while playing baseball.

Wed., Jun 5, 1918

Lieut. G.L.Ogilvie, who had been acting as Orderly Officer to G.O.C. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the absence of Lieut. Meikle, returned to the battalion.

Thu., Jun 6, 1918

Announcement was made in Divisional Routine Orders of the award among the Birthday Honors, of the Military Cross to Capt. (A/Major) C.B.Topp, commanding "B" Company of the battalion. All Officers and other ranks were greatly pleased at this reward, which the recipient had earned by his gallantry and devotion to duty, since he joined the battalion in March 1916, as a Lieutenant.

Fri., Jun 7, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Jun 8, 1918

Lieut. J.A.P. Haydon, who had been attached to the battalion, was taken on strength. The announcement appeared in Orders, of the award among the Birthday Honors of the Distinguished Conduct Medal to 479055 [419055?] R.S.M. James Page, the Battalion Sergeant Major, who had earned this decoration by his devotion to duty at all stages of his connection with the battalion. He came to France with the battalion as a private and earned his promotion step by step to his present rank.

Sun, Jun 9, 1918

A Brigade Church Parade was held, followed by a presentation of medal ribbons by the G.O.C. 3rd Canadian Division, to other ranks of the Brigade who had not had them presented previously. 24 other ranks of the battalion received ribbons on this occasion, 2 receiving 2 ribbons, the distribution being 2 D.C.Ms. 1 Belgian Croix de Guerre and 23 M.Ms. On this date also, Field Practices were carried out by 2 Companies at the AUCHY AU BOIS ranges.

Mon., Jun 10, 1918

The battalion took part in a 3rd Canadian Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY area, embussing at 8. 30 a.m. and debussing near BONCOURT. After the manoeuvres the battalion returned by bus to ST. HILAIRE.

Tue., Jun 11, 1918

Lieut. G. R. Marani reported to the battalion, was taken on strength and posted to "B" Company.

Wed., Jun 12, 1918

Lieut. H.M. Scott M. C. proceeded on English Leave.

Wed., Jun 12 & Thu., Jun 13, 1918

The battalion carried out a practice night operation scheme in the LINGHEM area. "A" Company acted as enemy outpost line, "B" Company as outpost line and C and D attacked through the latter. The lesson learnt from this scheme was the value of rapid progress with a definite plan, as owing to lack of both these features the operations were drawn out many hours after they should have been concluded, and the enemy outpost line was not taken.

Thu., Jun 13, 1918

The battalion practised an attack with Tanks of the 7th Tank battalion, near ENGUINEGATTES. Two companies practised the attack at a time. Many useful lessons were learnt, and the men enjoyed riding back to the jumping off line on the Tanks. The battalion moved to and from ENGUINEGATTES on busses.

The Commanding Officer proceeded on special leave to England.

Lieut. A.O. Budd reported to the battalion and was posted to "D" Company.

Fri., Jun 14, 1918

Capt. A.G. Law the battalion Paymaster, left the battalion to proceed to England, as under the new arrangement made by the Paymaster General, the appointment of battalion paymaster had been abolished and two Brigade paymasters substituted. Much regret was felt by all at Capt. Law's departure, as he had been a general favourite and an excellent paymaster.

Sat, Jun 15, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Sun, Jun 16, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Jun 17, 1918

The battalion took part in a 3rd Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY area. This scheme was particularly interesting by reason of the use of tanks and observation balloons by the enemy and contact planes on both sides, and also by the fact that the advance was much more rapid than in any of the previous manoeuvres, and a great extent of ground was covered by the Division which advanced from SERNY to HILL 179, a distance of 5 miles as the crow flies. The

battalion, operating on the left flank of the Division, was able to turn the enemy's right flank on HILL 179 (the final objective) by a clever manoeuvre carried out by 3 platoons of "A" Company and 1 of "B" Company, under Lieut. H.B. Trout.

Tue., Jun 18, 1918

[There is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Jun 19, 1918

The battalion carried out night operations in the LINGHEM area, on the same lines as those carried out on the night of the 12/13th June. The lessons of the previous night operations had been well learnt. The attack was carried out with dash and on a well organised plan, and the enemy's line captured.

Thu., Jun 20, 1918

The results of the Dumbell Competition were announced. The award for the best platoon in the battalion was made to Lieut. MACASKILL'S platoon, No. 5 of "B" Company. The award for the 4 best shots in the battalion was made to 132794 Pte. HOUNSELL, R.A. "C" Co. 1030805 Pte. ROBERTS, S. "D" Co. 136045 Sgt. HAMMOND, E.A. "B" Co. and 408169 Pte. MORRIS T. Scout Section.

Fri., Jun 21, 1918

Field Practices, Range Practices, Preliminary Musketry, Judging Distance, Lewis Gun Practices and Lewis Gun Drill were carried on all day from 7 a.m. to 7 p.m. on AUCHY AU BOIS ranges, by all companies.

Sat, Jun 22, 1918

The announcement appeared in orders of the award of the Meritorious Service Medal to 418809 Cpl. (A/Sgt) W.G. Gallow and 127628 L/Cpl. (A/Cpl) G.E. [G.F.] Flack. A/Sgt. Gallow had been Lewis Gun Sergeant with the battalion until invalided to England in the fall of 1917. He had done excellent service in that capacity and also as a platoon N.C.O. A/Cpl. Flack had done excellent service with the battalion as a runner, and had twice been recommended for decoration for his work in that capacity, particularly in the attack on Vimy Ridge. Later as Orderly Room Corporal he had shown devotion of duty, both in and out of the line.

Sun, Jun 23, 1918

The 3rd Canadian Divisional Sports were held in Linghem, lasting all day, and were a great success. The battalions main entry was the Association Football Team, which played in the Divisional Finals, but was unfortunately beaten in overtime play by the 3rd Canadian Machine Gun Battalion, Score 1-0.

Mon., Jun 24, 1918

At about 2 a.m. advice was received from Brigade that the 3rd Canadian Division would relieve the 2nd Canadian Division in the line just south of Arras on the night 25/26th, that advance parties would move off by buss at 7 a.m. 24th, and that the battalion would be prepared to move at any time on the 24th. The advance party left as arranged and everything was prepared for a move.

Tue., Jun 25, 1918

The Transport left by road, marching to ST.MICHEL EN TERNOISE near ST. POL, where it staged. The battalion less transport moved by Route March 1 leaving ST.HILAIRE at 6 p.m. arriving at AIRE at 8 p.m. and entraining at 9 p.m. Lewis Guns and magazines were carried in the train.

Tue., Jun 25 & Wed., Jun 26, 1918

The battalion moved by train from AIRE to AUBIGNY where it detrained at 2.30 a.m. on June 26th. The battalion then marched to LATTRE ST. QUENTIN where it went into billets.

Thu., Jun 27, 1918

The battalion left LATTRE ST. QUENTIN at 8 a.m. and marched by road to BELLACOURT, which it reached about 11 a.m., the transport leaving the column en route and proceeding to MONCHIET. The battalion took over the billets of the 19th Canadian battalion at BELLACOURT and the lines of the same battalion at MONCHIET.

Fri., Jun 28, 1918

Lieut. H.B. Trout was sent to hospital, sick.

Fri., Jun 28 & Sat, Jun 29, 1918

On the night of the 28/29th, the battalion relieved the 27th Canadian battalion in Support, in the NEUVILLE VITASSE sector. The relief was completed without casualties. On our right the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade, left the 49th Canadian Battalion E.R., right front line the R.C.R. left front line the P.P.C.L.I. The Brigade was on the extreme left flank of the 3rd Army.

A battalion Details camp was organized at BEAUMETZ under Brigade authority, at which were left 3 officers and 100 other ranks. Of the latter, approximately 60 were sick who were suffering from the epidemic of influenza, which had been prevalent throughout the country and in England for a fortnight. This malady although widespread, was fortunately of short duration.

Sun, Jun 30, 1918

The month ended with the battalion still in the line in Support.

Bartlett McLennan

.....Lieut. Col.
Comdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET 21 "A" OPERATION ORDER NO. 189
by
Lieut.Col.B.McLennan. D.S.O.
Cmndg., 42nd Canadian Battn. R.H.C.

Ref.map HAZEBROUCK 5a 1/100,000 SUNDAY JUNE 2 ND 18.

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Cdn.Inf.Bde.,will take part in 3rd Cdn. Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY Area to-morrow 3rd inst.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Cdn.Battalion R.H.C. will move by 'bus from ST.HILAIRE to the BOMY Area to-morrow morning 3rd June.
The Battalion will debus at Cross Roads immediately south of first E in BASSE-BOULOGNE.
3. DEBUSSING POINT & TIME. The Battalion will fall in on the VICHY au BOIS-ST.HILAIRE Road with head of column 100 yards S.W. of "A" Coys parade ground at 7.20 a.m.
4. ORDER OF EMBUSSING. Will be as follows:-
Headquarters Details
A.B.C.D. COYS.
XXXXXXX
5. XXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Lieut. C.G.Howard will act as embussing Officer and
Lieut. A.E.Fleming as debussing Officer.
6. S.A.A. No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the 'busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on the return to billets.
7. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in 'busses during manoeuvres.
8. RATIONS. Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make Tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Battalion returns to billets.
9. TRANSPORT. Transport will not move. Officers Horses will be sent out to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by T.O. to be there at 8. 30 a.m.
10. DRESS. Battle Order without steel helmets.
11. MARCHING OUT STATE. Marching Out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6. 45 am to-morrow morning.
12. CONFERENCE. There will be a conference on the ground at the completion of the Operation on the place at which Officers

Call is sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

J. D. MACLEOD.

Copies to:-	Hq. 7th C.I. Bde.	O.C.A.B.C.D. [C]OYS.	CAPT. ADJUTANT.
	C.O.	T.O.	
	2 i/c.	Q.M.	
	Adj. t.	B. S.M.	
	I.O.	FILE.	
	B.O.	WAR DIARY(3).	
	L. G.O.		
	S.O.		

21

SECRET

OPERATIONS ORDER No. 190

by

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

Map

[Haz]ebrouck 5-a

1/100,000

1. INTRODUCTION

The 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. Will take place part in 3rd. Cdn. Divisional tactical scheme in the Bomy Area tomorrow 10th inst.

2. INTENTION

The 42nd Cdn. Bn. R.H.C. will move by bus from St Hilaire to the Bomy Area and will return to billets on completion of manoeuvres.

3. DEBUSSING
POINT & TIME

The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS St Hilaire Road with head of column 100 yards S.W. of A. Coy's Parade Ground at 8.20 am.

4. DEBUSSING
POINT

The Battalion will debus at Cross Roads just West of the B in Boncourt and will then rendezvous on the southern edge of the big road just west of Orhen.(?)

Lieut C.G. Howard will act as embussing officer

Lieut. A. Fleming will act as debussing officer.

5. S.A.A.

No live SAA. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live SAA. has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of SAA. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on return to

- billets.
6. LEWIS GUNS Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manoeuvres.
 7. RATIONS Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Bn. returns to billets.
Cooks will go with their Cos. and bring dixies. They will remain with busses.
 8. TRANSPORT Transport will not move. Officers horses will be sent to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by the T.O. to be there by 9. 30 am.
 9. DRESS Battle order with steel helmets.
 10. MARCHING OUT STATES Marching out states will be handed in to the Orderly Room by 7. 45 am. tomorrow morning.
 11. CONFERENCE At the conclusion of the operations a conference will be held on the ground where the officers call is first sounded. All mounted officers will attend.

J. D.MACLEOD,
Capt. Adjutant.

Copies to HQ.7th CIB. C.O. 2 I/c Adjt.
O.C. A.B.C.D. Cos. I.O. B.O. L. G.O. S.O.
T.O. Q.M. B.S.M. War Diary (3)

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.191

COPY NO. 15

by

Map Ref/
Hazebrouck 5.a.
1/100,000

Lieut.Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

WEDNESDAY, JUNE 12TH, 1918

1.

INFORMATION

The 42nd. Cdn. Bn.R.H.C. will carry out an Attack Scheme in co-operation with the 7th Tank Battalion, near ENGUINEGATTE to-morrow, 13th instant.

2.

INTENTION

The 42nd.Cdn.Bn.R.H.C. will move by Buss from ST.HILAIRE to the cross roads immediately East of the "E" in ENGUINEGATTE, and will return to billets on completion of manoeuvres.

3.

EMBUSSING POINT & TIME

The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY-AU-BOIS – ST.HILAIRE Road, with head of column 100 yards South-West of A Company's Parade Ground, at 8.20 am.

Lieut. A. B. Proven will act as Embussing Officer.

4.

DEBUSSING
POINT

The Battalion will debuss at cross roads immediately East of the third "E" in ENGUINEGATTE.

Lieut. A. Fleming will act as Debussing Officer.

5.

S.A.A.

No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. Q.M. will arrange that bus carries two unbroken boxes of SAA which will be returned to stores on return to billets.

6.

LEWIS

Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manoeuvres.

GUNS

7.

RATIONS & DIXIES will not be carried.

8.

TRANSPORT will not move.

9.

DRESS

Battle Order with Steel Helmets.

10.

MARCHING

Marching Out States will be handed in to Orderly Room by 7.45 am. to-morrow.

OUT STATE

11.

EMBUSSING

On the completion of the manoeuvres the Battalion will embuss at cross roads immediately East of the third "E" in ENGUINEGATTE.

POINT FOR

RETURN

Lieut. A. B. Proven will act as Embussing Officer.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

COPY NO.

- 1 to H.q. 7th C.I. Bde.
- 2 C.O.
- 3 2 i/c
- 4.5.6.7. to O.Cs. A.B.C.D. Coys.
- 8. I.O.
- 9. B.O.
- 10. L.G. O.

- 11. to S.O.
- 12. T.O.
- 13 Q.M.
- 14 BSM.
- 15.16.17. War Diary
- 18. File.

19. Adjutant

21

SECRET

REFC.MAP

HAZEBROOK

OPERATION ORDER 191

BY

MAJOR R.L.H. EWING D.S.O. M.C.

[HAZEBROUCK].5.a.

1/100,000

CMDG 42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION.R.H.C.

SUNDAY JUNE 16th.

1. INFORMATION The 7th.Can.Inf.Brigade will take part in 3rd. Canadian Divisional tactical scheme (No.7.) in the BOMY Area tomorrow 17th. inst.
2. INTENTION The 42nd.Can.Bn.will move by bus from St HILAIRE to SERNY and will return to Billets on completion of manoeuvres.
3. EMBUSSING
POINT & TIME The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS St HILAIRE Road with head of column 100 yds. S.W. of A Coys. Parade ground at 7.30.a.m.
4. DEBUSSING
POINT The Battalion will debus at SERNY and will then rendezvous on the SERNY FLECHINELLE ROAD at the point where the road crosses LAQUETTE RIVER.
- 5.S.A.A. No live S.A.A. will be carried Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed.
The Q.M. will arrange that each of the busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on return to Billets. XX, XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
carried.Loaded magazines will be
- 6 .LEWIS GUNS Lewis guns will be / left in busses during manoeuvres.
- 7 .RATIONS Haversack rations will be carried.Sufficient time will be available to make tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Bn returns to Billets.
Cooks will go with their Coys . and bring dixies , they will remain with busses.
- 8 . TRANSPORT Transport will not move.Officers horses will be sent to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by the T.O. to be there at ?xE 8. 30.a.m.
- 9 .DRESS Battle order without stell helmets.
- 10 MARCHING
OUT STATES Marching out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6.45.a.m. tomorrow.
- 11 .CONFERENCE At the conclusion of the operations a conference will be held on the ground where the Officers

call is first sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

		J.D.MACLEOD.
		Captain Adjutant.
Copies To	7th. C.I.B. C.O. ADJT.	
	O.C.A.B.C.D.COYS.	
	I.O. L.G.O. S.O. T.O.	
	Q.M. R.S.M. FILE	
	WAR DIARY (3)	

SECRET

	OPERATION ORDER NO.192 by	
	Major R.L.H. Ewing.DSO.MC.	COPY NO.
Ref.Maps.	Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn.RHC.	
Hazebrouck 5.a.	1/100,000	
Lens 11	do	JUNE 25TH 1918
XX		
1	The 7th C.I.Bde. (dismounted portion) will move from	
INFORMATION	its present billets to the HABERCQ - AVESNES les COMTES	
	Area by road and rail on the night-25th/26th instant.	
	Entraining at AIRE	
	Detraining at AUBIGNY	
	The 42nd.Cdn.Battalion,R.H.C., The 49th Cdn.Battn.	
	E.R. and the 7th T.M.Battery will move by Train No. 4.	
	from AIRE.	
2		
INTENTION	The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion,R.H.C. will move by Route	
	March from its present billeting Area to AIRE, where	
	it will entrain in No. 4 Train and proceed by rail to	
	AUBIGNY where it will detrain <i>and</i> proceed by Route March	
	to the HABERCQ-AVESNES LES COMTES Area.	
3.		
PARADE	The Battalion will fall in in mass, facing the road, on	
	A Coy's Parade Ground at 6.45 pm.	
	Coy. and H.Q. markers will report to the B.S.M. on	
	the Parade Ground at 5.35 pm.	
4		
DRESS	Heavy Marching Order – Steel Helmets will be carried	
	on the packs.	
5.		
TIME	The Battalion will move off at 6. pm.	
6.		
ORDER OF MARCH	Pipe Band – Headquarters – A – B – C – D Coys.	
7.		

LEWIS GUNS

Lewis Guns and 20 discs per gun will be carried by the Lewis Gun Crews on the train.

8.

PICQUET

A picquet consisting of Lt. Walter Molson and 5 O.R. per Company [*Company*] will be detailed. O.R. detailed will report to Lt. Molson at head of column when the Battalion reaches [*reaches*] the station at AIRE.

8.

Picquet will report to Bde. Entraining Staff Officer at the Station immediately on arrival of the Battalion. They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed its detraining, Picquet will be posted under instructions of Bde. Entraining Staff Officer to prevent men wandering away and leaving the train after entrainment. At intermediate stations where train stops picquet will be used to prevent men leaving the train except to ease themselves

9.

ENTRAINING &
DETRAINING
Officer

Major S. J. Mathewson, MC. will act as Bn. Entraining Officer at AIRE and Bn. Detraining Officer at AUBIGNY.
1 N.C.O. and 1 O.R. per Company & H.Q. and 1 Bn. runner will report to him at R.T.O'S Office AIRE at 7.30 pm.

P.T.O.

10

MARCHING
OUT STATES

Marching Out States in the form already prescribed will reach Orderly Room by 8. pm.

11

BILLETS

Billets will be clear of personnel. clean and ready for inspection by 8. pm.

12

REPORTS

Arrival in billets in the HAVERCQAVESNES les COMTES Area will be reported to Bn. H.Q. by Runner.

13

ACKNOWLEDGE

C. G. HEWARD

Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

For Captain/Adjt.

COPIES TO /	1	H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
	2	O.C. A Coy
	3	B
	4	C
	5	D
	6	M.O.
	7	R.S.M.
	8.9.10	War Diary

21

	Operation Order No. 193	SECRET
	by Major R.L.H.Ewing. DSO. MC.	
Reference Maps	Cmdg 42nd Canadian Battalion. R.H.C.	Copy No
		June 26th 1918.
Lens 11 – 1/100000		
Sheet 51b		
Sheet 51c	1/40000	

1. INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 6th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the Neuville Vitasse Section on the night 28th/29th June 1918, staging at Bellacourt.

- 2 INTENTION The Battalion will march from Lettre St. Quentin to Bellacourt on the 27th June 1918. 100 yards distance between companies will be maintained.

- 3 DRESS Battle Order – Steel helmets on the back.

4. Route Via Wanquetin-Simencourt-Baumetz.

- 5 TIME The Battalion will fall in on the main road in column of route. the head of the column opposite the Orderly Room ready to move off by xxxxxxxx 7.00 am.

- 6 ADVANCE TRANSPORT Transport will move in rear of column.

- 7 ADVANCE PARTY An advance party consisting of Q.M. Sgt. and storemen will report to Capt. Beveridge at Q.M. Stores at 7.30 am.

- 8 KITCHENS Teams will call for kitchens at 7.30 am.

- 9 OFFICERS KITS Officers kits mess boxes etc. will be stacked
MESS BOXES etc. outside Q.M. Stores at 7.15 am.

- 10 MENS PACKS Mens packs will be stacked outside Q.M.

stores at 7.am. 2 men per Company
will be detailed to act as a guard. Lieut.
Proven will be in charge of lorries.

11 MARCHING OUT Marching out states will reach Orderly Room
at 7.15 am.

Lieut. CG. Heward
Asst Adjt.

Copies to 7th C.I.B.
C.O.
O.C.A.B.C.D. Cos.
Q.M. T.O. M.O. S.O.
R.S.M. War Diary (3)
File 1

21

SECRET OPERATION ORDER No.194 by
Major R.L.H.Ewing, DSO.M.C.
Cmdg.42nd Canadian Battalion. RHC.

Ref.Map

Sheet 51.a.S.E. 1/40,000

Sheet 51.b.S.W. 1/40,000 Thursday 27th June 1918.

1. INFORMATION The 7th C.I.B. will relieve the 6th C.I.B.
in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Section on the night
of the 28th/29th June 1918.
- 2 INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the
27th (City of Winnipeg) Bn. in right support.
Companies of the 42nd Cdn. Bn. will
relieve corresponding Cos. Of the 27th Bn.
- 3 ORDER OF
MARCH A Co. B Co. H.Q. Details C. Coy. D Co.,
A Company will move off at ? pm. other Cos.
will follow at intervals of five minutes.
50 yards will be maintained between platoons.
- 4 ROUTE Route via BRETENCOURT-WAILLY.
- 5 LEWIS GUN
Limbers Company Lewis Gun limbers will leave BELLACOURT
at 48.30 pm. and will proceed to the bend of
road in WAILLY at R.?3.?6. where limbers will

be unloaded.

Battalion Lewis Gun Officer and No.1s and 2s of the Lewis Gun crews will accompany limbers and will have the guns and discs ready to be picked up by the crews ?? the Cos. pans.

6 GUIDES

Guides as per arrangements between Battalions concerned. They will report to Lieut. A.B. Proven at the bend in the road in WAILLY at R.23.?.?.? at 9.30 am.

7 ADVANCE
PARTIES

Advance parties as already detailed

8 OFFICERS
PACKS,MESS
BOXES etc.

- (a) Company Officers bed rolls, mens packs, and other baggage for Q.M. Stores will be piled at either H.Q. Mess or Orderly Room at 1 pm.
- (b) Officers Trench kits, mess boxes etc. will be put on the Company L.G. limbers by 7.30 pm. After Lewis Guns are unloaded limbers will take the kits to Battalion H.Q.
- (c) Any further baggage for Q.M. stores will be properly labelled and piled on the square by 7.30 pm. R.S.M. will arrange for a guard.

9 RATIONS

Rations will be carried in on the men.

10. WATER

120 filled water tins will be transported by limber to Company and Battalion dumps. Filled water cars will also be sent up. Cos. will make their own arrangements for guards.

11 TRENCH STORES

Copies of receipts given for maps, photographs, trench stores etc. will be forwarded to Bn.H.Q. on completion of relief.

P.T.O.

Sheet No.2

12 TRENCH STATES
etc

Trench strength states, Distribution states and sketches showing dispositions will be handed in to the Battalion Orderly Room by 8 am 29th inst.

35 RELIEF

Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion H.Q. by using code phrase "Your OO 194 received at"

14 Bn.H.Q.

On completion of relief Bn.H.Q. will be in
sunken road at M.8.c.2.1.

J.D.Macleod,
Capt. Adjt.

Copies to 7th C.I.Bde.
27th C. of W. Bn.
49th Cdn. Bn. E.R.
C.O.
O.C. Cos.
Q.M. T.O. I.O. M.O. L.G.O.
R.S.M. War Diary (3)
File 1

Mon., Jul 1, 1918

The month opened with the Battalion still in support in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector. During this tour nearly all the working parties were under Battalion direction and consisted of salvaging. A large number of stakes and rolls of wire being salvaged. The weather was good; the men's quarters good, and the enemy's attitude quiet.

Tue., Jul 2, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Wed., Jul 3, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Thu., Jul 4, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Fri., Jul 5, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Sat, Jul 6 & Sun, Jul 7, 1918

On the night July 6/7th the Brigade was relieved in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the Battalion being relieved in the Right Support by the 52nd. Canadian Battalion. Upon relief the Battalion moved into billets at BELLACOURT, the Brigade being in Divisional Reserve.

7th Lieut.Col. B. McLennan, DSO. proceeded on duty in command of the 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade replacing temporarily Brig. General H.M. Dyer, C.M.G. , D.S.O., who had proceeded to take temporary command of the Division in the absence of the G.O.C. Division on leave. Major R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC assumed command of the Battalion in the absence of Lieut. Col. McLennan

The Battalion despatched the first detachment of O.R., consisting of eight in all, to the 3rd. Army Rest Camp.

During the tour in Divisional Reserve the Battalion carried on with training of specialists, refitting and re-equipping but all personnel except a few engaged in specialist training were employed in daily working parties digging buried cable, and this fact interfered to a large extent with training and smartening up which are so necessary after a tour in the line.

During this tour many baseball and lacrosse games were played between platoons and Companies on the excellent ground available for the purpose near Chateau at BELLACOURT.

During this tour the influenza which had been epidemic in the Battalion began to disappear.

Mon., Jul 8, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Tue., Jul 9, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Wed., Jul 10, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Thu., Jul 11, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Fri., Jul 12, 1918

An opportunity was given to the Battalions of the Division to attach one Officer and four N.C.Os. per Battalion to the Battalions of the Guards Division which formed part of the same Corps (VI Corps). Capt. E. C. Evans "B" Coy., 145378 [145373] CSM. Lush, J. "B" Coy., 418784 CSM. Davies, J.M. "D" Coy., 193245 (?) L/Sgt. Little, C.D. "A" Coy., and 418620 Sgt. Savage, C.L. "C" Coy. proceeded to report to the 2nd. Battalion Grenadier Guards for attachment at the Battalion Details Camp at ??LL?IMONT.

Sat, Jul 13, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Sun, Jul 14 & Mon., Jul 15, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the MERCATEL Sector. The Battalion relieved the 1st. C.M.Rs. in the Right Front Line:

A Coy. – Front Line B Coy. – Support C Coy. – Right Reserve D Coy. – Left Reserve.

On our right flank were the 3rd. Guards Brigade, The 1st. Battalion, Grenadier [*Guards*] – 1st. Battalion, Welsh Guards and the 2nd. Battalion Scots Guards being in the front line in turn. On our Left flank the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. and in Support The Royal Canadian Regiment. On the of the Brigade was the 9th Canadian Inf. Brigade, the MERCATEL Sector being the Right Brigade Sector of the Divisiuonal Front, and being immediately to the South of the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector where the Battalion had last been in Support.

The most outstanding feature of the Battalion's tour in the line was the nightly patrols. The Battalion frontage was divided into three patrol sectors, i.e., (1) Southern Divl. Boundary to the COJEUL River (2) From the COJEUL River to LONG ALLEY (3) From LONG ALLEY to the SUNKEN ROAD (See Patrol Map attached); each of which was covered by a patrol supplied by one of the Support or Reserve Companies. The Patrols consisted of usually two and always at least one officer, 20 O.R. and a Lewis Gun. Each patrol stayed out on each sector from dusk to dawn. The patrolling each night was most aggressive and careful and twenty-six enemy posts and Machine Guns (list of which is attached) were located by the patrols during the tour.

The most notable of the patrols was th t [*that*] carried out on the night of 17th/18th by Lieut. J.M.Morris. He took with him a patrol of 9 O.R. and a covering party of ten O.R., and proceeded from our front line down SHORT ALLEY to the end of that trench where he posted his covering party. He then moved out of the trench and North-West overland to a point in the wire in front of LONG ALLEY, about fifty yards in rear of enemy post located at S.6.d.2.9. (Sheet 51. c. S.W.) (See Patrol Map attached) This enemy post had been located by Lieut.Morris on a previous patrol. Crawling through the grass to the wire Lieut. Morris himself cut by hand a path through the enemy's wire, and brought his patrol safely through the wire. He then moved to the edge of the trench and when challenged jumped in with the patrol and moved South along LONG ALLEY to-wards enemy post. The post was found to be very heavily manned, there being at least twenty Germans in and about the post. As the patrol approached along the trench they were rushed by the enemy. Lieut. Morris shot and killed the first three of the enemy with his revolver, two others were shot and killed by 441863 Pte. Ducharme, P.W., and three others were killed by other members of the patrol, making a total of eight enemy known to be killed. The patrol then proceeded down the trench to the location of the post where it was found that a cross trench intersected. A small rear party was left to cover rear approaches and small bombing parties bombed their way down right and left of the cross trenches and forward along LONG ALLEY. By this time the alarm in the enemy's lines had been given and the post was being approached by several parties of the enemy who had been summoned from the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road. With Lieut. Morris and 418536 Pte. White, J. acting as a rear covering party, the party numbered off in the trench and when all were found to be present returned overland to SHORT ALLEY and thence to our lines, which they reached without casualties. The greatest credit is due Lieut. Morris and all concerned for this minor operation which was excel-

lently carried out. Only the greatest ill luck in having to kill all the enemy encountered prevented the capture of prisoners

Another feature of the patrolling was the frequent daylight patrols carried out by Capt. L. C. Montgomery, M.C. the Scout Officer and Sergt. Wilson, the Scout Sergt. On three occasions, each time for approximately two hours, they made valuable reconnaissance and located an enemy M.G. Post.

Tue., Jul 16, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Wed., Jul 17, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Thu., Jul 18, 1918

Captain Wm. Hale, MC., Medical Officer of the Battalion, was slightly wounded in the arm and side by a M.G. bullet and was evacuated to hospital. Fortunately the wound was a clean one and in no way serious. The fact of his having become a casualty at this date is a somewhat curious coincidence as at this time the Battalion was receiving telegrams from Canada resulting from an official report which had been received that this officer had died. The mistake having occurred owing to the death a few weeks previous of another Medical Officer of the same name. Captain Baldwin (C.A.M.C.) reported to the Battalion to replace Capt. Hale during the latter's absence.

18/19th. An inter-Company relief took place. C Company relieving A Coy. in the front line. D Company relieved B Coy. in Support. A Company moved into the trenches vacated by C Coy. in Right Reserve, and B Company to those vacated by D Coy. in Left Reserve.

Fri., Jul 19 & Sat, Jul 20, 1918

A raid with artillery barrage was carried out by the Battalion upon the post located and raided by Lieut. Morris. As above mentioned the purpose of the raid was to cut off the post from the South-West, under cover of the barrage and a demonstration to draw the enemy's attention to the North-West. The raiding party consisted [consisted] of two officers and thirty O.R. from D Company and was divided as follows:)

(1) Raiding Party : Lieut. Morris and 20 O.R.

(2) Covering Party : Lieut. Haydon and 10 O.R. with Lewis Gun.

The covering party took up a position at the North end of SHORT ALLEY. The raiding party assembled near the same [same] place and were able to work forward about seventy yards before the barrage opened. The signal to start was the opening of the barrage which fell at 1. am. Raiding party jumped off from SHORT ALLEY upon the opening of the barrage. Everything worked out according to schedule, but upon the raiding party reaching LONG ALLEY it was found that this trench had been badly battered about in the vicinity of the post by our heavies which had been cutting wire, and the post was lightly manned and as soon as our raiding party jumped off the garrison of the post, consisting of three of the enemy, jumped out of the right sap and ran towards the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road and into our barrage. When the raiding

party reached the post the latter was found to be empty. Although the trench and saps were carefully searched for dugouts and identification the only thing obtained was a haversack containing black bread and fresh butter or margarine. The party then returned to-wards our line from the trench when one of the party was found to be missing. Lieut. Morris called for volunteers and with four O.R returned to the raided post where they were met by a counter attacking party and were forced to withdraw. They returned to our lines which were reached at 2. am. When it was found that the raiding party were all accounted for. Only one casualty was suffered, one of the covering party having been killed by rifle fire. Detailed report on the raid is attached hereto.

Sun, Jul 21, 1918

The Divisional Commander approved Lieut. H. B. Trout's wearing the badge of Captain pending the approval of his promotion to this rank appearing in List of A.C. & R. 21/22nd.

It has been expected that the Brigade would be relieved on the 22nd. but this was postponed and accordingly an inter-Company relief was decided upon and took place as follows:

D Coy. relieved C Coy. in the front line – C Company moved to Support Trench vacated by D Coy. – A and B Companies did not change.

Mon., Jul 22, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Tue., Jul 23, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Wed., Jul 24, 1918

Following Honours & Awards were published in part II Daily Orders of the 22nd., received on this date:

Major S. C. Norsworthy, DSO,MC (Bde.Major 8th C.I.Bde.) – Mentioned in Sir. Douglas Haig's Despatch of 7.4.18.

418239 CSM Kennedy,G.W. (DCM,MM.) (deceased) – Mentioned in Sir. Douglas Haig's Despatch of 7.4.18.

Thu., Jul 25, & Fri., Jul 26, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade were relieved in the MERCATEL Sector by the 176th Infantry Brigade, and two Battalions of the 177th Infantry Brigade. The Battalion was relieved in the front line by the 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment. On completion of relief the Companies and Headquarters moved by Route March to MARBLE ARCH where they were to entrain on the Corps Light Railway to WARLUS.

On arrival at MARBLE ARCH at scheduled hour (2 am.) no trains were found and after waiting a considerable time the Companies marched to-wards WAILLY near which town the trains were located. The trains, however, were insufficient to accommodate the whole of the Battalion. About sixty of the Battalion, including eight officers, were left at WAILLY and did not arrive at WARLUS until between 8 ??? 9 am.

26th Most of the day was spent in resting and cleaning up.

Sat, Jul 27, 1918

The day was spent in bathing, deficiency parades, S.B.R. and Rifle inspections, etc.

Sun, Jul 28, 1918

The Battalion was called upon to supply a fatigue party of 450, working strength, for trench digging in WAGONLIEU Area. The party left at 7.30 am. and worked the whole of the morning, returning about 2.20 in the afternoon.

In the afternoon a Baseball Match was played between the Battalion Team and a team representing the Battalion Details of a sister Battalion (The 13th Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C.) these details being situated in WARLUS a short distance from the Battalion quarters. The game was called at the end of the seventh innings on account of darkness – score 7 all.

On the night of the 28th telephone advice was received that the Battalion with the rest of the Brigade would move on the 30th instant, destination unknown.

Capt. L. C. Montgomery, MC., the Battalion Scout Officer, left to proceed to England for return to Canada to complete his Medical studies. He came to France originally with No. 3 Canadian (McGill) General Hospital, in 1915, and came to the Battalion 27th September 1916, as a Lieutenant with Lieut. C. B. Tingling who died of wounds received on April 9th, 1917.

During his career with the Battalion he had been Scout Officer and for a time Second in Command of B Company. He had been wounded three times but fortunately not seriously. He was with the Battalion in the capture of VIMY RIDGE and at PASSCHENDAELE. His second wound was received near the village of La Chaudiere, when he was voluntarily guiding the Hdqrs. of the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R. to their quarters. An H.E. shell fell in the party killing two and wounding four, including Major Weaver, 2nd. in Command of the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., and Lieut. Montgomery himself. In spite of his wounds which were numerous Capt. Montgomery carried Major Weaver to the dressing station and dressed his wounds after which he himself was evacuated a stretcher case.

His services with the Battalion have been of an outstanding character and his departure is regretted by all.

Mon., Jul 29, 1918

A second game of baseball was played with the Battalion Details of the 13th Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C., and resulted in a victory for the latter – Score 3 – 1.

Capt. Wm. Hale, M.C. (C.A.M.C.) Medical Officer of the Battalion, returned from hospital and Captain G. Baldwin ceased to be attached.

Tue., Jul 30, 1918

The Battalion fell in, in Battle Order, at 8.15am. and moved off at 8.30 with Transport. Order of March of the Brigade:- The Royal Canadian Regiment – The 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R. – The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. – and the P.P.C.L.I. Route:- BERNEVILLE – SIMEN-COURT – GOUY-EN-ARTOIS – BAVINCOURT – SAULTY – COUTURELLE – WARLUZEL – SUS-ST.LEGER – IVERGNY. The Battalion arrived at last named place at 4.45 pm.,

a rest of 1½ hours having been made between 12. noon and 1. 30 pm. – The Battalion moved into billets, after a march of seventeen miles

On arrival notification was received that the Lewis Gun Limbers, four Cookers and one Water Cart would entrain at DOULLENS at 1.45 pm. 31st. inst., and proceed to SALEUX (near AMIENS) and that the personnel of the Battalion would proceed by Route March to BOU-QUEMAISON, entraining at 8. pm. 31st., detraining at SALEUX, balance of transport to move by Route March.

At 11.30 pm. notification was received of the cancellation of these orders and

Tue., Jul 30 & Wed., Jul 31, 1918

under the following instructions the Lewis Gun Limbers, Water Cart and Cookers entrained at DOULLENS at 1.45 am. 31st.inst. and the Battalion proceeded by Route March to BOUQUE-MAISON and entrained at 8. am. 31st.instant. In spite of the heat of the day a very good march was made by the Battalion and the entraining took place as arranged, the balance of the Transport remained at IVERGNY to proceed by Route March under Brigade Transport Officer at a time to be notified later. The Limbers, Cookers, etc. and the personnel detrained at SALEUX; personnel then marched to a field a few kilometers outside of SALEUX where they bivouaced for the afternoon. They were met by the Cookers, and Water Cart, tea being issued. In the evening they proceeded to the village of DURY where part of the Battalion went into billets and hutments the remainder bivouaced under the trees. Meanwhile the balance of the transport which had remained at IVERGNY moved off at 1. 10am. Aug. 1st. to proceed to the new area by Route March.

This was the first time the Battalion had been in the Area South of AMIENS, or in fact, any point as far South. The Area was occupied by French Troops, the town of DURY being occupied by H.Q. of the 31st. Corps d' armee. Much interest was displayed by the French troops and civilians in the Highland dress of the Battalion. Officers of the Headquarters were most kind in assisting us to make billeting arrangements in a strange area, and two very pleasant evenings were spent with the Officers of one of the H.Q. Messes in their Villa, part of which they had permitted our Officers to occupy.

Casualties during month:-

	OFFICERS	O.R.	TOTAL
Killed		2	2
Died of Wounds		2	2
Wounded	1	10	11
	1	14	15
=====			

Bartlett McLennan

Lieut. Colonel,

Comdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SKETCH MAP SHOWING
PATROLS, ENEMY POSTS ??.

2

- No. 1 M.G. 26.6 Patrol and observed
- No. 2 M.G. 12.6 Patrol and since observed
- No. 3 M.G. 18.7. Observed and patrol
- No. 4 M.G. 2.7. Patrol and observed.
- No. 5 Suspected post 4.7. patrol.
- No. 6 M.G.E. 18.7. Patrol and observed
- No. 7. M.G.E. 23.7. Patrol and observed
- No. 8. M.G. 15.7. Patrol and observed
- No. 9. Post Raid 20.7
- No.10. Post Raid 20.7
- No.11 T.M. (Suspected) Observed firing
- No.12 M.G. and T.M. 12.7. Patrol and observed
- No.13 M.G. Patrol 23.7.
- No.14 T.M. Observed and patrol 21.7.
- No.15 Suspected O.P. and Company H.Q. observed
- No.16 M.G. observed 21.7.
- No.17 M.G. observed 18.7.
- No.18 T.M. observed 10.7.
- No.19 M.G. Patrol 23.6.
- No.20 M.G. observed 21.7.
- No.21 M.G. observed 21.7.
- No.22 M.G. Patrol 10.7.
- No.23 M.G. patrol 21.7.
- No.24 M.G. patrol 18.7.
- No.25 T.M. patrol and observed.
- No.26 Block in trench 12.7. patrol.

W.D.

3

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
R E P O R T O N R A I D.
Night 19th/20th July 1918.

COVERING PARTY

At 11.20 pm. Lieut. Hayden and 10 O.R. who were to form the covering party for the raid on enemy post at S.6.d.20.80 left our lines at S.6.c.11.10 and proceeded along

SHORT ALLEY. When party had crossed through our wire hostile patrol of approximately 20 were observed travelling N.E. at approximately S.6.c.40.70 but could not be engaged owing to the risk of interfering with the raid itself. Party worked its way to the head of sap and took position at S.6.c. 10.59.

RAIDING PARTY

Lieut. Morris with 20 O.R. then followed up SHORT ALLEY and left S.6.c.15.59 at 12.25 am. and headed for a small SUNKEN TRAIL parallelling trench some 45 yards out, where they lay waiting for zero hour. At zero hour barrage came down and patrol immediately rushed trench which they reached without fire from the enemy. Just as they were jumping into the trench, three of the enemy were observed to get out of right sap and run towards ARRAS-BAUPAUME ROAD and into our barrage. One N.C.O. and 4 O.R. Rushed the left sap and bombed their way up only to find it empty. 1 N.C.O. and 4 O.R. dealt in a similar manner with the right sap which was also found unoccupied. Lieut. Morris and 5 O.R. moved down the sap to block which they found had been completely destroyed by previous days shelling and was also unoccupied. Patrol then moved up the sap as far as the ARRAS-BAUPAUME ROAD without encountering any enemy, but were unable to proceed further owing to our own barrage. At this moment a party of approximately 20 Huns were observed some 200 yards to the north of LONG ALLEY running towards their own wire, apparently a patrol. This party was engaged by rifle fire and was last seen trying to work their way through their own wire and into our barrage. Party then searched the trench and saps carefully for dugouts and identification. The only thing obtained was a haversack containing black bread and fresh butter or margarine. Party then moved from trench towards our lines, when it was discovered that one of party was missing. At 1.30 Lieut. Morris called for volunteers and with 4 O.R. returned to raided post. On entering post they were met by a local counter attack party and were forced to withdraw. The whole of party then returned to our lines which was reached at 2 am. Meanwhile Lieut. Hayden and party remained at Head of SHORT ALLEY and engaged the only machine gun which was seriously interfering with the raiding party with Lewis Gun fire. While doing this he had one man killed by rifle fire, but returned to our lines at 2.20 am. bringing back the body and all equipment, when it was reported to him that the raiding party were all accounted for.

DIVERSION

It had been arranged that as soon as barrage opened two red flares would be fired from our left flank followed

SHEET NO.2

by a discharge of six rifle grenades to simulate an attack from that quarter. The Hun apparently 'fell' for this ruse, as he immediately turned heavy machine gun fire in direction of smoke.

BARRAGE

Barrage was quite good throughout and silenced all selected Machine Guns with the exception of gun at S.6.d.70.50 which could not be taken on by 4.5 Howitzer owing to proximity to raided post. This gun was silenced by Lieut.Hayden with Lewis Gun fire.

ENEMY BARRAGE

Enemy barrage came down at 2 minutes after zero consisting of 77 milimetre shells a short distance between front line, while 4.1 and 5.9 shells were placed along SUNKEN ROAD in S.5.d. and T.1.a.

FLARES

His S.O.S. signal seemed to be double red and green flares, while golden sprays seemed to indicate the flanks of the attack.

CASUALTIES

1 O.R. killed by rifle fire

CAPTURED RATIONS

Herewith by bearer sample of rations, butter etc.
found on post.

Attached please find table of enemy barrage flares etc.

Lieut. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

be forwarded to Battalion H.Q. by 8.00 pm. the 6th inst.

10/RELIEF.

Completion of relief will be reported by wire, using the code phrase "Your OO195 received at"

J.D.MACLEOD,

Capt. Adj.

P.T.O.

Copies to :-

7 th C.I. B.
52nd Canadian Bn.
C.O.
O.C. A.B.C.D. Cos.
Q.M. T.O. M.O. R.S.M.
War Diary (3)
File 1. *REAR*

21

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.196

COPY NO.; 17

by

Major R.L.H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.

Ref.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion , R.H.C.

Maps:- 51.c.S.E. 1/20,000

51.b.S.W. do SATURDAY, JULY 13TH, 1918

1. INFROMATION The 7th. Cdn. Infantry Brigade will relieve the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade in the MERCATEL Sector on the night 14th/15th July.

2.

INTENTION

The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C., from billets at BELLACOURT will relieve the 1st. C.M.R. Battalion in the Right Front Line

A Coy. will relieve in the Front Line

B COY. in Support

C Coy. in Right Reserve

D Coy. in Left Reserve.

3.

ORDER OF
MARCH &
TIME

A Coy – B Coy – H.Q. Details – C Coy. – D Coy.

A Company will move off at 9.15 pm. - Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between platoons and of five minutes between Companies.

4.

ROUTE

BRETENCOURT – BLAMONT MILL – WAILLY-FICHEUX
Road, to junction on Main BOIRY Road

5.

ADVANCE PARTIES

Advance Parties of 1 Officer per Company and 1 N.C.O. and 1 O.R. per platoon and Capt. Montgomery and 2 N.C.Os. from Bn. H.Q. will leave billets at 10. am. to-morrow 14th instant. They will be responsible for taking over all trench stores etc.

6.

PATROLS

Officers i/c Patrols and a proportion of O.R. selected for patrol work to-morrow. night, will leave billets at 1.30 pm. to-morrow to look over their areas.

7.

GUIDES

- (a) Guides from the 1st. C.M.R. Battn. will report to Companies in BELLACOURT at 7. pm. to-morrow.
- (b) 4 O.R. per Company from the Advance Parties will report to Lieut. Proven, at point where limbers are being unloaded, at 10. pm., and will act as joint guides with the C.M.R. to bring in their platoons.

8.

LEWIS GUN LIMBERS

Coy. L.G. Limbers will leave BELLACOURT at 9. pm., and will report to Lieut. A. B. Proven at junction of BOIRY Road and MERCATEL SWITCH (S.3.a.05.50) where limbers will be unloaded. No s. 1s and 2s of the L.G. Crews will accompany them.

Lieut. A. B. Proven will arrange that two guides meet the limbers at the junction of the WAILLY-BOIRY Road to guide them to the unloading point.

9.

BAGGAGE FOR Q.M. STORES

Coy. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes, mens' packs and other baggage for the Q.M. Stores will be piled at the Coy. Cook Kitchens – H.Q. Officers' bed rolls etc. at H.Q. Mess – Orderly Room boxes at Orderly Room, by 1.00 pm.

10.

BAGGAGE FOR TRENCHES

Officers' Trench Kits, mess boxes, dixies etc. for the trenches will be loaded on Coy. L.G. Limbers and H.Q. Officers Trench Kits and Orderly Room boxes will be piled at H.Q. Mess by 7.30 pm.

After Lewis Guns are unloaded one limber will be sent up to Support Company dump with baggage for A and B Coys. Lieut. A. B. Proven will arrange for guides to take this limber forward.

P.T.O.

11.

RATIONS

Rations will be carried in on the men.

12.

WATER

120 filled water tins will be transported by limber to Company

and Battalion dumps.

13.

TRENCH
STORES

Copies of receipts given for Trench Stores, Maps, Photographs, etc. will be forwarded to Bn. H.Q. on completion of relief.

14.

TRENCH
STATES

Trench Strength States, Disposition States and Sketches showing positions will be handed into Battn. Orderly room by 8 am. 15th instant.

15

RATION
PARTIES

B Company will be responsible for carrying A Coy's rations from Support Company's dump to the Front Line.

A Company will have guides report back to dump to-morrow night immediately after relief to guide up the ration parties.

16.

RELIEF

Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion H.Q. by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.196 received at _____"

17.

BN. H.Q.

On completion of relief Bn. H.Q. will be at S.4.a.25.45.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant.

Copy No. 1	to	7 th C.I.Bde.	10	Scout O.
2	1st. C.M.R. Bn.		11	L.G. O.
3	C.O.		12	Sig. O.
4	2 i/c		13	I.O.
5	Adjutant		14	Q.M.
6	O.C. A Coy.		15	M.O.
7	" B	16.	T.O.	
8	" C	17 - 19	War Diary	
9	" D	20	File.	
		21	RSM	

W D

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER 197

BY

MAJOR R.L.H. EWING D.S.O. M.C.
CMDG. 42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION. R.H.C.

Copy No..11....

1. INTENTION A Raid will be carried out to cut off enemy post at S.6.D.2.9. from the S.W. under a cover of a barrage with a demonstration to attract enemies attention to the N.W.
2. PARTIES 2 Officers and 30 O.Rs. (D.Coy) with L.G. divided as follows:-
 No.1 Raiding party Lieut.Morris and 20 O.R.
 No.2 Covering Party Lieut.Hayden and 10 O.R. with L.G.
3. ACTION (a) Covering Party (No.2) will take up a position covering north end of SHORT ALLEY S.6.d.1.6. to be in position 30 minutes before zero hour and will remain until the raiding party withdraws through them or till zero hour plus 10.
 (b) Raiding Party (No.1) will assemble towards North end of SHORT ALLEY in time to jump off at zero. Opening of barrage to be the signal.
 (c) O.C, C Coy. will detail one officer to be i/c of party to discharge 2 red flares to be followed by 6 No.27 Rifle Grenades.from front line at North Battalion boundary, S.6.a.0.6. immediately after barrage opens.
4. ZERO HOUR 1.00 am. night 19th/20th July 1918.
5. BARRAGE As per Appendix A.
6. SIGNAL TO START Opening of barrage.
7. PATROLS Company Patrols will be withdrawn by midnight.
8. SYNCHRONI-
ZATION OF
WATCHES Watches will be synchronized at 9.00 pm. by runner
9. ADVANCED
R.A.P. Support Company H.Q. Sunken Road at S.11.a.40.90.
10. CHANGE OF
HOUR In the event of change of zero hour the following code phrase will be used "MONTREAL plus or minus" followed by the number of minutes.
 Example "MONTREAL plus 30" will mean zero hour 1.30 am.
11. RAID CAN-
CELLED "NAPOO"

J. D. MACLEOD,
 Capt.Adjt.

Copy No.1 7th C.I.B.
 2 33rd L.O. C.F.A.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3 1st Grenadier Guards | |
| 4. 49th Cdn.Bn. (ES.) | |
| 5 O.C. A Coy. | No.10 Lie <u>u</u> t.Hayden. |
| 6. O.C. A Coy. | 11,12,13 War Diary |
| 7 O.C. B Coy. | 14 File |
| 8 O.C. C Coy. | 15. <i>LIEUT MORRIS</i> |
| 9. O.C. D. Coy | |

WD

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER No.198

by

Major R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C. Copy No..17....
 Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

17th July 1918.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. <u>INTENTION</u> | There will be an inter Company relief tomorrow night, 18th/19th July 1918. |
| 2. <u>DISPOSITIONS</u> | C Company will relieve A Company in the front line. D Company will relieve B Company in Support. On completion of relief A Company will move back into trenches vacated by C Company in Right Reserve and B Company to those of D Company in left reserve. All arrangements in connection with relief will be made by Company Commanders concerned. |
| 3. <u>TIME</u> | C and D Cos. will not move from their present position until 9.45 pm. and will go forward by overland routes. |
| 4. <u>PATROLS</u> | Patrols will be carried on as usual, with the exception that A and C Cos. will arrange a joint patrol tomorrow night. |
| 5. <u>WORKING PARTIES</u> | Company Commanders will arrange that working parties are interfered with as little as possible. |
| 6. <u>RATIONS</u> | D Company will be responsible for carrying C Coy's rations and water to the front line. |
| 7. <u>COMPLETION OF RELIEF</u> | Completion of relief will be notified to Bn. H.Q. by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.198 re- |

ceived at"

J.D.MACLEOD,
Capt.Adjt.

Copies to No. 1	7th C.I.B.	No.2	49th Cdn.Bn. (E.R.)
3	C.O.	4	O.C.A. Coy.
5	O.C. B Coy	6	O.C. C Coy.
7.	O.C. D Coy	8.	Q.M.
9.	T.O.	10,11,12	War Diary
13.	File.		

Copy No...14....

SECRET OPERATION ORDER No.199
by Lt.Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
Wednesday, 24th July 1918.

Ref.Maps :51.c.S.E.)
51.b.S.W.) 1/20,000
LENS 11 - 1/100,000

1. INFORMATION 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the MERCATEL SECTOR on the night 25th/26th July 1918 by the 176th Infantry Brigade and 2 Battalions of the 177th Infantry Brigade.
2. INTENTION The 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment will relieve the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. in the right sub-sector (front line).
On completion of relief the Battalion will move by train to WARLUS where it will go into G.H.Q. Reserve and be prepared to move on 12 hours notice.
3. ENTRAINING POINT MARBLE ARCH – Details later.
4. DISPOSITION Companies will be relieved by corresponding Companies of the 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment.
5. GUIDES Guides - 2 per platoon, 2 per Coy. H.Q. and 2 for Battalion H.Q. under Lieut. A.B.Proven will proceed to BRETENCOURT on the night of 24th/25th July

1918, and will report to the relieving Battalion.

6. PATROLS Companies will send out usual patrols on night of relief. They will report in at 1.45 am.
7. REAR PARTY As already detailed.
8. LEWIS GUNS On completion of relief Lewis Guns and Magazines will be carried to Company Dumps and loaded on limbers. Lewis Gun limbers will report by 11 pm.
9. BAGGAGE Officer's kits, mess boxes, water tins, dixies, salvage etc. will be piled at respective ration dumps by 10 pm.
10. RECEIPTS FOR TRENCHES Officers Commanding Cos. will be responsible that trenches are left in a clean and sanitary condition and will obtain certificates from advance parties of incoming Battalion to this effect.
11. TRENCH STORES All maps, aeroplane photographs and trench stores will be handed over upon relief and a copy of receipt obtained will be forwarded to Battalion H.Q. by 6 pm. 25th inst.
12. RELIEF Completion of relief will be reported by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.199 received at....."

J. D. MACLEOD,
Capt. Adjt.

Copies to –

- No. 1 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.
- 2 25th Bn. King's Liverpool Regiment.
- 3 C.O.
- 4 O.C. A.B.C.D. Cos. (4-7)
- 8 Left Battalion
- 9 Right Battalion
- 10 Q.M. 11 T.O. 12 R.S.M.
- 13 Rear
- 14/16 War Diary
- 17 File

SECRET OPERATION ORDER NO. 200 COPY NO.--15--
by

Ref.Map Lt.Col. B. McLennan, DSO
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battn. R.H.C.

LENS 11 - 1/100,000 MONDAY, JULY 29TH, 1918

1.

INFORMATION The 3rd. Canadian Division, with Divl. Artillery will move on the 30th July to LUCHEUX, VI Corps Area, replacing 57th Division, and will entrain 31st. inst., at DOULLENS, MONDI-COURT and BOUQUEMAISON.

INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move by Route March from WARLUS to IVERGNY.

PARADE The Battalion will fall in, in mass, on the Battalion Parade Ground, ready to move off at 8. 15 am.

ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters – A – B – C – D Coys. & Transport. Intervals of 100yds. will be maintained between Coys & 500yds between Units.

DRESS Battle Order – Steel Helmets on .Backs

STARTING POINT West end of Church GOUY-EN-ARTOIS
Battalion will pass Starting Point at 10.30 am.

7

ROUTE BERNEVILLE – SIMENCOURT – GOUY-EN-ARTOIS – BAVINCOURT – SAULTY – COUTURELLE – WARLUZEL – SUS-ST.LEGER – IVERGNY.

8.

HALTS The Battalion will halt at ten minutes to each clock hour and resume the march at the clock hour.
Halt for lunch will be made from 12. noon until 1. 30pm.

9

OFFICERS' KITS, MESS Men's Packs will be piled in front of the Orderly Room by 6. 30 am.

BOXES ETC. Officers Kits and Mess Boxes will be at Q.M. Stores by 7. 15am

10

INSPECTION Huts will be clear of personnel, clean, and ready for inspection by 7. 30am.

11

MARCHING OUT STATES Marching Out States will be handed to Orderly Room by 8. am.

J. D. MACLEOD,

	Copy:	Captain/Adjutant
Issued at 11.30pm. to H.Q. 7th C.I.B.	1	
C.O.	2	
2 i/c	3	
Adjutant	4	T.O. 13
O.C. A Coy.	5	RSM 14
B	6	War Diary 15. 16. 17
C	7	File 18
D	8	?SO 14
M.O.	9	
Q.M.	10	
Scout O.	11	
Sig. O.	12	

OPERATION ORDER No. 201 by
Lt. Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O.

SECRET Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Copy No.....

O.C. A.B.C.D Cos.
Scout O. R.S.M. Sig Sgt. July 30th 1918.

Orders have been received from Brigade that four Company Kitchens and one water cart and the four Lewis Gun limbers will entrain at DOULLENS at 2.45 am. 31st instant (tonight) – leaving at 12.30 am. 31st instant (tonight) – and will detrain at SALEUX (near AMIENS)

The balance of the transport will proceed by road to the same place.
Time to be notified later.

The Battalion will entrain at 8 am. tomorrow 31st. at BOUQUEMAISON
Detraining at SALEUX.

per

One cook and one helper, Company will accompany each Field Kitchen
Three Dixies per Company will be kept for the purpose of cooking Breakfast,
and will be loaded with the baggage on the transport which proceeds by roads.

RATIONS will be drawn by Companies from Q.M. at 1.30 am.

Reveille will be at 4.30 am.

Breakfast 5 - "

Officers baggage and Mens Boxes will be at Q.M. stores by 5.30am.
Companies and H.Q. will detail fatigue of 20 per Company and H.Q. to
carry baggage, mess boxes etc. to the stores and to assist in loading.

MARCHING OUT STATES to reach Orderly Room by 5.30 am.

The Battalion will proceed by Route March to BOUQUEMAISON leaving at 6.30Am.

DRESS. Fighting kit for all ranks with packs. This will include Wire cutters, Very Pistols, Grenade Clips, etc. etc.

Packs will be carried on kicking straps.

Ration. Breakfast will be served to themen before leaving, balance of the twenty four hour rations will be carried on the men.

The cooks who remain with the Battalion will cook tonight the meat which is to be carried on the men.

C.G.Howard,
Lieut.Asst.Adjt
for Capt.Adjt.

Thu., Aug 1, 1918

The Battalion still in billets at DURY.

On the night of August 1st. the Pipe Band played at a Mess of the Headquarters Signal Officers of the 31st. Corps d'armee, afterwards the Headquarter officers of the Battalion visited the Mess and spent an enjoyabl e evening.

Fri., Aug 2, 1918

Lieut. J. A. P. Haydon was transferred from C Company to the Scout Section.

On the night of August 2nd. the Battalion moved from DURY to ST. FUSCIEN, leaving about 8.30pm. and arriving at about 10.pm. On arrival the Battalion went into billets.

Sat., Aug 3, 1918

On this date the Battalion suffered the severest blow in its history in the death by enemy shell fire of the Commanding Officer, Lieut. Col. Bartlett McLennan, D.S.O. He was killed in the forward area while making a personal reconnaissance of the country over which the Battalion was to attack some days later.

Lieut. Col. McLennan had joined the Battalion as Junior Major upon its organization in 1915. He was with the Battalion in this capacity all through its period of training in Canada and England, and came to France with the Battalion in October, 1915 as Second in Command.

In July, 1916, he was very seriously injured when his horse fell on him. He was invalided to England but returned to France and assumed command of the Battalion with the rank of Lieut. Colonel in April, 1917.

He was awarded the Distinguished Service Order in January, 1917, in recognition of his outstanding services in the engagement of June 2nd, 1916 near YPRES. He was three times mentioned in despatches of the Commander-in-Chief.

His death is an irreparable loss, not only to the Battalion which he loved, and for which he rendered such brilliant and devoted service, but also to the Brigade and Division. All ranks who had the privilege of serving under his command had learned to love him as a friend and counsellor, and to admire him as a brilliant and gallant soldier and gentleman.

Sun., Aug 4, 1918

The funeral of Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O. took place to LONGUEAU Cemetery. It was attended by officers and senior N.C.Os. of the Battalion, a Firing Party of 40 O.R. and the Pipe Band. At the grave side were present the Corps Commander – Lt.General Sir Arthur W. Currie, K.C.B., K.C.M.G.; the Divisional Commander – Major-General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., and the Brigadier – Brig.General Hugh M. Dyer, C.M.G., D.S.O., and many other distinguished officers.

Announcement appeared in Divisional Orders of the award of the Military Medal to the following O.R. of this Battalion for the part they had taken in the splendid patrol under Lieut. J. M. Morris and the subsequent raid under the same officer on the nights of 17/18th and 19th/20th July:-

901119 Sgt. E. L. Cuvilier.	418761 Pte. J. Waldvogel,
441863 Pte. W. P. Ducharme,	192625 „, J.E. Williams

On this date the very secret announcement was made that the Battalion would take part in a large offensive operation on the AMIENS Front in co-operation with Tanks, R.A.F. Squadrons, Cavalry, Motor M.Gs. etc. From this time on every available moment was spent in intensive preparation for the Show.

Mon., Aug 5, 1918

Lieut. W. J. Murray, C Company, was detached to the 7th T.M. Battery, replacing Lieut. A. G. Johnston, who had been detached to the Battery but had recently been transferred to the 3rd. Canadian Machine Gun Battalion.

Tue., Aug 6, 1918

The Battalion moved by night to GENTELLES WOOD, starting off at 9.30pm. and proceeding by route march via ST. FUSCIEN 2nd. class road. One of the remarkable features of this march was the tremendous amount of troops, transport, tanks, guns and other machinery of war which was passed on the road up making our progress very slow, the Battalion arriving about 1. am. and bivouacing in the Wood. The utmost secrecy was essential and as a result no lights could be shown after dark of smoke by daylight.

Wed., Aug 7, 1918

The day was spent in GENTELLES WOOD making final preparations for the Show which was to take place in the early morning of the 8th. At about 10.p.m. the Battalion moved off by Platoons from the Wood to GENTELLES Trench – U. 19. a. & c. (DEMUIN Sheet att.) which was the First Assembly Position.

On the same evening the Details left out of the Operation returned to SAINS-EN-AMIENNOIS.

The Operation in which the Battalion was to take part on the following day was a very important one, extending over approximately twenty miles of front, of which the Canadian Corps held approximately a central position. Described generally the Operation intended was an attack on the enemy's positions to the East and South-East of AMIENS with the object of driving him back and freeing the main line of railway between AMIENS and PARIS. On the right of the Canadians were the French, and on the left the Australian Corps. The 3rd. Canadian Division was on the right of the Corps; the 1st. Canadian Division in the centre and the 2nd Canadian Division on the left. The 4th Canadian Division was in reserve during the first stage of the attack and was to pass through the 3rd. Canadian Division. Artillery, Tanks, Machine Gun Battalions, Motor Machine Gun Brigades and Cavalry, together with large squadrons of aeroplanes including Contact, Bombing, Scouting and Fighting planes were co-operating with the other branches of the service.

The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to "jump off" at Zero and to capture the enemy's positions up to and including the GREEN LINE (See DEMUIN Sheet att.) The 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade was to pass through the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade when the latter had reached its objective at Zero plus 4 hours and capture the enemy's position up to and including the RED LINE (See DEMUIN Sheet) The 9th and 7th Canadian Infantry Brigades were on the right of the Division and operated with their right flank on the AMIENS-ROYE Road. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade frontage at the outset was about 2,200 yards and at its objective about 3,200 yards. The 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade frontage at its "jumping off" position was about 3,200 yards and at its objective about 4,000 yards (See DEMUIN Sheet). The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to attack with three Battalions in the line and one Battalion in reserve as follows:-

The Royal Canadian Regiment on the right – 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. in the centre – 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. on the left and the P.P.C.L.I. in reserve. The frontage of the Battalion in the attack was 1,350 yards and its Objective was HILL. 102, the main feature of the country over which the Brigade was to attack (See DEMUIN Sheet att.)

There was to be no preliminary bombardment. The attack of the 9th Canadian inf. Brigade on the GREEN LINE was to be covered by a shrapnel barrage which ceased at Zero plus 4 hours, and there was to be no barrage forward of the GREEN LINE for the attack of the Brigade on the RED LINE. The advance of the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade on the RED LINE was to be covered, however, by heavy artillery fire on selected points and long range field guns firing H.E.

One of the outstanding features of the Operation was the secrecy with which all operations and the assembly of all troops and material were carried out. Not even the Commanding Officers of the Battalions in the front line knew that an attack was in preparation. All movements of transport, personnel, artillery, tanks, etc. were carried out by night and all these were hidden in the WOODS by daylight. Discussion of the Operations, even by and with those concerned in them was forbidden [*forbidden*] except where absolutely necessary. The presence of the Canadian Corps on this front was quite unknown to the enemy who had been purposely led to believe that all four Divisions of the Canadian Corps were on the YPRES front farther to the North.

Thu., Aug 8, 1918

Zero hour was 4.20 am. at which hour the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade jumped off for its attack on the GREEN LINE. 55, 56 AND

The Battalion left its first assembly position by cross-country tracks to Bridges 59 across the river LUCE which it commenced to cross at Zero + 100 minutes, namely 6 O'clock. The crossing of the river LUCE was considered from the outset to be one of the ticklish features of the Operation as all the troops taking part in the attack, in the 9th and 7th Canadian Infantry Brigades had to cross by foot bridges in the proximity of the AMIENS-ROYE Road, the main bridge being reserved for artillery, tanks, etc. Bridge 59 by which *half* the Battalion crossed was approximately 200 yards long and crossed not only the river but also the wide strips of marsh land on each side. It had been damaged by shell fire at several points which necessitated the Battalion crawling along the remnants of the bridge at these places. Notwithstanding these difficulties the Battalion passed across the bridge successfully and without casualties. Shortly after crossing the bridge, however, the Battalion came under heavy shell fire in C.4. c. & d. and suffered some casualties (See DEMUIN Sheet att.). The movements of the Battalion were considerably hampered and made difficult by the heavy mist which hung over everything at this time. However, the Battalion was able to reach the Second Assembly Position at C.5. central (DEMUIN Sheet) in good time. After a short rest the Battalion pushed on to the valley in HAMON WOOD which it reached at 7. 50am. In the valley of HAMON WOOD THE Battalion deployed and Companies got into their Battle positions at the jumping off point along the GREEN LINE extending from D. 13.a.7.8. to D. 17.d.2.5. While the Battalion was on the way to the jumping off position an enemy aeroplane patrolled out line at a low altitude directing the enemy batteries. Although heavily shelled the Battalion sustained no casualties. None of our planes was in evidence at this time.

The Battalion was to jump off from the GREEN LINE at 8.20am. which it did exactly on time. Very heavy machine gun fire was coming from the direction of HILL 102. In spite of this, however, the right Company was able to make progress. The centre and left Companies were held up by a battery of 4.1s. Howitzers which were fired at point blank range from the valley at D.7.d. These were out-flanked and put out of action, and the crews either killed or captured by a very clever and daring operation which was carried out by the Adjutant of the Battalion – Capt. J. D. MacLeod. Complete details of the manner in which this was carried out are shown in the report of the action attached. A little later the right flank – A Company, were held up by a battery of 8" guns firing at point blank range from the valley in L.13.d. These were rushed and the crews either killed or taken prisoners. Here 3 - 8" How guns, 1 Anti-Tank gun, and 4 G.S. Limbers were captured. After this valley in which guns had been located had been cleaned up the Battalion pressed on to the attack of HILL 102 itself. This attack was carried out with great dash and a few machine guns and some further prisoners were captured. The final objective at the RED LINE was reached at 10.20am. Throughout the last steps of the attack the right flank of the right company was more or less in the air owing to the fact that the Battalion on our right had not made as fast progress. When the objective was reached patrols were sent out and opposition was met with in CLAUDE WOOD, 3 Tanks came up and 2 enemy machine gun crews and a H.V. 4.5 c.m. were captured. The right flank of the right Company was still unprotected but outposts on the flank secured it until the Battalion on our right came up alongside.

Battalion Headquarters was established on the North-Western corner of CLAUDE WOOD. Patrols were then sent forward to the high ground near ST. QUENTIN WOOD. At 11.

am. two Brigades of Cavalry went through us and the Hun, who a quarter of an hour before had been seen coming over the ridge South of PERONNE WOOD in artillery formation, was now seen retiring over the high ground. At 2.p.m. the 4th Canadian Division went through the Battalion.

Orders were received at 9.p.m. to move into CLAUDE WOOD where the Battalion bivouaced for the night. In the meantime a Supply Tank came up on two occasions, the first time shortly after we reached our objective, and we were able to get 75 tins of water on each occasion and a large number of filled machine gun discs, S.A.A. etc. etc.

Shortly after the objective was reached the G.O.C. Brigade came up to Battn. Headquarters in the Wood and the situation was such that we were able to have lunch in the open at which were present besides the Brigadier, the G.O.C. of the Cavalry Division which had gone through us, two aeroplane pilots, one of whose machines had crashed and the other who had made a landing near us and later left in his machine, and several Tank officers of the tanks which had taken part in the engagement. The G.O.C. Cavalry Division stated that the Canadians were the first Infantry troops through which his Division had gone into action at any time. About 9.30 that night the Battalion Transport and Details came up to CLAUDE WOOD and joined the Battalion.

The captures of the Battalion included: 3 8" Howitzers 4 loaded G.S. Wagons
 4 4.1 " 8 horses
 1 Anti-Tank Gun 2 Searchlights
 1 H.V. 4.5. Gun
 1 Grenatenwerfer. [*Granatenwerfer*]
 and many machine guns, and it was estimated 200 prisoners, also large quantities of ammunition and equipment.

Total casualties were:-	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>DIED OF WOUNDS</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>
Officers			Lieut. E.C.Evans, " R.P.Crowe
OTHER RANKS	12	2	29
TOTAL CASUALTIES – ALL RANKS			<u>45</u>

Copy of the Report on the Operations carried out on this date together with copies of messages and reports received and sent out during the Operation are attached.

The following message was received from Division through Brigade on the day following the Operations:-

" Would you please let your Command know that the Commander-in-Chief (Sir Douglas Haig) called at Divisional Headquarters this afternoon to congratulate our Division. He said that he especially wanted to congratulate our Division on account of the difficult tasks they had had to carry out and he desired me to convey his appreciation to all ranks. "

Fri., Aug 9, 1918

The Battalion rested in the morning in CLAUDE WOOD. In the afternoon the Battalion moved to the area directly South – D.22.c.S.W. of BEACOURT-EN-SANTERRE (DEMUIN Sheet).

While the Battalion was resting in the fields in this area the 32nd. Division marched in and formed up as a Division quite close to the Battalion.

As soon as it got dark the Battalion moved by route march to FOLIES Village which had been captured that day by the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade (See Sheet 66.E. N.E. att) The Transport and Details remained in the field at D.22.c.

Sat., Aug 10, 1918

Transport and Details moved up to the FOLIES Village and joined the Battalion. In the evening an enemy aeroplane bombed the Battalion Lines and caused 15 casualties as follows:-

	KILLED	WOUNDED
OTHER RANKS	. 3	12

Sun., Aug 11, 1918

At 8. 15 pm. the Battalion moved off from FOLIES to the Assembly Area near the cross roads in K.24.b. (Sheet France 66. E. 1/20,000) and was disposed in old trenches while the Commanding Officer – Major R. L. H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C. left to attend a conference at Brigade Headquarters. This assembly area was shelled with a few rounds by an enemy Howitzer and the Battalion lost one man wounded.

Shortly before 11.pm. Major Ewing rejoined the Battalion and at a conference of Company Commanders, held in an old trench under a few sheets of corrugated iron, issued brief orders for the relief of the 1st/5th Battalion Border Regiment which was holding the line in the PARVILLERS Sector.

C Company was to take over the right and D Company the left of the front line, with A and B Companies in support. The actual location of the trenches we were to occupy was obscure at this time as the Border Regiment had suffered heavy casualties and had been unable to secure much information from the forward area. This, together with the fact that the Battalion had to march over three miles from the Assembly Area to the front line, entailed a considerable amount of difficulty in making the relief. Arrangements were made for guides from the Border Regiment to meet the Battalion at ROUVROY. Shortly before midnight the Battalion moved off along the main road to ROUVROY and were met at the edge of the village by the Commanding Officer of the 1st./5th Border Regiment and a party of guides who were told off to the respective companies. Some of the guides had but a hazy idea of where they were to go and several false starts were made before the right routes to the front line were located. The enemy was shelling the village intermittently at this time with 8" guns and Major Ewing had a very narrow escape while on his way to Headquarters with the Commanding Officer of the 1st/5th Border Regiment. A shell exploded at the edge of the road, less than 15 feet from where he was walking. The Commanding Officer of the Border Regiment, who was beside him, had one arm blown away and was mortally wounded in the side. He was immediately attended by Captain Wm. Hale, M.C. , Medical Officer of the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, but died within an hour. Major Ewing, by a stroke of great good fortune, escaped unhurt.

The relief was reported complete at 4.25am. on August 12th.

Mon., Aug 12, 1918

The Battalion had come into the line with instructions from Brigade to maintain a steady pressure against the enemy who was believed to be fighting a rearguard action, and immediately following completion of relief all information relating to the front was carefully consid-

ered. The line occupied by us was the old British front line held in this Sector before the German offensive, and consisted of a net work of old trenches overgrown with grass and weeds. The enemy occupied the old German system containing numerous concrete dugouts. It was heavily wired and we were informed by the Officers of the 32nd. Imperial Division which had been held up by it on the day before after suffering very severe casualties, that this was impenetrable. In between the two positions was a strip of No-mans-land which averaged from 150 to 300 yards wide. A frontal attack on the position entailed not only crossing our own wire which was quite strong but also the heavy enemy entanglements. The only weak point in the German defence lay on the North flank where our 4th Division had been able to push on through the village of ROUQUESCOURT. The Commanding Officer at once decided to capture PARVILLERS Trench System by a bombing attack from this flank. He dictated a brief Operation Order to the Adjutant and instructed Major C. B. Topp, MC., Acting 2 i/c, to deliver copies to the Companies, make a reconnaissance of the position, and arrange any further necessary details for the attack. Meanwhile Major Ewing went to Brigade H.Q. to arrange for Artillery support and to explain the operation to Brig. Gen. Dyer. He also wished to arrange for co-operation on the right of the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road by the P.P.C.L.I. who were holding the line on the right of the Forty-Second. He was successful in arranging for this co-operation after which he returned to Battalion Headquarters.

The nature of the operation called for a very large number of Bombs, and it was only with the greatest difficulty that they were secured and delivered to the Companies in time to begin Operations at Zero hour which had been set for 3.30pm. A full report of the Operation which resulted in more than ten hours of hand-to-hand fighting during which the attack was

Tue., Aug 13 & Wed., Aug. 14, 1918

many times pressed home with the bayonet, and in which every officer and man engaged distinguished himself, is appended hereto.

Aug. 13th. Lieut. S. H. Crawford reported and was posted to C Company.

Aug. 14th. Lieut. R. M. Munroe reported and was posted to D Company

Thu., Aug 15 & Fri., Aug 16, 1918

The Battalion was relieved by the sister Battalion – 13th Canadian Battalion, RHC. in the line and on relief moved to an orchard near the village of QUESNEL where the Battalion bivouaced for the night.

		DIED	
The total casualties for the tour were:-		<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>
OFFICERS		<u>OF WOUNDS</u>	
Lt. H.L.Boyles		Lieut.J.M.Morris,MC.	
," S.P. Earnshaw,		" A.S.Scott,	
		" J.D.Lemoine,	
		", G. Morani,	
		Cpt. F.S.Allen	
OTHER RANKS	30	101	10

Fri., Aug 16, 1918

The Transport and Details joined the Battalion at QUESNEL.

The Battalion and Transport moved by route march from QUESNEL to HAMON WOOD where they bivouaced. During the stay in HAMON WOOD which lasted three days the Battalion was fortunate in the fact that the weather was splendid throughout as the whole Battalion and Transport were bivouaced in the open.

During the stay here the Battalion refitted, rested, and carried on Lewis Gun and General Training. Bathing Parades which took place in a large swimming pool in the River LUCE were much enjoyed.

Sat., Aug 17, 1918

[There is no entry for this date]

Sun., Aug 18, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by the Premier of France – M. Clemenceau, The Field Marshall, Commander-in-Chief – Sir Douglas Haig, K.T., G.C.B., G.C.V.O., and K.C.I.E., The G.O.C. 4th Army – General Sir H. S. Rawlinson, Bart, G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G., and the Divisional Commander – Major General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., accompanied by their respective staffs.

This was the only Brigade in the Division which was inspected by these officers and it was felt that the Brigade had been singled out for this special honour in view of its outstanding work both on the 8th August and in the action about PARVILLERS.

Mon., Aug 19, 1918

The following message was received from Sir H. S. Rawlinson, G.O.C. 4th Army through Canadian Corps:-

TO / Canadian Corps,

I desire to place on record my sincere appreciation of the conspicuous and highly successful part played by the Canadian Corps in the battle of August 8th. The task allotted to them was not easy, especially on the right where the initial attack of the 3rd. Canadian Division was delivered under special difficulties.

The need for secrecy, which necessitated the assembly of the whole Corps, including the heavy artillery, by night in an area previously unknown to them, enhanced the difficulties, especially when the front line had of necessity to be held by other troops.

The determination with which [which] all obstacles were overcome, the dash and gallantry with which the assault was delivered, and the precision with which each advance was made exactly on scheduled time, reflect the highest credit both on the staff arrangements and the fine fighting spirit of all units which took part in the operation.

The three points which seem to me to deserve the highest commendation are the splendid gallantry of the infantry, the skill and hard work in "getting in" the artillery (both heavy artillery and field artillery) on the nights preceding the battle, and the energy

and drive in pushing forward mobile artillery immediately the enemy front line had been broken.

The general control and direction of the battle by Corps, Divisional and Brigade Staffs were admirable and enabled the whole programme to be carried through in its entirety without a hitch; this is in itself the highest praise that can be given.

I congratulate the Canadian Corps as a whole and offer them my warmest thanks for their very fine performance.

(Signed) H. RAWLINSON, General
Cmdg. 4th Army

H.Q. Fourth Army
16th August, 1918.

Announcement appeared in Orders of the award to Lieut. J. M. Morris (since wounded) of the Military Cross for the part he had played in the patrol and the raid of July 17th/18th and 19th/ 20th respectively.

The following officers reinforcements reported and were posted to Companies as shown:- Lieut. B. C. Hutchison to A Company Lieut. F. C. Dobell to B Company
" H. A. Seely to A " " G. S. Ryder to C "
" C. L. Smart to A " " A. B. Burke to C "
" C. N. Ramsey to D "

The Brigade was ordered to move to BOVES Station for entrainment. The Battalion less Transport moved off at 9. pm. and proceeded by route march to BOVES Station which they reached about 11.30pm. The Transport, after moving some of the baggage down to the Station, moved by route march to RIVERY Area near AMIENS.

Tue., Aug 20, 1918

After a very long wait on the road side entrainment commenced at about 4. am. Entrainment was unusually slow as the platform was covered with broken stone and the Battalion had to move in single file entraining taking place in successive cars and not simultaneously. in each car.

The Battalion detrained at BOURQUEMAISON [*BOUQUEMAISON*] at 8.30 am. and proceeded by route march to IVERGNY, where it moved into billets.

In the evening a very enjoyable concert was given by the 16th Cdn. Bn. Concert Party at the Y.M.C.A. Hut of the Canadian Forestry Corps in LUCHEUX WOOD – 200 of the Battalion attended.

Wed., Aug 21, 1918

The Battalion remained at IVERGNY doing training and refitting in so far as possible.

Thu., Aug 22 & Fri., Aug 23, 1918

The Battalion remained at IVERGNY all day and at 8.45 pm. received orders to move crossing the Starting Point, about one and a half miles distant, at 9.30 pm. The Battalion accordingly fell in at 9.10 pm., the Transport was loaded, and the Battalion moved off, the destination being MANIN, a distance of 16 kilometres. The night was very hot but a bright moon made marching easier than it would have been without it. The Battalion arrived at MANIN at 4. am.

and moved into excellent billets. All ranks immediately went to rest and in the afternoon, shortly after waking, orders were received that the Battalion would move to the PENIN ANZIN ST. AUBIN Area, the destination of the Battalion being "Y" Camp near DUISANS. The Battalion left at 8.15 pm.

Sat., Aug 24, 1918

The Battalion arrived at "Y" Camp about 1.30pm. and were billeted in hutments. The Transport which had accompanied the Battalion on the marches from IVERGNY and MANIN, was parked in the Camp.

Sun., Aug 25, 1918

Battalion still in "Y" Camp.

Under instructions from Brigade the Commanding Officer and Company Commanders left Camp at 10. am. to reconnoitre the trenches East of ARRAS, from which it was expected that an attack would shortly take place. At 2.30pm. a conference was held at Brigade H.Q. and Brig. General H.M.Dyer, CMG., DSO. issued verbal instructions to the Battalion Commanders for the Operations which were to take place at 3. am. on the following morning. The task allotted to the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to attack through the 8th Cdn. Inf. Brigade after it had made good a line just West of MONCHY LEPREUX and to capture MONCHY – BOIS DE VERT – BOIS DU SART and JIGSAW WOOD. The Royal Canadian Regiment – The P.P.C.L.I. and 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. were to attack and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. was to remain in Brigade reserve, moving forward 800 yards in rear of the Royal Canadian Regiment who were attacking on the right. The whole Brigade was ordered to move independently after dusk to the first Assembly Position, astride the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road just East of ARRAS.

The Battalion moved off at 8. pm. along the main road to ARRAS, and arrived there during a heavy thunder storm about 11.pm. – A Company occupied BLANGY Trench at the Eastern outskirts of the town and B. C. and D Companies were billeted in cellars where they settled down to rest until Zero hour. The Commanding Officer reported to Brigade H.Q. at CHATHAM Cave to receive orders for the advance and the Company Commanders assembled at Battalion H.Q.

Mon., Aug 26, 1918

At 2.45am. the Battalion stood to under cover and promptly at 3. the barrage opened up and the attack began. Orders to move were momentarily expected and all ranks stood ready with their equipment on. It was not until 6.45am, however, that Major Ewing returned with instructions to move off at once to the second Assembly Position which lay in the low ground North of the CAMBRAI Road and West of ORANGE HILL.. The Companies were ordered to move off independently via PELVES Road and by 7. am. the Battalion was underway. The roads were crowded with troops and transport moving up, our own and German wounded coming down and many parties of prisoners were passed. There was little shelling of roads and the Battalion reached the Assembly Area at 8.40am. without casualties. The advance from this position began shortly after 10. am. but the Royal Canadian Regiment's attacking companies were held up just East of MONCHY and consequently the 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. was un-

able to move further ahead than the Area immediately West of MONCHY. We remained here until 4.30pm. during which time a heavy concentration of artillery was placed on the Area and several men were lost.

At 4.30pm. the Battalion began a bombing attack of the enemy trench system between MONCHY and the CAMBRAI Road. A full report of the Operation, which in its later stages resulted in very heavy fighting, is appended hereto.

Tue., Aug 27, 1918

At 5. am. the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade attacked through the Battalion and we remained in Support where we were. There was considerable shelling of the area and a few casualties occurred.

At 10. am. orders were received that the Battalion would be prepared to relieve the 52nd. Canadian Battalion and reconnaissance was made. At 9. 30pm. verbal instructions were received from Brigade to relieve the 58th Canadian Battalion and one Company of the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. in the neighbourhood of the BOIS DU SART which had been captured during the afternoon and to touch up with the P.P.C.L.I. on the left flank. As this meant relief by night over unknown country for a distance of 4,000 yards which had not been previously reconnoitred by us or even seen in daylight, it entailed many difficulties. The Commanding Officer, Adjutant Scout Officer, and a party of Scouts and Runners left immediately for the 58th Battalion H.Q.

Wed., Aug 28, 1918

The party arrived at the 58th Battalion Headquarters at 1. am. and arrangements were made for guides. Word was sent back to the Battalion and the move commenced at 2.20 am. After a great deal of difficulty the relief was finally completed at 5. 10am. The area taken over was a narrow salient encircling the BOIS DU SART, and was about 500 yards in front of the Battalions on either flank. About 10.am. verbal instructions were received advising us that PELVES had been captured and that a further attack would be launched at 11. am. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right were to capture BOIRY and ARTILLERY HILL and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left were to attack and capture JIGSAW WOOD. This meant that the troops on our flanks were to move forward and capture a line slightly in advance of nose [?] of the salient we were holding. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion were ordered to conform with the flanks. It turned out that stronger opposition was encountered than was expected and before it was over the Battalion had become involved [*involved*] in a heavy attack during which the South-East part of JIGSAW WOOD and a portion of BOIRY Trench were captured by us. A complete report of the Operation is appended hereto.

Lieut. A. Wilson, who had been in charge of the 42nd. Bn. Training Platoon, 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Training Company, 3rd. Divisional Wing, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*] for about three months, returned to the Battalion.

145373 C.S.M. Lush, J.T. "B" Coy. – 418995 Sgt. Brown, J.S. "A" Coy. – 441875 Sgt. Wilson, F.L. "Scout Section H.Q." - 418164 Cpl. Hosking, E.L. "D" Coy. and 2075447 A/Cpl. Dinesen, T. "D" Coy. all of whom had rendered excellent service both in the ranks and as N.C.Os. left the Battalion to report to England for a Cadet Course.

Lieut. D. B. Gilmour was evacuated sick to hospital.

Wed., Aug 28 & Thu., Aug 29, 1918

The Battalion was relieved by Composite Machine Gun Battalion and upon relief which was completed only at daybreak moved to billets in ARRAS which were reached between 9. and 10. in the morning.

The following message was received and published in Orders:-

FROM / Field Marshall H.R.H. the Duke of Connaught and Strathearn, K.C., C.T., K.P., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., G.C.M.G., G.O.I.E., E.B.E.

" My warmest congratulations on splendid part taken by Canadians in great and successful Anglo-French advance. Deeply sympathise with Royal Highlanders at loss of their gallant and capable Commanding Officer."

Thu., Aug 29, 1918

Lieut. D. M. Handy reported as a reinforcement and was posted to D Company.

Fri., Aug 30, 1918

Lieut. H. A. Sewell, Battn. Scout Officer, left to take charge of the 42nd. Training Platoon, 3rd. Divisional Wing, C.C.R.C. [*Canadian Corps Reinforcement Camp*]

132255 Sgt. Crawford, D. A Coy. left to report to England for a Cadet Course. This Sergeant had been Acgt. C.Q.M.S of A Company, and both in this capacity and as Sergeant had rendered excellent service.

The following message from the G.O.C., Division, was received:-

3rd. Cdn. Division A.49-110

To / 7th C.I.Brigrade,

Since the 26th August the Division has advanced some 9,000 yards on a front of about 3,000 yards gradually increasing to 7,000 yards through strongly defended German System.

The important and historic places of MONCHY – PELVES – BOIS DU VERT – BOIS du SART – JIGSAW WOOD – BOIRY NOTRE DAME, have all been captured. Five German Lines of Defence have been crossed.

The booty and prisoners captured are as follows:-

About 200 Machine Guns
22 Guns
15 Trench Mortars
Large quantities of other stores
1, 424 unwounded prisoners
About 211 wounded prisoners
our casualties are about 2, 400.

The whole operation in my opinion was carried out with great skill and courage on the part of Officers, N.C.Os. and men.

I particularly want to thank all ranks for their final effort on 28th August. After the men had been continuously fighting and marching for three days they made a

final effort which broke the FRESNE – ROUVROY Line, and captured Artillery Hill and BOIRY. Every Battalion in the Division was engaged in this final attack and I think it gave one of the finest examples possible of what can be accomplished by determined men in spite of fatigue and losses.

(Sd.)
3rd. Canadian Division
30.8.18.

L. J. Lipsett, Major General
Cmdg. 3rd. Canadian Division

Sat., Aug 31, 1918

In the afternoon word was received that the Battalion would probably move on this date to ST. AUBIN about 3½ miles to the North-West. About 6. pm. however, this order was cancelled and the month closed with the Battalion resting in billets in ARRAS.

Total casualties during the month were:-

	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>DIED OF WOUNDS</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>	<u>TOTAL</u>
OFFICERS	3	-	12	15
OTHER RANKS	60	12	225	297
TOTAL	<u>63</u>	<u>12</u>	<u>237</u>	<u>312</u>

Royal L. Ewing

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Batt. R.H.C.

SECRET

Operation Order No. 202 by COPY NO. 10

Lieut. Col. B. MacLennan.DSO

Ref.Map

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion,RHC.

AMIENS 1/100,000

FRIDAY, AUGUST 2nd 1918

1

INFORMATION

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move from the HEBECOURT Area to the S T. FUSCIEN Area on the night 2/3rd August.

2

INTENTION

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion,R.H.C. will move by Route March from DURY to billets in ST. FUSCIEN.

3

PARADE

The Battalion will fall in, in column of route, facing North, on the main HEBECOURT-AMIENS Road, ~~with~~

~~head of column at the SALEUX-ST. FUSCIEN Road~~, with head
of column at the SALEUX-FUSCIEN Cross Roads, ready to
move off at 9.45 pm.

4

ORDER OF
MARCH

Headquarters – A – B – C - D Companies

5

DRESS

Heavy Marching Order

6

BILLETS

Billets will be cleaned, ready for inspection, by
8.30 pm.

J.D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

Issued at 2. pm.

Copies to 1 H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
2 C.O.
3 H.Q. Mess
4 5 6 O.Cs. A.B.C.D. Coys
7 Q.M.
8 RSM
9.10. 11 War Diary
12 File
13 O.C. D C o.

Appendix "O"

S E C R E T

TO/ O.C. Adj. O.C. A B C D Coys.
RSM War Diary File

August 8th 1918

Reference Map AMIENS 17 1/100,000

Reference Battalion Operation Order No.203

STARTING Road Junction under "U" in ST.FUSCIEN
POINT

ROUTE ST.FUSCIEN – 2nd. Class road to forked road

3/8 of a mile North of "S" in BOVES, across AVRE
by Bridge ¾ ~~mile~~ of a mile North of "S" in BOVES
thence by Platoons by most direct overland route.

TIME Head of column will pass Starting Point at
9.30pm. instead of 10.30pm.

PARADE Will be at 9.15pm. instead of 10.15pm.
(Sgd) *CG Heward*
LtAsstAdj

W.D. OPERATION ORDER No. S E C R E T
by 203
Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO.MC. COPY No 8
TUESDAY AUGUST 6TH, 1918

1
INFORMATION The 7th C.I.Bde. will move from SALEUX Area to
the Forward Area on the night 6th/7th August, and will be
accommodated in BOIS DE GENTELLES until YZ Night.

2
INTENTION The 42nd.Cdn.Battalion,R.H.C. will move from
ST. FUSCIEN to BOIS DE GENTELLES on the night 6th/
7th AUGUST.

3
STARTING POINT will be notified later

4
ROUTE will be notified later.

5
ORDER OF MARCH HQ – A – B – C – D – Coys.

6
TIME Head of column will pass Starting Point at 10.30 pm.

7
PARADE H.Q. and Companies will fall in in front of billets,
ready to move off, at 10.15 pm.

8
DRESS Battle Order – Greatcoats will be carried on the men.

9
MARCH 200 yards between Companies will be maintained on-the
DISCIPLINE march as far as the river AVRE, from this point Units
will proceed by platoons by the most direct overland route.

10
PIPERS Pipers will report to their Companies and H.Q. by 10.15

pm. but will not play beyond BOVES.

Issued at _____		C. G. HEWARD
Copies to 1	O.C.	Lieut.Asst.Adjt.
2	Adjt.	for Capt.Adjt.
3.4.5.6.	O.Cs.A.B.C.D. Coys.	
7.	T.O.	
8.9.10	War Diary	
-11-	File	

W.D

SECRET

To recipients Instructions re offensive No. 1

6th August 1918.

Reference instructions already issued covering
offensive operation No.1.

One Stokes Gun with crew and pack animal
will be attached to each of A and C Companies and will
operate as near as possible to the inner flank of each
Company.

CGHEWARD

Lieut.Asst.Adjt.
for Capt.Adjt.

17th August 1918.

Reference DEMUIN Sheet 1/20,000

Report on operations carried out by the
42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H.C. on the 8th August
1918 at HILL 102.

The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. left the assembly
area GENTELLES TRENCH at 4.50 am. on the morning of the
8th and proceeded along overland route on the northern side of

the AMIENS-ROYE ROAD to the LUCE RIVER which was crossed by 6.30 am. A great deal of difficulty was experienced in finding routes and maintaining direction in the Valley of the LUCE on account of the dense fog and smoke which filled the valley. The routes were also heavily shelled by enemy artillery and we had several casualties. The assembly area in the vicinity of HEIDELBERG TRENCH at about C.5. central was reached at 7.20 am. and the Valley in HAMON WOOD at 7.50 am. On the way up to the GREEN LINE on the high ground in L.12.a. I was met by Lieut. Col. Perks V.C. of the 116th Battalion who informed me that the situation on the left was obscure and that heavy Machine Gun fire was coming from the direction of HILL 102. An enemy aeroplane was also patrolling our lines at a low altitude and directing battery fire on the Battalion, and although fairly heavily shelled we sustained no casualties.

From the valley of HAMON WOOD the Battalion deployed and Companies got into their battle positions on the jumping off point along the GREEN LINE extending from D.13.a.7.8. to D.1.d.2.5. The attack was made with three companies, A on the right, B in the centre, C on the left, while D was held in reserve.

At 8.20 am. the Battalion jumped off and notwithstanding very heavy Machine Gun fire from the direction of Hill 102 the right Company was able to make progress, but the centre and left Companies were held up by a battery of 4.1" Howitzers which were firing at point blank range from the valley in D.7.d. We got into touch with a tank that was operating on the extreme left flank and advised the officer in charge of the situation. At the same time two platoons of the centre Company worked their way round the right flank until they got in rear of the battery when they opened up with Lewis Guns at 100 yards range. The crews immediately surrendered and about 20 tried to get away. These were all wounded or killed, the remainder of the crews numbering about 40 were taken prisoners and the guns captured. A little later on the right flank A Company were held up by a battery of 8 in. Guns firing at point blank range from the valley in L.13.d. Working up to within a short distance the guns were rushed and the crews either killed or taken prisoners. Here 3 8 in. guns, 1 anti tank gun and 4 G.S. limbers with horses were captured.

After this valley was cleaned up and batteries captured the Battalion pressed on over Hill 102, cleaning up a few Machine Guns and taking some prisoners. The final objective on the RED LINE was reached at 10.20 am. Patrols were sent forward across the whole front and opposition was met with in CLAUDE WOOD. Three tanks came to our

P.T.O.

Sheet No.2.

assistance and two Machine Gun crews and a high velocity 4.5 cm. Gun were captured. The Battalion H.Q. was established on the North Western corner of CLAUDE WOOD.

Patrols were then sent forward to the high ground near ST QUENTIN WOOD and about 10.45 am. the enemy were soon coming over the ridge, south of PERONNE WOOD in artillery formation and were lost sight of in the valley. About 11 am. two brigades of cavalry went through us and the Hun was seen retiring over the high ground at 11.05 am. There was still a considerable amount of Machine Gun fire coming from the direction of BEAUCOURT-EN-SANTERRE. At 11.22 am. two more brigades of cavalry went through and shortly after the Machine Gun fire from the direction of BEAUCOURT had ceased. About 8 pm. the 4th Canadian Division started to go through us and at 9 pm. we had orders to move into CLAUDE WOOD where we bivouaced for the night.

I cannot speak too highly of the work of the tanks. They never ceased patrolling the front and whenever any resistance was encountered they immediately came to our aid. They were largely responsible for the success of the whole operation and for our comparatively slight casualties. The supply tanks also gave absolute satisfaction.

Our captures included –

- 3 8 in. Howitzers
- 4 4.1 in. Howitzers
- 1 Anti Tank Gun
- 1 H.V. 4.5 in. Gun
- 1 Granatenwerfer Gun
- 4 Loaded G.S. waggons
- 8 Horses
- 2 Search Lights
- Many Machine Guns
- Estimated 200 prisoners
- Large quantities of ammunition
and equipment

Total casualties all ranks forty two.

Copies of reports received and sent out during the operation are attached.

Royal L. Ewing

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

2

18th August 1918.

Report on operations carried out by the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. on the PARVILLERS SECTOR on the 12th, 13th., 14th., and 15th of August 1918.

On the night of the 11th/12th August the 42nd. Canadian Battalion relieved the 1st/6th Borderers in the old British Front line, PARVILLERS SECTOR, taking over the area between the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS and the ROUVROY-FOUQUESCOURT roads. The advance had been held up at this point owing to the very heavy wire which separated the old British and German front lines. Officers of the 1st/6th Borderers stated that this wire was impenetrable and this statement was borne out by reconnaissances made by our forward companies later. I accordingly got in touch with the O.C. 44th. Canadian Battalion who was established in the town of FOUQUESCOURT and found that an entrance could be made into the old German system of trenches from his northern flank. I accordingly prepared plans and ordered A and D Companies to capture PARVILLERS by a bombing attack from FOUQUESCOURT with B and C Companies in support. The first objective was the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road from old German front line at L.22.b.???. to L.23.c.60.20 and the second objective to mop up the town of PARVILLERS.

About 10 o'clock on the morning of the 12th the two attacking companies commenced to filter through to FOUQUESCOURT following a route along the northern side of the ROUVROY-FOUQUESCOURT Road where there was a certain amount of natural cover. This movement was made by sending men over in pairs at good intervals which was unnoticed by the enemy and it was not until the attack was well under way that they laid down a barrage on this approach. Both attacking Companies were in assembly positions at FOUQUESCOURT by 3 pm. A Company under Capt. Trout was ordered to clear out and occupy the enemy's front and support lines and D Company under Capt. Grafftey to clear and occupy the trench system running from L.18.a.90.90 to the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road at approximately L.23.c.50.20.

At 3.30 pm. (zero hour) the enemy's trenches were entered simultaneously by all parties. Although taken by surprise the enemy fought stubbornly but the garrison consisting chiefly of Machine Gunners was unable to check the combination of our Lewis Gunners, Bombers, Rifle Grenadiers and Bayonet men. Lt. J.D.LeMoine was wounded by A Machine Gun bullet early in the engagement and Pte. Ritchie speedily put the gun and crew out of action by a direct hit with a Mills Grenade. In the support trench Lt. Andrews with No. 4 platoon was advancing with great dash and the work of his first bayonet man Pte. Trowse was outstanding. After hard fighting throughout the whole length of the trenches the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road was reached about 5.30 pm. Heavy casualties were inflicted on the enemy. Many dead were left in the trenches and numerous Machine Guns were captured. One Alsatian prisoner assisted the right company by going along the enemy trench to the objective and

Sheet No.2.

during consolidation helped to repair and put into action a hostile Machine Gun.

Almost immediately the enemy began to counter attack advancing on two sides and endeavouring to cut off our advanced platoons by working his way in from the rear. His Machine Gun fire was extremely heavy and bombs were freely used. When the enemy were observed advancing L/Cpl. Howes and Pte. Legallais on their own initiative took their Lewis Gun sections across the road and advanced some 50 yards to meet the enemy and opened fire. Both guns were kept in action and inflicted heavy casualties until these two O.R. were killed. The crews then returned to the north of the road, bringing their guns with them.

After the signal had been sent up to indicate that the objective was reached C Company under Lieut. Hoyles and B Company under Lieut. Scott proceeded to cross no man's land to occupy the enemy's old front line. The Machine Gun fire was very heavy and B Company suffered about 30 casualties. On arrival in the old German front line Nos. 10 and 11 platoons proceeded up the communication trench and attacked the enemy's support lines. By this time the enemy had brought into action a Light Trench Mortar that was enfilading this communication trench and we suffered casualties. At the same time the enemy who had retired from his positions on the west of the road commenced to fight his way back and succeeded in bringing up some light Machine Guns which enfiladed the trench. By a strong bombing attack supported Lewis Gun fire he was again forced to withdraw. A Company's flank Was again being threatened by a second counter-attack from the enemy and

Nos. 9 and 12 platoons under Lt. Craig and Marand were sent forward to reinforce this part of the line. Lt. Hoyles was killed on making a daring reconnaissance into the enemy's reserve lines.

About 8 o'clock Lt. MacLachlan with a party of about 2 platoons worked his way up the communication trench and succeeded in clearing out the German Support Trench which was still occupied by the enemy, and got in touch with A on the right and B on the left, thus establishing a continuous line along the old German support trench.

About midnight two Companies of the 49th Battalion were sent up as reinforcements.

While A Company was clearing out the front support trenches D Company commenced to bomb down the trenches running from L.18.a.90.98 to L.17.b.52.55 No. 13 platoon under Lt. A.Scott supported by No.14 and 15 under Lt. Morris started from L.18.a.90.90 and No.16 platoon under Capt. Grafftey from L.17.b.52.55 No.13 platoon lost its direction and fought his way down Pelican Alley to approximately

Sheet No.3

G.14.a.20.25. The O.C. 44th. Bn. who was watching the operations seeing that direction had been lost detailed Major D.B.Martyn, M.C. 2 i/c 44th. Canadian Battalion to take as many men as necessary and assist the 42nd Battalion to gain their direction. Major Martyn got in touch with Lt. Scott and the attack recommenced in the direction of PARVILLERS.

In the attack on Pelican Alley Lt. Scott was wounded and shortly afterwards when the attack went towards PARVILLERS Lt. Morris was wounded. Lt. Scott was hit four times in rushing a block where he killed one of the blocking party. As the party was without an officer to direct them Major Martyn took charge and continued the attack with one platoon of the 44th. Battalion under Lieut. Collie to follow up in support. Strong resistance was encountered and all enemy posts and blocks fought with determination and in many cases the attack was pressed home with the bayonet. The fight proceeded with such dash that few Germans succeeded in getting away and we captured two heavy and 5 light Machine Guns and recaptured one hotchkiss gun which the enemy had put into action. Owing to no trench existing between L.10.c.40.80 and L.18.c.15.05 he went around via trench at L.17.d.90.60 and then took trench which led him inside the CHAVATTE salient. While at G.19.c.50.50 he withstood enemy counter attacks of approximately 150 from the direction of SCHWETZ Wood – our Lewis Gunners doing excellent work. After holding a position inside the CHAVATTE salient for one hour Capt. Allan who had been sent for arrived and informed Major Martyn he had taken the wrong trench and Major

Martyn then withdrew and occupied the trenches running from L.17.d.10.05 to L.17.d.80.95 along C.T. to L.18.a.55.?0 and connected up with the 44th Battalion on the left. No.16 platoon proceeded along trench to L.23.a.60.70 and owing to enemy resistance were unable to proceed. A block was put in the trench and D Company formed connection with A Company.

On the morning of August 13th, we cleared the trench running from L.23.a.90.90 L.23.a.60.75 to L.23.L.17.a.30.0? During this operation Lieut. Earnshaw was killed. That evening the 49th Battalion cleared the trench running from L.23.a.60.75 to BLUCHER Wood. On the morning of the 14th, one platoon of A Company and three platoons of C Company under Lieut. MacLachlan relieved the 49th Battalion in this trench. On the morning of the 15th we occupied the line running from L.23.c.95.85 to L.24.a.?5.99 to L.17.d.?0.?? to L.18.c. 45.85 to the railway at L.12.a.65.35. While a redistribution of the garrison was taking place a hostile bombing party attempted to occupy the trench junction at L.23.c.95.85 Lt. MacLachlan with 6 O.Rs. of the 49th Battalion supported by Lt. Crawford and 15 O.Rs. of the 42nd Battalion succeeded in driving the enemy off. No further enemy counter attacks were attempted

Sheet No.4

The Battalion was relieved by the 13th Battalion, R.H.C. on the night 15th/16th.

Our captures included –

About 69 prisoners
18 Machine Guns
2 Hotchkiss Guns
Total casualties O.Rs. 135.

Royal L. Ewing

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Wire Capt. Adjnt.42nd Cdn.Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.

dated 8th Aug. 1918 timed 7.50 am.

42nd Bn. in assembly position on GREEN LINE AAA VERY heavy M.G. Fire from Hill 102 AAA No tanks AAA Enemy aeroplane patrolling our line and directing artillery fire AAA None of ours in sight.

C.O. 42nd Cdn.Bn. to O.C. 49th Cdn. Bn. dated 8th Aug.1918.
timed 7.55 am.

We are assembled just back GREEN LINE D.7.a. over brow of Hill ready to push off at our zero. Understand that situation in front of your right flank is obscure.

Major Topp, C.B., M.C. to 42nd Bn. dated 8.8.18 timed 9.10 am.

Am well over Hill 102 with A Company No one turned up on left or right flanks as far as we can see. Tank and some in fantry are pushing up in right rear of us along main ROYE ROAD. We captured battery of 5.9s, 1 M.G. and 4 G.S. wagons with teams. Several prisoners sent back. A Coy. pushing on. I am taking one platoon across left flank to try and get in touch with 49th Bn.

Capt. Adj. 42nd Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. d. 8th Aug.1918.
timed 10.30 pm.

On final objective RED LINE at 10.20 am AAA Are going into outposts and sending patrols through CLAUDE WOOD AAA Are in touch on the left with the 49th AAA No communication with right flank yet AAA Sending a patrol over on the flank AAA Casualties slight AAA Captured an entire battery crew that were firing at our centre company point blank AAA Known guns captured 10 AAA 4 tanks with us at final objective AAA Enemy entirely demoralised AAA Sent back large number of prisoners majority wounded AAA Bn. H.Q. with front line at approximately D.9.d.6.2. AAA Will advise [advise] permanent H.Q. later.

Lieut. Molson (B Coy) to C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 8.8.18
timed 10.25 am.

Patrol of No.7 platoon worked through CLAUDE WOOD and found no enemy. Then in an easterly direction to approx. the edge of the woods south of BEAUCOURT – EN – SANTERRE enemy Machine Guns firing point blank. Two tanks are attacking woods.

Capt. Adj. 42nd Cdb [Cdn].Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. dated 8.8.18 timed
11.16 am.

Have sent patrol through to high ground near ST QUENTIN WOOD
AAA Situation on right still uncertain at 10.45 am. AAA Enemy
seen coming over high ground in D.11.a. South of PERONNE WOOD
in artillery formation AAA Estimated strength one Bn. AAA 2 Brigades
of Cavalry with whippets went through us and Hun seen retiring on
the double over the high ground at 11.05 am. Still some M.G. fire
from right flank AAA Situation now- well in hand.

Lt. Scott to C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. D.8.8.18. timed 11.15 am.

We are holding RED LINE from approx. D.10.c.05.40 to approx. D.15.a.
95.50. 2 platoons in front Line 2 in close support. Patrol report herewith.
In touch with C Coy. on left and A Coy. about 200 yards in front and
to right of us.

Lieut.Marand to C.O. 42nd Cnd. Bn. d. 8.8.18 timed 11.20 am.

Our position at present roughly D.10.d.7.6. Movement of small
parties seen on road approx. D.18.c.3.3. moving towards us
into Valley. Large parties of men seen returning to BEAUCOURT
along the main road. Approx. 12 riders seen going down far slope
of hill at approx. D.18.a.3.6. Have fired at snipers along hedge at
D.18.b.9.0. Men in extended order just seen crossing road between
D.12.c.3.4. and D. 18.c.8.7. moving into valley in front of us.
Cannot get near enough to the valley to see on account of Machine
Gun on right flank firing at us.

Capt. Adj. 42nd Cdn.Bn. to 7th Cdn.Inf. Bde. D.8.8.18.
timed 11.22 am.

Two more Brigades of cavalry going through at 11.22 am.

Capt. Adj. 42nd Cdn. Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
dated 8.8.18. timed 9.30 pm.

Battalion in CLAUDE WOOD AAA Bn. H.Q. at D. 10.c.1.7.

14.8.18.

Reference Map 66.c. and 66.d.

Report on operation by 42nd Canadian Battalion supported by 44th Bn. between FOQUESCOURT [*FOUQUESCOURT*] and PARVILLERS on afternoon of August 12th.1918.

At 4 pm. on the 12th inst. while with O.C. 44th. Bn. watching operation of 42nd. Bn. we noticed that direction had been lost and flares indicated that the attack had reached G.14.c.20.75. I was detailed by O.C. 44th Bn. to take as many men as necessary and assist the 42nd Bn. and to get the troops in the right firection.

I got in touch with the officer in charge and the attack recommenced in the direction of PARVILLERS In the attack on PELICAN ALLEY one officer of the 42nd was wounded and shortly afterwards, when the attack went towards PARVILLERS the other officer was hit four times in rushing a block where he killed one of the blocking party This was at L.18.a.75.40. As the company were without an officer to direct them I took charge and continued the attack.

I had one platoon, 44th Bn., under Lieut. A Collie follow in support.

Strong resistance was encountered and all enemy posts and blocks fought with determination. In some cases the attack was pressed home with the bayonet. The dash displayed by the 42nd Bn. carried the fight so quickly that few Bosche succeeded in getting away, and we succeeded in capturing 2 heavy and 5 Light Machine Guns and one hotchkiss gun which the enemy was using, and also a number of prisoners – about 40 in all.

Attack. The attack was principally down trench from L.12.a.90.75 – its object was to get in behind PARVILLERS.

We reached a point at approximately L.13b.10.10 and put in a block under Pte. O.G.Swire, 44th Bn.

I then led the partyup trench from L.23.b.52.70 towards LA CHAVATTE, as most heavy fire resistance was coming from this direction. We reached a point at approximately G.19.b.40.70 within the CHAVATTE Salient. Greast commotion was occasioned among the enemy by our appearance and we succeeded in getting about 50 up against a hedge between this point and LA CHAVATTE and moved them down at 75 yards range. Several enemy Machine Guns tried to get into action behind the hedge, but could not maintain fire for any time against our Lewis Guns.

I put up a triple green flare here to show our position and we maintained

ourselves there for one hour.

While occupying this position we engaged two excellent enemy targets in the open, where he at one time came on in several waves between us and SCHWETZ WOOD, attacking towards BLUE HOUSE so that he came under enfilade fire from all our Lewis Guns and rifles. We broke him up completely and he hunted cover, odd men running away in disorder.

About 6.30 pm. a message came to me that our block in L.23 b. was hard pressed, could not hold out and were retiring on the trench junction.

I took two section and reinforced and we succeeded in fighting back the Bosche clear of the trench junction at L.23.b.32.70.

The enemy brought into action at this time a light minenwerfer firing direct fire from L.23.c.95.80.

The enemy succeeded in getting into the trenches in L.17.d. in large numbers and so as no one else of the other people of the 3rd Division attacking in support of us were anywhere in sight I gave orders for the company to withdraw from LA CHAVATTE village and we held the trenches and junctions at L.23.b.52.70 and 18.c.15.05. While here a strong attack came in from BLUCHER Wood and we engaged our third good enemy target in the open with good effect.

At 7.30 the enemy appeared to be on our right and well behind us, so I ordered Capt. Allen who had joined us by this time to take charge at L.23.b.52.70 and hold while I took a small party to get in touch with the platoon of the 44th under Lieut. Collie who was holding a block at PELOPONESE ALLEY and PELICAN ALLEY. We encountered the enemy in between us so I decided to try and get in touch with the 44th right flank at L.17.b. 65.55. We ~~formed the~~ found the enemy had worked into L.17.c.90.90 and only after a very severe fight in which we had two men killed and 3 men wounded did we succeed in getting through to secure the line.

I put in a block at L.17.c.80.80.

I got in touch with No.3 company 44th Bn. right platoon under Sgt. Beckett and ordered him to bring up bombs which he did.

On returning I met the whole party under Capt. Allen retiring towards me. The blocks at L.23.b.52.70 and 18.c.15.05 having been rushed by the enemy in considerable strength I ordered [ordered] everyone to stand steady and then organised a counter attack with the new supply of bombs at hand. Sgt. Beckett 44th and a Sgt. of the 42nd led the left party down the old trench to L.23.b.52.70 and with the remainder I proceeded down trenches in L.17.d. At this time the casualties inflicted on the enemy were very heavy. We succeeded in reaching

approximately L.23.a.90.90 and seeing that if the left party came up speedily the Bosche would be trapped I turned over my party to a Sgt. of the 42nd. and went and had the left party pressed forward quickly.

In this way we succeeded in trapping in dugouts and trenches about 40 of the enemy and captured two more Machine Guns.

Sheet No.3

It was now getting dark and I decided to consolidate and if possible connect up with the 44th front line at L.18.a.90.90.

We were already connected up with their right flank at L.17.b.65.65.

I turned over the line from L.23.a.90.90 to L.17.b.52.70 to two sergeants of the 42nd who were with me throughout and Sgt Beckett in charge of a mixed 42nd and 44th party at L.18.c.15.05.

I then went back to the 44th front line and met Capt. Townsend who reported that Col. Davis had anticipated the necessity of a line connecting up here and had placed all available men under Lieut. Collie and Warner with orders to connect up.

I took another section forward checked up their line as I went along and with these two sections finished connecting up with Sgt. Beckett.

O.C. 44th. arranged a barrage for the area which was very well placed and came on intermittently.

I met O.C. 42nd at Bn. H.Q. at 12 midnight and explained situation.

I then took Capt. Grafftey over the line and turned over portion of the line occupied by 42nd to him and portion occupied by [by] the 44th. to one company of the 49th Bn. which came up.

At 4 am. the line was intact and the men in good position.

There never was greater dash or perseverance shown by men than that by the company of the 42nd. who cleared about 4 miles of net work of trench, fought steadily and at deadly close range for 10 hours and the spirit was such that throughout the men continually cheered.

Every man played his part.

The work of the Lewis Gunners was the best I ever saw and reliability of the two sergeants of the 42nd their of their men was splendid so also was that of other N.C.Os.

The large number of blocks that had to be put in from time to time made a heavy demand on their initiative and ability to stick it. I regret that as I do not know their names I am unable to put forward recommendations I would like.

All the N.C.Os. in the 42nd company repeatedly earned decorations by their good work and many of the men who led rushes from time to time are worthy of special awards.

Sheet No.4

The Lieut. who was wounded rushing the block at L.18.a.70.50 and also the other Lieut. who first led the company down Pelican Alley did very excellent work and are worthy of recommendations for the military cross in my opinion.

Sgd. D.B.Martyn,
Major or [Major]

2nd i/c 44th Bn.

Note. 3 of the captured guns also a recaptured Hotchkiss gun were taken out of the trenches back to the village of FOUQUES COURT by the 44th Bn.

4

Narrative of operations carried out by the 42nd
Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. on August 25th 1918.

At 7 o'clock in the evening of the 25th August the Battalion left Y Camp and proceeded by route march through ARRAS to the first assembly area. This area located immediately east of ARRAS and south of the CEMETERY was reached about midnight. A Company occupied BLANGY trench while B, C and D Companies were distributed in cellars along the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road and the CEMETERY Road.

At 6.45 am. the Battalion received orders to move forward and to take up a position north of the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road

and west of ORANGE HILL, 700 yards in rear of the R.C.R The Battalion went forward in single file via the PELVES overland route and arrived in the new assembly area at 8.40 am. At 10 am. orders were received to go forward to the attack, the 42nd Battalion R.H.C. to be in Brigade reserve and to follow 700 yards in rear of the R.C.R. The Battalion went forward in Artillery formation, A Company on the right, B Company on the left with C Company on the right and D company on the left in close support, and arrived in area immediately west of MONCHY LE PREUX at 11.22 am. when the Battalion was halted in line with the Battalion H.Q. and the reserve Coy. of the R.C.R. A heavy concentration of enemy artillery was put down in this area and enemy batteries were enfilading from both flanks. We, however, sustained no casualties.

At 2.30 pm. an order was received from Brigade that the 2nd Canadian Division had been diverted south and that the 3rd Canadian Division right boundary now became the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road . The 42nd Canadian Battalion was ordered to side slip one thousand yards to the right and to attack and capture a line which for its objective FACTORY Trench on the right and the BOIS DE VERT on the left including the maze of trenches between MONCHY LE PREUX and the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. In this attack the R.C.R. were to cooperate on the left and the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion to protect our right flank on the CAMBRAI road from O.7.d.3.0. to FACTORY Trench. This attack was divided into three distinct tasks –

(a) First task –

A Company from CHERRY and EAST Trenches to feed one platoon into SHIRT Trench and one platoon into FORK Trench each of these platoons being followed by a platoon in support and were ordered to make good SHIRT,SOD,FORK and SPADE Trenches as far as the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. While A Company was clearing out this system of trenches B Company were to work their way down COLOMBUS Trench into PICK communication trench and thus effect an entrance.

(b) Second task –

A Company on the right to clear AVENUE,LADLE,KNIFE and CRESCENT Trenches to SADDLE support inclusive, B Company on the left to bomb out and clear PICK and TAPE and that part of SADDLE Support north of PICK communication trench.

(c) Third task –

C on the right to clear the system of trenches from BADGER Trench inclusive to the GRID LINE between O.8. and O.14 up to and including FACTORY Trench in the final objective and D on the left to clear trenches north of BADGER Trench and to capture the BOIS DE VERT.

Sheet No.2

At 4.30 pm. the advance began through a heavy concentration of hostile artillery. A Company under Major S.J.Mathewson, M.C. moved off across the open, two platoons to FORK and two platoons to SHIRT Trench in O.7. b and d. Bombing parties pushed on down SOD and SPADE trenches. These trenches had been heavily bombarded by our own artillery and in some places almost obliterated. These places were swept by intense Machine Gun fire from the front and right flank as a result of which A Company suffered a number of casualties and the advance was delayed. By 6.30 pm the whole of the first objective had been reached. Major S.J.Mathewson was wounded in the shoulder at this point and Lt. J.B.T.Montgomerie, M.M. took over command of the company. A Company pushed on down AVENUE Trench, LADLE, KNIFE and CRESCENT Trenches after sharp fighting in which four men were killed and 15 wounded. One enemy Machine Gun was captured. The enemy strong point at the junction of HOE Support Trench and POMMEL ALLEY in O.8.c. was found to be strongly manned and a block was put in at KNIFE and CRESCENT Trenches. Posts were also established in GORDON AVENUE near HOE Support trench and in the southern extremity of KNIFE trench. A patrol established touch with the 2nd Division in LOCK trench south of the CAMBRAY Road.

On the left flank B Company under Lt. W.G.Scott moved up PICK avenue under heavy shell fire, starting immediately after A Company. The advance was delayed by heavy Machine Gun fire at the junction of PICK ALLEY with the SUNKEN ROAD in O.8.a. Two men were killed Lt. F.C. Dobell and four men were wounded at this point. The Company was finally able to cross without further casualties by using smoke bombs. By 8.30 pm. SADDLE Support trench was made good from O.8.c.46.80 to VINE AVENUE in O.8.a. after [after] sharp hand to hand fighting. Posts were established well forward in VINE AVENUE PICK AVENUE and TROWELL ALLEY. Fourteen Machine Guns were captured in this trench alone. On the right flank touch could not immediately be secured with A Company owing to the pocket of Germans holding out in the POMMEL ALLEY strong point. Strong pressure was maintained, however, and early on the morning of the 27th August the enemy withdrew and the line was connected up. On the left flank Lt. W. Molson took a patrol to connect up with the Royal Canadian Regiment who were reported to be in CANNISTER AVENUE but found that HILL AVENUE in O.9.c. was still occupied by the enemy who bombed the patrol inflicting four casualties on it and putting a Lewis Gun out of action. A defensive flank was then established from SADDLE Support trench along VINE AVENUE to EAST Trench in O.1.d. where communication was finally established with the R.C.R.

At 10.30 pm. orders were received from the Brigade that the forward Companies were not to advance beyond the old British front line in O.3.b and c. It was then decided to hold the line SADDLE Support KNIFE Trench with posts well forward in all C.Ts. leading towards the enemy line. C Company under Lieut. Gilmour was moved into SPADE and AVENUE Trenches to support A Company

Sheet No.3

on the right and D Company under Capt. W.A. Grafftey was moved to PICK and FORK trenches in support of B Company on the left. All Companies were organised in depth and the Battalion was in this position when the 9th Brigade attacked through it at 5 am. on the 26th August. At least twenty dead Germans were counted in the area and a number of wounded prisoners were captured by us.

The operation was carried out with the utmost dash and gallantry by all ranks and tested the endurance of every man. For six and a half hours the Companies were heavily engaged at close quarters pressing home the attack with bomb and bayonet. There was heavy shelling during the early stages while the whole area was swept by intense Machine Gun fire from the front and both flanks. The attack resulted in the capture of a heavily wired and stubbornly defended enemy trench system to a depth of one thousand yards on a front of nearly a mile and was of vital importance to the success of the operation planned for the following morning.

I wish to specially mention the splendid work of Major C.B. Topp, M.C. who took charge of the forward operation and arranged the connecting up and disposition of the Companies at the final objective.

Our captures included –

- 3 4.1" Howitzers
- 3 77 mm. Field Guns
- 1 Anti Aircraft gun
- 1 3" Trench Gun
- 1 Light Trench Mortar
- 3 Heavy Machine Guns
- 10 Light Machine Guns.

Total casualties, 3 officers, 42 O.R.

Royal L. Ewing

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Report on operations 27th/28th August about
JIGSAW WOOD, ARTILLERY HILL and BOIRY NOTRE DAME

At 1.50 pm. Battalion H.Q. was moved forward and established in SHIRT Trench at approximately 0.7.b.0.5.

On the morning of the 27th instructions were received from Brigade that the Battalion would be prepared to relieve the 52nd Canadian Battalion at the BOIS DE VERT and reconnaissances of the forward area were made.

At 9.30 pm. we received instructions to relieve the 58th Battalion and one company of the 49th. Bn. (E.R.) around the BOIS DU SART and to touch up with the P.P.C.L.I. on the left flank. As this meant a relief in the darkness over unknown country for a distance of 4000 yards which had not previously been reconnoitred nor had even been seen in daylight it entailed many difficulties. The Commanding Officer, Adjutant, Scout Officer and a party of scouts and runners immediately moved over to the H.Q. of the 58th. Battalion arriving there at 1 am. to make the necessary arrangements for the relief. A route from SPADE Trench to HIGHLAND Trench was scouted out and the Battalion crossed overland following a path along the edge of EAST Trench to the MONCHY-PELVES Road and thence by overland route and trenches to thr [the] BOIS DU SART. Relief was completed by 5.10 am. The area taken over was a small narrow salient completely encircling the BOIS DU SART and about 500 yards in front of the Battalions on either flank.

The Battalion was distributed as follows –

C Company on the right – two platoons from approximately 0.4.c.0.5 to the Wood at 0.3.b.6.3. and two platoons along the southern edge of the wood from 0.3.b.6.3. to 0.4.a.4.7. D Company in the centre on the extreme tip of the salient running from 0.4.a.4.7. around the eastern and northern edge of the Wood to junction of TREE and PUG Trenches I.33.c. B Company on the left along TREE and TRUNK trenches and extending over to CANNISTER Trench in the neighbourhood of KEELING COPSE. A Company in support in POODLE Trench.

About 10 am. on the 28th verbal instructions were received advising that PELVES had been captured in the early morning by the 49th Battalion and that a further attack would be launched at 11 am. The 9th Brigade on our right were to capture BOIRY and ARTILLERY HILL and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left to attack and capture JIGSAW WOOD We were to conform with our

flanks.

At 11.30 am. tasks were allotted as follows –

D Company;- to make good in succession the small wood in I.33.d. and I.34.c. and the neck of woods astride the PELVES-BOIRY Road from I.34.c.2.8. to JIGSAW Wood after which a line was to be established along the crest of the ridge to the east from the BOIS DU SART at 0.4.a.30.85. to the eastern corner of JIGSAW Wood at I.34.a.95.10.

B Company;- To make good with one platoon the southern edge of JIGSAW WOOD to protect D Company's left flank until the P.P.C.L.I. were able to clear the northern portion of the Wood.

C Company;- To straighten the line along the eastern end of BOIS DU SART in 0.4.a. connecting up with the right of D Company at 0.4.a.30.85.

A Company;- To remain in support in TRUNK,TREE and PEAR trenches with with the balance of BCompany.

Sheet No.2

From these positions all companies were instructed to conform with the 9th Brigade on the right without further orders. BOIRY Trench and ARTILLERY HILL were laid down as the objectives for the second advance. To carry out the first stage of the operation it was necessary to cross a deep re-entrant cutting into the high ground in a southerly direction from the SCARPE valley and to scale a wooded slope on the eastern side. The whole line of advance was exposed to Machine Gun and artillery fire from the north.

At 11.45 am. Lt. Budd jumped off with his platoon from the south western edge of the BOIS DU SART followed by Lt. Monroe with his platoon. Heavy fire was immediately opened from the left flank and Lt. Budd was wounded. Advantage was taken of some natural cover however, and the first objective was reached with very few casualties. Little resistance was offered by the enemy occupying [*occupying*] the positions and about twenty prisoners some of them wounded were captured. Meanwhile a platoon of B Company under No.418115 Cpl. McMillan, K.L. jumped off from TRUNK Trench and pushed on across the valley and up the slope under intense fire to the edge of JIGSAW WOOD where a position was taken up in shell holes. Sixty five prisoners and several small guns were captured in some artillery dugouts at I.33.b.6.5. by two runners attached to this platoon. Lieut. L.H.Biggar and two linemen went forward with this platoon and established an advanced telephone station from which valuable information was sent to Battalion H.Q.

At 1.40 pm. the line was established along the crest of the ridge in front of BOIS DU SART and JIGSAW WOOD and the advance toward BOIRY Trench and ARTILLERY HILL began. Good progress was made by C Company under Lt. W.J.Kavanagh on the right in spite of considerable artillery and enfilade Machine

Gun fire. BOIRY Trench was occupied shortly before two o'clock by this company Lt. Kavanagh and Sgt. Anderson with small patrol pushed forward into the village and touch was established with A Company of the 58th Canadian Battalion at the crucifix at the western outskirts of BOIRY about 2.15 pm. Lt. Kavanagh kept on pushing forward and succeeded in getting a point close to the N.E. corner of BOIRY when he was wounded by a sniper. The patrol then withdrew to the neighbourhood of the crucifix. On the left flank Lt. Craig and Lt. Munroe with two platoons of D Company advancing in conjunction with the P.P.C.L.I. who had by this time cleared the northern portion of JIGSAW WOOD, met with stubborn opposition from a pill box *and* an old artillery position in which then enemy had established himself with several Machine Guns. Lt. Monroe was severely wounded and a number of other ~~men~~ casualties occurred here. Both D Company and the P.P.C.L.I. on the left were seriously held up. Lewis Guns and snipers however pushed forward with great determination from shell hole to shell hole in the face of intense direct Machine Gun fire making good the ground yard by yard. Covering fire was brought to bare from the right but the enemy held on with exceptional bravery until 877647 Pte. Russell, W.J. worked around and knocked out the guns with bombs.

BOIRY Trench was finally reached shortly after 4 pm.

Sheet No.3

and our line was continuous across the trench with outposts commanding ARTILLERY HILL. We were in touch on the right with A Company of the 58th. Canadian Battalion under Lt. Thorpe at the BOIRY crucifix and on the left with the P.P.C.L.I. forward Companies under Lt. White, M.C. at the junction of BOIRY Trench and the light railway at I.34.b.95.05. The Companies were organised in depth along this line the rear platoons organising a system of shell holes about 300 yards in rear of BOIRY Trench. A and B Companies remained in support along the line of the ridge from BOIS DU SART to JIGSAW WOOD. This area was heavily shelled without cessation for four hours during the afternoon and early evening and a number of casualties occurred here.

At 5.30 pm. our artillery began a heavy shoot on the whole BOIRY Area evidently with faulty information [*information*] as to our position. There was a particularly tense concentration of fire by the heavy artillery in the vicinity of BOIRY CRUCIFIX and ARTILLERY HILL from which places our outposts and the 58th Battalion Company were forced to withdraw after losing several men. The shoot slackened about 6.30 pm but there was short shooting [*shooting*] in the area until 8 o'Clock. The positions from which we withdrew were afterwards reoccupied by us. A verbal message that the enemy was counter attacking was received from the right flank [*flank*] shortly after our artillery opened but the only sign of the enemy that our observers could see were parties of two or three moving about among the group of small ~~small~~ woods at I.36.b. *and* d. No organised advance was made against ARTILLERY HILL at any time after we reached it.

Major C.B. Topp, M.C. who was in charge of the forward operations on BOIRY Trench and the disposal of the Companies, rendered splendid service, making repeated trips to the flanks and throughout the operation his work was outstanding.

On the night of the 28th/29th the Battalion was relieved by the first group Canadian Composite Brigade and it was not till after 6.30 am. on the morning of the 29th that the relief was fully completed. After relief the Battalion moved back into billets in AR-RAS.

Our captures on the 28th included –

4 Heavy Machine Guns
2 Light do.
3 3" Trench Guns
1 Light Trench Mortar

Prisoners captured were estimated at 200. There was no attempt to keep a check on the exact number of prisoners taken as owing to the nature of the fighting men could not be spared for escort duty.

Total casualties for the tour – 5 officers, 104 O.R.

The total captures for the tour included –

3 4.1" Howitzers
3 77 mm. Field Guns
1 Anti Aircraft gun
4 3" Trench Guns

Sheet No.4

Captures continued

12 Heavy Machine Guns
12 Light Machine Guns

Royal L. Ewing

Major

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H.C.

SECRET WAR 42ND. CANADIAN BN. R.H. C. COPY NO. 16
DIARY INSTRUCTIONS FOR OFFENSIVE NO. 1 6.8. 18

1 INTENTION In conformity with the foregoing Instructions for Offensive

No.1, the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion will attack on Z day.

2

OBJECTIVE

Hill 102 and the low ground beyond the hill to about railway running from D.15.d.1.3. through 16.a. and 10.c.

Attacking Companies on reaching railway running from B.16.d.1.3. through 16.a. and 10.c. will push outposts well forward from this line. Later it is the intention to relieve the Outpost Line by the Reserve Company.

On reaching Objective Companies will immediately get in touch with the Units on their Flanks.

3.

ORDER OF ATTACK

A Company on the Right

B " Centre

C " on the Left

D " in close Support

H.Q. with D Company.

4.

BATTALION FLANKS

Final Objective- On the right, Copse at D.15.d.5.7.

On the left, D.10. central, natural feature indicating left boundary ST. QUENTIN WOOD.

5.

BATTALION FRONTAGE

From GREEN LINE will be D. 13.a.50.95 to D. 1.d. 1.5.

6

COMPANY FRONTAGES

A Company – From Right Boundary to D.16.a.0.2.

B Company – Thence to D.10.c.5.0.

C Company – Thence to Left Boundary

D Company will move in rear of B Company

7

PRELIMINARY MOVES-ORDER OF MARCH

From BOIS DE GENTELLES to Area of GENTELLES Trench between ROYE and ?EKNES ALLEY (First Assembly Position)D – A – B – C Coys. H.Q. Distribution in (First Assembly Position) from Right to Left H.Q. C.B.A.D. Coys.

Second move from Assembly Trench to Bridges, thence to Second Assembly Point – C – B – A – D-HQ.

Second Assembly Area will be from point in HEIDELBERG Trench in C.5. c. to Road junction at C.5.c.90.95 with right flank about 300 yards North of ROYE Road.

8.

MOVE FROM 2ND ASSEMBLY TO GREEN LINE

Companies will move independently at _____ hour from this Assembly Point to GREEN LINE, to be in position in GREEN LINE at Zero plus three and three-quarter hours, moving forward to the attack at Zero plus four hours.

9.

ATTACK

Companies will move forward to the attack at Zero plus four

- hours.
- 10
SUGGESTED
FORMATIONS
FOR MOVES
- (It is desirable to keep men in hand)
From First Assembly Position across river – Platoons if possible.
From Second Assembly Position to GREEN LINE – Lines of Platoons, to go into Artillery Formation if the situation demands it.
From GREEN LINE, attacking Companies on two platoon front – first two platoons extended, remainder in small columns (lines of Sections)
- 11
SCOUT
SECTION
- 1 Sniper 1 Observer will be attached to each of A.B.C. Coys and
Balance of the section will move with Headquarters.

J. D. MACLEOD,
Captain/Adjutant

Issued at _____ Copies to /

1 H. Q. 7th C.I.B.	
2.3.4. RCR-PPCLI-??th Bns.	
5. C.O.	12.13.14.15. O. Cs ABCD
6.7. 2 i/c Adjutant	Coys.
8 Scout O.	16.17.18 War Diary
	?? File

7th TMB 19

S E C R E T

EXTRACTS FROM COPY
7 TH CANADIAN INF. BRIGADE INSTRUCTIONS FOR OFFENSIVE ?1
dated 5.8. 18 7

- 1 (a) On a day and at a time to be notified later, the CANADIAN CORPS in co-operation with the FRENCH on the right and the AUSTRALIAN CORPS on the left in an attack on the enemy's positions to the EAST and to the SOUTH EAST of AMIENS, with the object of driving back and defeating the enemy, and so freeing the main line of Railway between AMIENS and PARIS.
- (b) The 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION will be on the right, the 1st CANADIAN DIVISION will be in the centre, and the 2nd CANADIAN DIVISION on the left.
- The 4th CANADIAN DIVISION will be in reserve during the first stage of the attack and will later pass through the 3rd. CANADIAN

(d) The 9th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE, with two Battalions of the 8th CDN. INFANTRY BRIGADE, will capture the enemy's positions up to, and including the GREEN LINE.

The 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will pass through the GREEN LINE AT Zero plus 1 hours, and capture the enemy's position up to, and including, the RED LINE (approximately the line of the TRAMWAY.)

2. Action of the 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE prior to YZ night :-

On the night of the 6th/7th August, The Brigade will move, under orders to be issued later, from the SALEUX Area to the GENTELLES WOOD Area, as shown on the attached map.

3. On YZ night:- The Brigade will move from the GENTELLES WOOD Area, to its assembly areas, as shown in YELLOW on attached Map.

4. At Zero, plus 60 minutes, the Brigade will commence to cross the LUCE RIVER by the Bridges to the SOUTH of the ROYE-AMIENS Road, numbered 49, 50, 52, 53, and 54 respectively.

Units will move from assembly areas in time to commence crossing the river at the following times:-

The R.C.R.	Zero plus 60 Minutes
49th Bn. (E.R.)	ditto 80 "
42nd. Bn. (R.H.C.)	ditto 100 "
P.P.C.L.I.	ditto 150 "

After crossing the River, Battalions will assemble to the WEST and NORTH WEST of HILL 104, in the Areas shown in GREEN on attached Map.

5. The Brigade will attack with three Battalions in line, with one Battalion in Reserve.

The R.C.R. will be on the Right
42nd. Bn. (R.H.C.) will be in the Centre
49th Bn. (E.R.) will be on the Left
P.P.C.L.I. will be in Reserve.

Objectives of Battalions, and inter Battalion boundaries will be as shown on attached Map.

6. Battalions will move independently from the GREEN Assembly Areas, deploy, and attack through the 9th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE from the GREEN LINE.

The attack to commence at Zero plus 4 hours.

7. The R.C.R. and the 49th Bn. will be prepared to assist the 42nd. Bn. in its attack on HILL 102, by bringing flanking fire to bear.

8. The P.P.C.L.I. will follow and approximately 800 yards in the rear of the 42nd. Battalion, but will not advance further than the low ground in D.7.b & d. without orders from Brigade Headquarters, or unless the tactical situation requires

it as provided for in part 9 hereof.

[Note transcriber: there is no part 9]

10. When the RED LINE has been captured, Battalions will consolidate their positions, and organize their defences in depth.
Defences are to be sited so as to ensure the holding of HILL 102, which is the main tactical feature on the Brigade front. Detailed instructions re consolidation will be issued later.

- 2 -

11. One Company from each of the R.C.R., 42nd Bn. and 49th Bn. will be pushed forward from the RED LINE as an outpost.
Battalion Commanders are reminded of the necessity of keeping in touch with the enemy.

ARTILLERY There will be no preliminary bombardment.

The advance to the GREEN LINE will have been covered by a shrapnel barrage, and this barrage will lift from in front of GREEN LINE at Zero plus 4 hours.

There will be no barrage forward of the GREEN LINE.

The advance of the Brigade will be covered by heavy Artillery firing on selected points, and by long range field guns firing H.E.

Forward sections of Field Artillery are being detailed [detailed] to co-operate with the Infantry.

Further instructions re Artillery will be issued later.

TANKS. Instructions will be issued later

MACHINE GUNS Instructions will be issued later.

7TH T.M. The O.C. 7th T.M. Battery will detail two guns to each Battalion.

BATTERY Guns and ammunition at the rate of 54 rounds per gun will be carried on pack mules.

Details of arrangements for further supply of ammunition will be notified later.

COMMUNICATION Instructions will be issued separately.

ADDITIONAL

=====

17

SURPRISE & SECRECY.

- (a) The attack will be a surprise attack.

- (b) It is therefore of vital importance that secrecy should be observed. All possible steps will be taken to prevent the scope or date of operations becoming known except to those taking part. Any Officer, N.C.O., or man, discussing the operation in public or communicating details regarding it to any person, either soldier or civilian, not immediately concerned, will be severely dealt with.
- (c) All troops billeted or bivouaced East of R. CELLE will remain under cover from aerial observation during hours of daylight
All Units and formations will be responsible for the positing of
- (d) *[Note transcriber: what comes next is undecipherable as the last sentence of (c) and the first sentence of (d) seem to have been typed one over the other, it continues as follows]* movement across country during daylight must be kept down.
Low flying Aeroplanes should be dealt with by the normal A-A Lewis Guns: there must be no increase in the volume of fire.
- (e) Existing orders as to use of telephones in the danger area will be rigidly enforced.
- (f) Commanders will ensure that the number of Officers reconnoitring the enemy's positions is limited to those for whom such reconnaissance is essential.
Reconnoitring Officers must not be about in parties larger than two persons, must avoid high ground and O.P.s., and must not display maps in the forward area.
Commanding Officers of Units in front line will report at once to higher authority any disregard of these orders.

19 ANTI-AIRCRAFT PROTECTION Every effort must be made to deal with low flying E.A. A-A Lewis Guns must be mounted at every stage of the advance. Special attention should be paid to A-A protection of Transport, both halted and on the move.

20 LIGHT SIGNALS

The following Light Signals will be employed by:

	<u>SIGNAL</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
(1) <u>Cavalry</u>	White Star turning to Red on a parachute fired from 1" Very Pistol	Advanced Troops of Cavalry are here

- 3 -

LIGHT SIGNALS Cont.

	<u>SIGNAL</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
(11) <u>Australian Corps</u>	(1) No. 32 Grenade GREEN over GREEN over GREEN	S.O.S.
	(2) No. 32 Grenade WHITE over WHITE Over WHITE	Success Signal, i.e. We have reached objective.
(111) <u>Canadian Corps</u>	(1) No. 32 Grenade RED over RED over	(a) S.O.S. (b) we are held up

RED	and cannot advance without help. (c) Enemy is counter attacking.
(2) No. 32 Grenade GREEN over GREEN Over GREEN	(a) Lift your fire. we are going to advance. (b) Stop firing.
(3) Three WHITE Very Lights in quick succession	We are here

(IV) XXXL French Corps. To be notified later.

21. R.A.F.

(a) Contact Patrols

- (i) # 5 Squadron will work with the Canadian Corps.
- (ii) # 8 Squadron will work with Tanks.
- (iii) # 6 Squadron will work with Cavalry
- (iv) These machines will carry special markings as follows:
 - (1) Machine working with Tanks – Black band on middle of right side of tail.
 - (2) Machine working with Cavalry – Two streamers on both inside struts.
 - (3) All contact patrol machines – Rectangular panels 2' x 1' on both lower planes about 3 feet from the fuselage.

(b) Red ground flares will be used.

(c) Bombing & Machine Gun Work

- (i) Approximately a day bombing Squadrons and 4 night bombing Squadrons will be working on the Army front.
- (ii) 22nd. Wing, 8 Squadrons of Scouts, will be evenly distributed over the Army front and employed in engaging ground targets by bombing and machine gunning.
These Scouts will operate in two phases – from Z to Z plus 4 hours – Eastward from the GREEN LINE and from Z plus 4 hours onwards Eastward from the RED LINE.
- (iii) In addition, Scout Squadrons of the 9th Brigade will provide high patrols.

SECRET

Operation Order No.205 Copy No ...
by Major R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
15th August 1918.

1. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved by the 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade night of 15th/16th August 1918.
2. The 13th Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the 42nd Battalion, R.H.C. in the left front PARVILLERS Sector. The Battalion after relief will move to the LE QUESNEL Area.
3. All Companies will pile their Lewis Guns and discs at their respective ration dumps on way out. A guard of one man per gun will be left in charge.
4. 2 guides per platoon and 1 per company H.Q. will report to their respective ration dumps by 9.30 pm.
5. Battalion Scout Section will guide relieving Battalion as far as ration dumps.
6. All captured Machine Guns will be handed over and receipts obtained. Numbers of all guns will be taken.
7. All empty water tins will be sent to ration dumps Filled tins will be handed over as trench stores.
8. Bombs, Rifle Grenad s, [*Grenades*] S.O.S., and all S.A.A. over and above 120 rounds per man will be handed over as trench stores.
9. Completion of relief will be wired to Bn. H.Q. by using the code phrase "Highlander at..." Should line be out runner will be sent.

J.D.Macleod,
Capt.Adjt.

Copies to 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.
13th Bn. R.H.C.
49th Bn. (E.R.)

O.C. A.B.C.D. Cos.

9

SECRET

Operation Order No.204 Copy No.....
by Major R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H. C.
12th August 1918.

Reference Map
66.E. NE.

1. INTENTION To capture PARVILLERS by bombing attack from North flank.
2. 1st OBJECTIVE ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road from old German front line at L.22.b.50.60 to L.23.c.60.20. Mopping up intermediate trench system.
3. 2nd OBJECTIVE To mop up PARVILLERS.
4. TASKS D Company will use 2 platoons to bomb down old German front and support lines running through L.11.c. and d. – 17.a. – 17.c. – 22.b. 28.a. followed by 2 platoons supporting the attack.
A Company to bomb down trenches running through 17.b. - 18.d. – 17.d. – 18.c. – 23.a,b and c and establish posts along trench system from L.18.a.8.9. to L.23.a.6.2. placing blocks in C.Ts. running east from the line and to mop up intermediate trenches.
5. SIGNALS (a) On reaching ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road – Rifle Grenade Green over green over green: (b) On continuing attack from this point – 2 white very [verey] lights fired in quick succession: (c) To indicate progress in PARVILLERS – green over green over green.
6. B Company will take over left front line to be vacated by D Company. B and C Companies will push forward patrols when attack reaches ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road and be prepared to move the Companies across to support the attack.
7. ARTILLERY (a) Lines of fire to be lifted to clear area of first objective and 200 yards S.E. of the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road

(b) A bombardment to be arranged on PARVILLERS to cease on the green over green over green.

8. ZERO HOUR 12 noon 12.8.18 plus or minus zero will be notified to all concerned by the code –"Montreal" plus or minus followed by number of minutes, e.g. Montreal plus 90 will be 1.30 pm.
9. Machine Gun and Stokes arrangements direct.

J.D.Macleod,
Capt. Adjt.

Issued 6 am.

Copies to 7th Canadian Inf Bde.
O.C. P.P.C.L.I. Bn.
O.C. 44th Bn.
O.C. A.B.C.D Cos. 42nd Bn.

RDD.2

10 44th Canadian Infantry

August 18th 1918

Major ROYAL EWING, D.S.O., M.C.,
Commanding 42nd Battalion,
(Royal Highlanders of Canada)

My dear Major,-

Your letter and accompanying recommendations in connection with Major MARTIN's work, received and very much appreciated.

I beg to thank you for the generous attitude taken and take this opportunity of expressing the admiration I felt personally at the way in which all ranks of the 42nd fought.

Major MARTIN, himself, remarked that the spirit of the 42nd was enough to stimulate any Officer to join in the fight.

I can only say, further, that I sincerely trust the bond of friendship formed between the two Battalions will be a lasting one.

Wishing you and the 42nd Battalion the very best of
luck in the future, I am,

Yours Sincerely,

RDDavies
Lieut.-Colonel,
Commanding 44th Canadian Infantry.

MAPS
WAR DIARY
42ND CDN. INF. BATTALION
August 1918.

Official-PUBLICATIONS-Officielles

O.H.M.S.
SERVICE DE SA MAJESTE

WFWILLS

If not properly addressed, please make correction on
envelope and return same to
Deputy Minister, Dept. of National Defence,
Ottawa, Ont.

Si l'adresse est inexacte veuillez rectifier et
retournez au
Sous-ministre, Défense Nationale, Ottawa, Ont.

25M-9-47 (184)
H.Q. 124-15-7

[Map CAMBRAI ROAD left upper quarter.](#)

[Map CAMBRAI ROAD right upper quarter.](#)

[Map CAMBRAI ROAD left lower quarter.](#)

[Map CAMBRAI ROAD right lower quarter.](#)

CAMBRAI ROAD -

11

[Map GOYENCOURT](#)

12

GOYENCOURT

[Map DEMUIN left upper quarter.](#)

[Map DEMUIN right upper quarter.](#)

[Map DEMUIN left lower quarter.](#)

[Map DEMUIN right lower quarter.](#)

DEMUIN

WAR

DIARY

Sun, Sep 1, 1918

The Battalion left ARRAS at 9. am. and proceeded by route march to billets at HERMAVILLE, about nine miles west of ARRAS.

Mon., Sep 2, 1918

General training was commenced. Special classes for the training of Lewis Gunners Scouts, Snipers, N.C.Os. etc. were organised and got under way.

About 11. am. orders were received to be ready to move in one hour's notice. Training was stopped and arrangements were immediately made to evacuate billets. About 3.pm. we received orders to move to the Cemetery Area, just East of ARRAS. Advance parties were hurriedly sent off and the Battalion left HERMAVILLE at 4. pm., arriving in the new area just at dusk. Great difficulty was experienced in finding accommodation. A few of the personnel succeeded in finding some cover in portions of old disused trenches and in shell holes, but the great majority of the Battalion were forced to lie out in the open for the night.

Major E. R. Pease, D.S.O. returned from a month's course at the 3rd. Army School.

Tue., Sep 3, 1918

On the morning of the 3rd. search of the area was made and a certain amount of accommodation was secured. Some dugouts were found along the Eastern edge of the cemetery, and with tents and bivouacs the whole Battalion was got under cover.

Early in the afternoon orders were received from Brigade that the Canadian Corps was continuing its operations and that in all probability the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would move on the 4th September from the cemetery area to the area about VIS-EN-ARTOIS, and that on the following day they would relieve a Brigade of the 4th Division in the line. Reconnaissance parties under the Battalion Scout Officer were sent forward at once. Lieut. A. S. Burke, one of the party, was slightly wounded by shrapnel in the arm and evacuated to hospital.

Wed., Sep 4, 1918

On the morning of the 4th orders were received to relieve the 58th Battalion in the VIS-EN-ARTOIS Area. Companies set out by 3.30pm. and moved up independently, arriving in the new area about 6. pm. and bivouaced in the open for the night.

Lieut. A. Fleming was severely wounded on the Cemetery Road about noon by an enemy shell. He was immediately attended to by the M.O. and sent through to the Field Ambulance. Lieut. Fleming rejoined the Battalion in March 1917. Since that time he had successively carried on as Platoon Commander, Lewis Gun Officer, Bombing Officer and Intelligence Officer, and in all capacities his work was always of the highest order.

Thu., Sep 5, 1918

On the morning of the 5th orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would relieve the 11th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the line on the night 5th/6th September. Boundaries of Brigade Sector, South- X.6.central – W.6.central. Cross Roads at W.d.5.8. along railway to Canal at Q.34.c.8.0. – W.7.a.0.2. – P.31.c.0., North—from Q.23.a.9.7. along road inclusive to the HERMAVILLE RIVER, thence along river to P.21.d.9.0., thence along track to P.34.a.6.0. and West along grid line through P.33.a. and P.32. central. The 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) were to relieve in the outpost line, the R.C.R. the line of resistance and the 42nd. Battalion in Brigade Support, with the P.P.C.L.I. in Brigade Reserve. Advance parties were immediately sent forward and Areas allotted to Companies. The Battalion moved in the afternoon, arriving in the new area at about 6.30pm. This was situated West of CAGNICOURT and South of the ARRAS-CAMBRAÏ Road. A.B. and C Companies were distributed in parts of the BUISSEY SWITCH Line: D Company in the Communication Trench running from the BUISSEY SWITCH towards CAGNICOURT, and Battalion Headquarters in old gun pits at approximately P.33.d.30.50.

Fri., Sep 6, Sat, Sep 7, Sun, Sep 8, 1918

The Battalion remained in Brigade Support.

Captain E. B. Finley, M.C., Captain C.S. Martin, M.C. and Lieuts. W. C. Baber, H.C. Bladwin, , H. Everett, F.W.P. Hawkes, J. R. Hubbard, P.P. Hutchison, B.C. Salter, and J. W. Cave reported and were taken on the strength of the Battalion.

During these three days parties of Officers and O.R. were sent forward to reconnoitre the outpost line and main line of resistance in the SAUCHY-CAUCHY, *Area* and to get familiar with the Forward Areas.

Mon., Sep 9, 1918

On the morning of the 9th orders were received that the Battalion would relieve the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) in the Outpost Line opposite SAUCHY-CAUCHY.

The Battalion commenced to move about 7. O'Clock by overland route across the AR-RAS-CAMBRAY Road and towards HAUCOURT. Guides from the 49th Battalion were picked up near their Headquarters.

A and B Companies took over the Outpost Observation Line, A Company on the right, B Company on the left. C Company was in support and D Company in Reserve in OS-VILLERS FARM. Relief was completed about 12.20am. The night was wet and pitch black and it was consequently impossible to get exact dispositions.

Tue., Sep 10, 1918

At 1.20am. on the morning of the 10th our Outpost in the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY-CAUCHY was attacked by a party of the enemy. This attack was repulsed and the enemy were forced to withdraw to the CANAL DU NORD. The front line and support Companies were all disposed on the reverse slope facing the CANAL DU NORD. As this slope was in direct observation from the enemy, movement by day was impossible, even the slightest bit of movement drawing artillery and machine gun fire.

At dusk on the night of the 10th the enemy again attacked our position opposite the BRICK KILN and after expending our supply of bombs and ammunition our garrison was forced to withdraw. (A report of this attack is appended). In addition to the attack on the BRICK KILN a party of the enemy also attempted to capture our post at MILL COPSE at approximately S.23.a.0.3. Some hand grenades were exchanged but the enemy was driven off and he retired towards the Canal. A post was pushed out and established at approximately S.23.a.3.0. and a further post at the Southern end of the Copse in S.22.d.9.8. The area between OSVILLERS FARM and Battalion Headquarters was heavily shelled during the night with 77.mm., 4.1s and 5.9s. but no casualties were suffered.

Wed., Sep 11, 1918

On the 11th plans were prepared to carry out a minor operation after dusk with the intention of driving the enemy out of SAUCHY-CAUCHY and to establish three posts on the Western bank of the Canal at approximately Q 28.d.5.0. Bridgehead at Q.34.b.4.7. and at Q.34.b.2.0. Arrangements were made with the Medium Trench Mortars to fire 15 rounds into the BRICK KILN and to cease fire as soon as the barrage opened, and with the artillery to place

a barrage of 18 pounders on the S.O.S. line on the Brigade frontage and to shoot up selected targets with 4.5 Hows. The barrage opened about 9. 30pm. Posts were pushed out and established according to plan but on account of lack of time owing to relief we were unable to mop up the BRICK KILN (A full report of this operation is appended). Immediately after the operation was completed the Battalion was relieved by the 1st. C.M.R. Battalion,; relief was completed about 3. am., and the Battalion moved back into the Cave in O.29.b. East of VIS-EN-ARTOIS.

Our casualties for the tour were 3 O.R. KILLED 24 OR WOUNDED.

On the afternoon of the 11th Brig.Gen. H.M.Dyer ,CMG., DSO. called at Battalion Headquarters to bid goodbye to the Battalion before leaving to England to take command of the Reserve Depot in Seaford. The departure of Gen. Dyer from the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade occasioned the most widespread and sincere regret. Not only had his leadership won the admiration of the men and officers under his command, but his personality had endeared him to all who knew him. His sound and balanced judgement – his sure appreciation of a military situation – together with his keen sense of the supreme value of human life made him a leader in whom we were able to impose implicate trust, while his genial and kindly spirit – his deep interest in the life of his men and his personal gallantry in action won for him, in the affectionate admiration of all, an endearing place.

Lieut. Col. J. A. Clark DSO., O.C. 72nd. Battalion, Seaforth Highlanders, took over the Brigade. Col. Clark comes with a fine record of service and we feel confident that the Brigade will achieve further successes under his leadership.

Thu., Sep 12 to Wed., Sep 18, 1918

The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve and during these six days was billeted in the Cave. This cave was tunnelled out of the chalk, had about 60 feet of cover and ample accommodation for a Battalion. Owing to its depth it was very damp and generally very depressing. The entrances opened on to the highest part of the ground and were in full view of the enemy. On account of this movement on the surface was placed out of bounds. A certain amount of training, however, was carried on. Companies drifted out in small parties and moved down into the valley East of CHERISY, where they assembled and carried on with some general training. Specialist classes for Lewis Gunners and Scouts were also carried on daily and a large amount of salvage was collected by small parties which were well distributed over the whole area. During the six days in the Cave 78 OR reinforcements reported to the Battalion.

12th. On the 12th Lieut. G. L. Ogilvie, who had been attached to Brigade for some months, proceeded to England as Orderly Officer to Brig.Gen. Dyer.

13th. Major *General* L.J.Lipsett, C.B., CMG., on leaving the 3rd. Canadian Division to take command of the 4th Imperial Division, visited the Battalion to say goodbye to the Officers and N.C.O s. Gen. Lipsett has been in command of the 3rd. Canadian Division for over two years and his loss will be keenly felt by all ranks.

15th The undermentioned decorations appeared in Divisional Orders on this date. These decorations were awarded to O.R. for their work North of AMIENS August 8th and at PARVILLERS August 12th.

15th. Cont.

BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL

145373 CSM. J. T. Lush, MM 132028 CSM. E.W. Hopkins,MM. 441043 Sgt. J.A. Vogel, MM.

MILITARY MEDAL

193293 A/Cpl. E.M. McKenzie,	418443 Sgt. J. Ferguson	132421 Pte. F.C. Stapley,
[192293]		
3080074 Pte. G.H. Gray,	2075466 Pte. J.J. Andrews	418116 Cpl. K.L. McMillan,
		[418115] [MacMillan]
192813 " T. Murphy,	408143 Cpl. M.G Lippingwell,	132430 Pte. A. Yeudall,
418993 LC. C. Oakes,	193246 " J.D. Little,	192550 Sgt. K.[H] Matthews
901631 Cpl. H.F. Fraser,	132205 Pte. G. Rose,	133269 Sgt. J. Grevy,
144759 Pte. A. Grimmond,	132897 Sgt. W.E. Reed	441001 Sgt. G.W. Thompson,
	[Grimmond]	[440101]
2075470 " A. MacLean,	418995 " J.S. Brown,	132865 Pte. W. Baker,
1030241 " S.N. Greenlaw,	748371 Cpl. W.P.Adams	408036 Sgt. A.R. McEwan,
		[418036] [MacEwen]

Thu., Sep 19, 1918

On the 19th the 7th Brigade moved to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area West of ARRAS. The Battalion left the cave by small parties in the morning and assembled at the Transport Lines near CHERISY where dinner was served. About four O' Clock in the afternoon we moved by route march to CROISILLES where we entrained. We left CROISILLES at 6 O' Clock and were much interested in passing through, on a broad gauge railway, the German trenches and No-mans-land and [land] in the NEUVILLE VITASSE and MERCATEL Sectors which we had held during the month of July. We detrained at DAINVILLE at dusk and marched into the town where we occupied billets.

Fri., Sep 20 to Wed., Sep 25, 1918

The Battalion was in rest in DAINVILLE. Intensive training was carried on during this period including general training, range and field practices, and specialists classes for Lewis Gunners, Scouts, Junior N.C.Os. Signallers etc.

On the 25th Lieut. E. G. Sheperd reported to the Battalion and was taken on strength.

Thu., Sep 26 to Mon., Sep 30, 1918

A full report of the move from DAINVILLE to the Concentration Area and subsequent Operations is attached.

On the early morning of the 29th, while marching to the Assembly Area east of RAIL-LENCOURT, Lieut. W. Molson was severely wounded by shell fire. During the attack on the morning of the 29th Captain C. S. Martin, M.C. was instantly killed by enemy machine gun fire while leading a party against an hostile machine gun. Captain Martin joined the Battalion in June 1916, won the Military Cross for a daring raid on New Year's morning 1917, and was wounded at PASSCHENDAELE, the later part of October 1917. He had only returned to France a few weeks previous to his death. Lieuts. D. B. Gilmour and T. West were also killed during the attack on the morning of the 29th. Both these officers were stricken down by enemy machine gun fire while bravely leading their Companies to the attack on the Railway Embankment North of CAMBRAI. Lieut. F. D. P. Hawkes was also killed during this engagement. This officer was an old N.C.O. and an original member of the Battalion and had just rejoined the Battalion prior to this engagement.

Casualties for the month were:-

	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>	<u>MISSING</u>
OFFICERS:	Captain C. S. Martin, M.C. Lieut. D. B. Gilmour, " J. R. Hubbard, " F.D.P. Hawkes, " T. West,	Lieut. J.A.P. Haydon, (at duty) " A. Fleming, " A.P. Burke, Captain H.B. Trout, Major E.R. Pease, DSO " C.B. Topp, MC Lieut. W. Molson, " M.K. Craig, " W.G. Scott, " B.C. Salter, " C.L. Smart, " B. C. Hutchison,	
OTHER RANKS	<u>57</u>	<u>260</u>	<u>3</u>

Notification of the award of decorations to OR as under for their work during the Operations at MONCHY le PREUX and BOIRY Notre Dame appeared in Divisional Routine Orders of the 27th inst:-

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

418034 Cpl. Ward, MM. H.J. 132241 Sgt. Smith, MM. G. 126960 Pte. Lambier, MM. F.

The
MILITARY MEDAL

283115 Pte. Taylor, A.W.	164209 Pte. Walters, E.	133210 " Mackay,	A.S.
418867 L/Sgt. Sutton, A.	841030 L/C Giles, R.A.	902249 " Kiely,	J. [J.]
192980 L/C. Aspin, J.D. [B]	288898 Pte. Hamilton, J.S.	132285 " Glen,	A.
	[228898]	[J.B.]	
754717 Pte. O'Brien, E.	132286 L/Sgt. Ferguson, A.	418472 Sgt. Fetterly,	O.J.
	[132276]		
901985 L/C Kennedy, A.D.	418423 Pte. Craig, J.E.	204085 Pte. Brown,	A.
		[204083]	
919243 Pte. Stapley, D.G.	132731 " Docherty, J.	814923 " Hobbs,	W.
	[919249]		
192571 " McNeill, A.	754617 A/Cpl. McPhee, W.J.	133222 L/C Wager,	J. [H.]
163488 L/C Hicks, W.	408130 L/Sgt. King, A.		

The following congratulatory messages were received:-

FROM/ Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur W. Currie, KCB, K.C.M.G., Cmdg. Canadian Corps.

"I most cordially congratulate the 3rd. Canadian Division for the splendidly successful fighting they have done in the last four days AAA They have shown fighting qualities of the highest order"

FROM/Major General F.O.W. Loomis, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Cmdg. 3rd. Cdn. Division

"I wish to express appreciation for the work done by the different units of the Division, and by the Formations, co-operating with us, during the past four days fighting. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade under Brig.-General J.A. CLARKE, DSO. and the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade under Brig-General D.M.ORMOND, DSO., have maintained their organization through difficult and sustained fighting. The work of the 116th Canadian Infantry Battalion has been especially fine.

The 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade had demonstrated to a marked extent [*extent*] the valuable qualities of patience and care of details while supporting attacks and making them. The 3rd. Canadian Divisional Artillery, the 5th Canadian Divisional Artillery, the 8th Army Brigade, C.F.A. and 8th Brigade R.G.A., all under the Command of Brig-General J. S. STEWART, DSO, C.R.A. have supported the Infantry splendidly, forward sections have done especially well.

The gallant work of the Battalion Commanders and their Officers, the Brigade Commanders and their Staffs, the Divisional Staff, and the Division Signals, and the organization and Team work of the Division as a whole, the maintenance of supplies and communications throughout the prolonged fight have impressed me profoundly, and have aroused my deep admiration..

The Division has been successful.

My congratulations and thanks to all ranks"

2.10.18.

FROM/Brig-General J. A. CLARK, D.S.O., Cmdg. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade,

"I wish to express appreciation of the fighting qualities displayed by all Units of the Brigade during the recent operation. The cheerful manner in which Commanding Officers accepted new tasks, and the untiring efforts of all ranks [*ranks*] to accomplish them, was most gratifying. In four attacks the Brigade defeated eleven enemy Regiments, and succeeded in taking many strong positions against overwhelming odds. My one conclusion is that no officer has ever had finer troops to command.

You have all suffered most regrettable casualties. I trust that the memory of the fallen may inspire us all with fresh determination to avenge our losses when opportunity offers, and to exert ourselves to maintain the fine fighting spirit which has won for this Brigade it's enviable record."

4.10.18.

Prior to leaving the Division Major-General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., issued the following Special Order:-

Bn. R.H.C. in the VIS-en-ARTOIS Area in the afternoon of the 4th September.

3.

ORDER OF MARCH

Companies will move up independently and will leave present area as soon after 3. 30pm. as possible.

4.

[R]OUTE

via ST.LAURENT-BLANGY – TILLOY Road to ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road, thence along Dry Weather Route alongside CAMBRAI Road, to VIS-en-ARTOIS.

5.

ADVANCE PARTIES & GUIDES

As already detailed.

6.

TRANSPORT

Lewis Gun limbers and kitchens will move with their Companies, remainder of transport will move in rear of the Battalion.

7.

BAGGAGE

Officers Trench Kits etc. will be taken forward on Lewis Gun limbers.

J. D. MACLEOD,

7 thC.IBrigade
Copies to O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
QM. TO. MO. O. Cs. Companies
Scout O Sig. O. RSM.

Captain/Adjutant.

SECRET
OPERATION ORDER NO.207
BY
MAJOR R.L.HEWING D.S.O. M.C.
CMDG.42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION. R.H.C.

SEPTEMBER 5th, 1918.

1

INFORMATION The 7th Cdn.Inf.Brigade will relieve the 11th.Cdn.Inf.Brigade in the line night 5th/6th September.

Boundaries of Brig de [Brigade] sector will be as follows:-

SOUTH X.6.central- W.6.central-Cross Roads at W.5.d.7.8. along Railway
~~RAILWAY~~ RAILWAY (to right Division) to Canal at P.34.c.8.0. – W.7.a.0.2. –
P.31.?o.o. [0.0.]

NORTH Q.23.a.?7. along Road inclusive to NIRONDELLE [Hirondelle]
RIVER thence along River to P.23.d.9.0. then along track to

P.34.a.6.0.thence WEST along GRID line through P.33 and P.32.
central

2

INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Battalion.R.H.C. will move into Brigade support and will occupy the area V.3.and V.4. (North of Bo? dray) P.33.d. and P.34.C.and.D. (SOUTH of ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road)

3

DISPOSITIONS Companies will take over areas allotted to advance parties this morning.

4

PARADE The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 5.p.m.

5

ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters-A.Coy B.Coy C.Coy D.Coy
 Intervals of 200 yds will be maintained between Companies
 And 50 yds between Platoons.

6

TRANSPORT Lewis Gun limbers will go forward with their Companies and the Tool Wagon with Headquarters Details.

7

BAGGAGE Officers Trench Kits etc.will be taken forward on Lewis Gun limbers.

8

RATIONS & WATER Will be sent on later in the afternoon.

9

BATTN.HQRS. on completion of relief will be at approx.P.33.d.30.50.

10

REPORTS Completion of relief will be reported [*reported*] to Bn.HQ.by runner.

Copies to 7th.Cdn.Inf.Bde.
 Adjutant.
 O.Cs.A.B.C.D.Coys
 HQ.Mess
 QM. T.O.

J.D.MACLEOD
Capt.Adjt.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.208

by Major R.L.H.Ewing,D.S.O., M.C.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref. Map – 51.b.S.E.1/ 2?,000

September 9th. 1918.

1. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will relieve the 49th. Canadian Battalion (E.R.) in the outpose [*outpost*] line opposite SAUCHY-CAUCHY on the night 9th/ 10th September.
2. Companies of the 42nd Canadian Battalion will relieve corresponding Companies of the 49th. Battalion.
3. Advance parties as already detailed.
4. Guides – 1 O.R. per platoon from the 49th. Battalion and 1 O.R. per platoon from the advance party of the 42nd Battalion will act a joint guides. They will meet the Battalion at end of SUNKEN Road at approximately Q.31.a.90.95.
5. Lewis Guns and discs, bombs, extra bandoliers etc. will be carried in on themen.
6. Rations will be distributed this afternoon and carried in on themen.
7. Water will be delivered to Company Dumps by Transport.
8. One limber will report at Battalion H.Q. at 7.15 pm. to take forward officers Trench kits and mess supplies.
9. All bivvies will be turned over to incoming Battalion and receipt taken.
10. Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion H.Q. by wire by using the code phrase "Your O.O. No.208 received at"
11. On completion of relief Battalion HQ. will be at Q.31.b.60.90.

Sgd. J.D.MacLeod,
Captain Adjt.

Copies to – 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade
49th Battalion (E.R.)

O.C. A.B.C.D. Companies.
Q.M.
File.

O. O. 209.

SECRET

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Copy No....
Reference Map - Tuesday, September 10th 1918.
51.B. 1/40,000

1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved on the night 11th/12th September by elements of the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

2.
INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will be relieved in the Outpost Zone by the 1st C.M.R. Battalion and on completion of relief will move back to the area vacated by the 5th C.M.R. Bn. in O.29.b.

3.
RELIEF Companies of the 1st C.M.R. Battalion will relieve corresponding Companies of the 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

4.
GUIDES 2 per platoon and 2 for Battalion Headquarters will meet incoming Battalion at end of sunken road, about 100 yards West of Battalion Headquarters, at approximately Q.31.a.90.95 They will report to Lieut, [Lieut] A.B. Proven at Battalion H.Q. as soon after 8.15 pm. as possible.

5.
ADVANCE PARTY Advance Party be furnished from rear Details and will be responsible for taking over the area vacated by the 5th C.M.R. Battalion, and for guiding in Companies.

6.
TRENCH STORES 30 Water Tins per company and 30 per Headquarters will be handed over to incoming Battalion, Quartermaster will arrange to draw a similar number from relieving Battalion.

All bombs, reserve S.A.A. additional bandoliers, tools aeroplane photos etc. will be handed over as Trench Stores and receipts taken.

Receipts will be at Battn. H.Q. by 9 am. September 12th.

7.
LEWIS GUN LIMBERS Lewis Gun limbers for B and D Cos. will report to Company Ration Dump, and limbers for A and C Cos. at Battalion H.Q. One

man per crew will be left in charge of the gun and be responsible for loading.

8.

TRANSPORT

A limber will report at Battalion H.Q. by 9.30 pm. for H.Q. officers' trench kits, mess supplies, Orderly Room boxes etc.

Company Officers' baggage will go out on their Lewis Gun limbers.

9.

REPORTS

Companies will report completion of relief by wire to Battalion H.Q. using the code phrase "Your O.O.No.209 received at.....", and will report completion of move to new Battalion Headquarters at O.29.b.9.2. by runner.

Sgd. J.D.MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant

Issued at.....

Copy No.1 to H.Q. 7th C.I.B. 3 to O.C. A Coy.

P.T.O.

Distribution con d.

2 to O.C. 1st C.M.R. Bn. 4 to O.C. B Coy
5 to C
6 D
7 Rear 42nd Bn. H.Q.
8 to 10 War Diary
11 File.

2

REPORT ON ENEMY ATTACK ON BRICK KILN ON THE NIGHT
10TH SEPTEMBER, 1918

On the night 9th/10th September, 1918, the Battalion relieved the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. in the Outpost Line opposite SAUCHY CAUCHY. Outposts taken over from the 49th Cdn. Battalion are shown in

Red on attached map. It was a wet, pitch black night, and Companies were unable to get exact locations of the Outposts which accounted for certain errors in the disposition which was forwarded to Brigade on the morning of the 10th. Relief was completed at 12.20am. and about 1.20am. our position in the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY was attacked by about fifteen to twenty of the enemy. This attack was repulsed and the enemy were forced to withdraw to the CANAL DU NORD.

At dusk on the night of September 10th the enemy attacked our position in the BRICK KILN in strength, and after hand-to-hand fighting, during which our supply of bombs and ammunition was expended, our garrison was forced to withdraw to a position along the Light Railway in Q.28.c. and Q.34.a. The attack was made by two distinct parties – one making its way up the West bank of the Canal and crawling into gun pits between the Canal and the BRICK KILN, the other working its way along the bed of the Canal under cover and getting an entrance into the sunken road in 28.d. The attack was launched under cover of a very heavy barrage of machine guns and rifle grenades. A large number of flares were put up around the BRICK KILN and cylindrical sticks thrown in through the openings in the Eastern wall.

Another platoon was sent up with supplies of bombs and rifle grenades to reinforce the platoon which had withdrawn to the Light Railway, and an attempt was made to reoccupy the KILN. Owing to intense machine gun fire and the nature of the ground it was impossible to get across the open country. The enemy appeared to hold the position in strength and had at least three machine guns on the Eastern edge of the Canal.

Lieut.Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

13.9.18

3

Account of the operations in vicinity of
SAUCHY CAUCHY Night of 11th/13th
September 1918.

Ref. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Operation Order No.210 – 11.9.18.
Reference Map – MILL COPSE.

Personnel engaged.

Three parties participated – No.1 party of two sections under Lieut. West – No.2 party of 1 platoon under Lieut. Hutchison and No.3 party of two sections under Lieut. Andrews.

Party No.1 moving from Q.28.d.1.6. was entirely successful and established strong commanding posts at Q.28.d.50.20 and Q.28.d.50.30. The former is our Lewis Gun post and entirely controls the crossing at the BRIDGE at Q.34.b.45.65 two enemy parties of eight and ten were engaged with bombs and Lewis Guns at the BRIDGE HEAD and driven after a stiff fight into the canal. A number of enemy were seen to fall into the canal. – three or four men were wounded with cylindrical sticks. Other individual movement was seen near the BRIDGE HEAD on the opposite banks and engaged by our fire. The conclusion drawn is that the crossing was held by a strong garrison.

Party No.2 made a frontal attack on the BRICK KILN and attacked trench immediately west of BRIDGE HEAD, but met with determined Machine Gun resistance and were unable to mop up the kiln as planned, but kept garrison engaged by fire until parties one and three had made good their posts, when one half platoon established itself ~~West~~ East of KILN in the SAUCHY CAUCHY Road and the other half platoon immediately west and behind railway embankment. These two positions entirely cover the north and west of the KILN and the adjoining trenches.

Party No. 3 was quite successful moving from Q.34.c.central under heavy enemy artillery and proceeded to Q.34.d.1.9. and Q.34.b.25.30 where strong posts were established. This party did not get into close contact with the enemy but experienced heavy fire and observed considerable enemy movement on opposite bank of canal.

Owing to lack of time , the need of completing the relief before daylight and the difficulties of communication it was impossible to mop up the enemy remaining in the KILN.

The front on which the operation took place is very much exposed to Machine Gun and sniping from the buildings and emplacements on the rising opposite slope. Ground in immediate vicinity of canal does not lend itself to day posts since cover is very limited and slightest movement impossible

Sheet No.2.

As night positions, posts established with substantial garrisons can be easily be maintained and effectively command canal. Details of canal which was carefully reconnoitered by Lieut. Andrews and Lieut. West are attached. BRICK KILN is a very conspicuous position with openings on the enemy side and does not afford protection for any garrison. Present posts however, completely control approaches

to and from the KILN.

Casualties one killed and six wounded.

The artillery barrage was very satisfactory and entirely neutralised enemy Machine Guns during the intense period.

The officers of the relieving Company of C.M.R. were taken all over the new positions and the situation thoroughly explained and were quite satisfied with the situation. Major Willcock acting 2 i/c visited the posts on the flank after the relief was complete and personally explained the situation to platoon commanders and N.C.Os. in charge of the various posts. A wire was sent to Brigade giving location of the posts established and a disposition sketch was handed to the 1st C.M.R.

Lt. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

NOTES ON CANAL DU NORD.

On the night of the 11th and 12th September two posts in the outpost line of "A" Company were established at Q.28.d.5.2. and Q.28.d.5.3. The latter post was originally established at Q.34.b.35.80 from which point by the aid of flares a view was obtained of the canal in the neighbourhood of the bridge at Q.34.b.5.7. The canal at this point appears to be about 15 feet deep and has a maximum width of 60 feet at the top sloping to 25 feet bed. There is little if any, water in the canal, and much mud on the banks by the water. The banks of the canal have a gradual slope but are in an unfinished state and appear to have been terraced and excavated while there were planks or boards lying on the mud or floating on the water. The bridge was demolished having been broken in the middle when the two halves fell into the canal with the bank ends still resting on the abutments. The approach to the east side of the bridge is from a road which is raised at this point. The canal bank has been slightly raised above the general ground level.

T. West, Lieut.
42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

On the night of September 11th/12. I established a Lewis Gun post where the road touches the canal at Q.34.d.10.90 and one about two hundred yards north of on the road at approximately Q.34.b.25.30.

A cross section of the canal between these two points is roughly like this –

The road is sunken about 4 – 5 feet. The bottom of the canal where the water is is about thirty feet across. The sides have a fairly steep slope and it is about twenty feet from the top of the bank to the water.

I saw no bridge on crossing but it was pretty dark and I could not see far to the right or left.

There was considerable enemy movement on the opposite bank.

Sgd. Lieut. A.E.Andrews,
42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

S E C R E T

Ref.Map 42ND CANADIAN BATTALION, R.H.C. COPY NO _____
51.B. S.E. -- OPERATION ORDER NO.210
1/20,000 WEDNESDAY,SEPTEMBER 11TH 18

1.--- ---

INFORMATION The enemy are holding the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY and the Bridge heads on the Western Bank of the Canal in 34.b.

2.

INTENTION To drive enemy out of SAUCHY CAUCHY and to establish three posts(with Lewis Guns) on the Western Bank of the Canal at approximately Q.28.d.5.0. – Bridge headsat Q.34.b.4.7. and Q.34.b.2.0. -- - -

3.

TASKS (a) 1 Platoon of A Company in position along Railway Embankment astride SAUCHY CAUCHY Road in 28.central will push forward and make good the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY and occupy it until posts are established in front when they will be withdrawn to former position.
(b) 1 Platoon A Company(less 2 Sections) will move from position in Q.2.d.25.40 and push down the Canal bank, taking up a post when near 22.d.25.?? where they will establish a post and cut off enemy attempting to cross Bridge head at Q.34.b.40.70.
(c) --Right platoon of A Company under Lieut. Andrews will be responsible for establishing two posts of a Section each at 34.b.4?.70. and 34.b.20.0?. which will be held.

(d)-- -- B Company will push forward 1 Section from Platoon in -Q.2.central and occupy post at 22.d.25.40 vacated by A Company.

4.

ARTILLERY As per schedule attached.

5.

MEDIUM At 11.45pm. Medium T.Ms. will fire 15 rounds at the BRICK KILN.
TRENCH MORTARS They will cease firing as soon as barrage opens.

6.

HEAVY As per arrangements.

TRENCH MORTARS

7.

MACHINE GUNS Machine Guns will open with Artillery barrage on targets as arranged.

8.

ZERO HOUR will depend on the light and will be advised to the Artillery direct. Code word will be "CRASH"
Signal to commence Operations will be [be] opening of barrage.

9.

Immediately situation is clear and posts established i/e posts will send a messenger to report to Lieut. R. Willcock at O.P. who will then be sent to Company H.Q. to act as guides for the incoming Company.

J.D.MacLeod
Captain/Adjutant

Copy No. 1 H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
2 9th Artillery Bde
3 O.C. Divisional Trench Mortar Battery
4 O.C. 3rd Machine Gun Bn.
4 5 6 7 O.Cs. O.[A]B.C.D. Coys
--- 8 File
9 10 11 War Diary.

ARTILLERY BARRAGE

18 Pounders of the 9th [9th] Brigade C.F.A. with 2 Batteries of the 10th Brigade C.F.A. will fire on the S.O.S. Line on the Brigade frontage.

RATE OF FIRE

0 to 0 plus 5 - Intense
plus 5 " plus 8 - 3 rounds per minute

Plus 8 "	plus 11-	Intense
Plus 11"	plus 20-	Slow rate and stop.

4.5 Hows' will fire on the following selected targets:-

- 1 How' on road junction at Q.20.c.30.00 and will search 30 yds. up road.
- 1 How' on road junction at Q.35.a.25.68.
- 2 Hows' on road junction at Q.35.a.17.40
- 2 Hows' on Copse at Q.34.d.90.90

In addition the 4,5 Howitzers will open up at 7. 45pm.

and keep a slight harassing fire on roads and approaches until Zero.

11.9.18

42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION, RHC. S E C R E T
 REF. MAPS. / OPERATION ORDER # 212 COPY NO. 17
51. B. 1/40,000 -LENS 11, 1/100,000 WEDNESDAY, SEPTEMBER 18TH, 1918.

1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by train and by march route to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area on the 19th September. On arrival in new area the Brigade will come into Corps Reserve.
2.
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from the Cave in O.24.b. to billets in DAINVILLE. Entraining at CROISILLES at 3. 15pm. and detraining at DAINVILLE.
3.
MOVE The Battalion will commence to leave the Cave at 9. 30am. and will FROM CAVE assemble in field near Transport Lines where dinner will be served. The move from the Cave to the Transport Lines will be made by Platoons at five minute intervals - Intervals of twenty minutes will be maintained between Companies. Companies will commence to leave the Cave at the following hours:

A COMPANY - 9. 30 am.
 B " - 9. 50 "
 C " - 10.10 "
 D " - 10.30 "
 HEADQUARTERS 10.50"
4.
PARADE The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off from Transport Lines, at 1.30pm. - Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies on the march.

5.
ADVANCE PARTIES 1 Officer per Company and 1 O. R. per Platoon, and 1 Officer and 4 O. R. from Bn.H.Q., will leave the Cave at 8. 30am. and proceed to DAINVILLE to take over billets.
6.
REAR PARTY Companies will each detail a Rear Party of 1 Officer and 2 O. R. per Platoon, and Bn.H.Q. 1 Officer and 8 O. R. who will be responsible for thoroughly cleaning Company areas. When the work is completed Rear Parties will report to the Battalion at Transport Lines.
7.
BAGGAGE Officers' Bed Rolls, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room supplies etc. will be piled in convenient dumps on the surface at 8. 30am. – Transport will call for baggage and Company Kitchens by 8. 45am.
8.
TRANSPORT Transport will proceed independently to new area on 19th September by road. Any route may be followed .
Dry Weather Tracks will be used providing weather conditions permit.
9.
MARCHING OUT STATE will be handed to the Battn.Orderly Room by 9. am.

J. D. MACLEOD,
Captain/Adjutant

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT _____

Copies to / 1 7th C.I.Bde.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 2 C.O. | 11 Bombing O. |
| 3 2 i/c | 12 Quartermaster |
| 4 Adjutant | 13 Transport Officer |
| 5, 6, 7 & 8 O.C.s. A.B.D.C. Coys. | 14 M.O. |
| 9 Sig. O. | 15 R.S.M. |
| 10. Scout O. | 15, 16 17 War Diary |
| | 18 File. |

S E C R E T

ef [Ref] Maps/ 42ND. CANADIAN BATTALION,
51.B 1/20,000 OPERATION ORDER NO. 213 COPY NO.____/8____
LENS 1,1 1/100,000 THURSDAY, SEPTEMBER 26TH. 1918.

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by train and route march from present area to concentration area North of QUEANT, on the 26th September, 1918.

2.

INTENTION

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from billets in DAINVILLE to assembly area in U.24.d. and V. 19. c & d., entraining at DAINVILLE at 8. 15pm. 26th September, 1918, and detraining at CROISELLES

3.

PARADE

The Battalion will fall in, with head of column at road juncti[on] just West of the Orderly Room, ready to move off, at 7 .45pm.

Interval s of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies on the march.

4.

DRESS

Battle Order with Greatcoats

5.

ADVANCE

[P]ARTY &

As already detailed.

[G]UIDES

[L]EWIS GUNS and 24 discs per gun will be carried by the Crews.

[B]AGGAGE

Officers' Bed Rolls, Trench Kits, Mess Supplies etc. for the line will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 1. pm.

All bagged to be left in Store in DAINVILLE may be turned in any time up to 8. pm.

[B]ILLETS

Billets will be cleaned, ready for inspection, by 6. pm.

[M]ARCHING

will be handed in to Orderly Room by 3. pm.

[O]UT STATE

J. D. MACLEOD,

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT _____

Captain/Adjutant

Copies to / 1 7 th C.I.Bde

11 L.G. O

2 C.O.

12 B.O.

3 2 i/c

13 Quartermaster

4 Adjutant

14 Transport O.

5. 6. 7. 8 O.Cs. A.B.C.D. Coys

15 M.O.

9 Sig. O.

16 R.S.M.

10. Scout O.

17. 18 19 War Diary

20 File.

4

Ref. Map –
B.?. SECRET No.1.
1/20,000

INFORMATION.

1. (a) On a date to be notified later the Canadian Corps will attack with the object of forming a defensive flank to troops operating further South.
- (b) The attack will be delivered by the 4th Canadian Division on the Right and the 1st Canadian Division on the Left.
The 3rd Canadian Division will be in support and the 2nd. Canadian Division will be in Reserve.
- (c) The 4th Canadian Division and 1st Canadian Division will capture the BLUE LINE and exploit to the YELLOW LINE.
- (d) When the BLUE LINE has been gained the 4th Canadian Division will narrow its frontage to the left to permit the 3rd Canadian Division to advance in line with it to the capture of the BROWN LINE and to the exploitation of the country beyond.
- (e) The advance of the 57th Division on our Right from the BLUE LINE will be carried out by the 170th Brigade.
- (f) The 12th Canadian Infantry Brigade are capturing the BLUE LINE in the 4th Canadian Division Area.
- (g) The 3rd Canadian Division will be concentrated prior to "Z" day in the Area NORTH of QUEANT as shown on map.
- (h) Order of employment of Brigades of 3rd Canadian Division –
 1. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade
 2. 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade
 3. 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

2. ACTION OF 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE.

(a) Prior to "Z" Day

The Brigade will move from present area to the area just NORTH of QUEANT and areas are allotted as follows –

Brigade Headquarters – V.20.c.6.4.

The R.C.R.....V.25.d. and V.26.c. & d.
P.P.C.L.I.....V.25.a. & b. and V.20.c.
42nd Cdn. Bn.....U.24.d. and V.24.d. and V.19.c. & d.
49th Cdn. Bn.....U.30.d. and V.25.a. & c.
7th T.M. Battery.....V.26.b.

- 2 -

(b) On "Z" Day.

- (i) The Brigade will be prepared to move forward after Zero hour and take over frontage from the 4th Canadian Division as shown on map, and to attack from the BLUE LINE. Further instructions concerning the advance will be issued later.

- (ii) Order of Employment of Battalions will be as follows –

The R.C.R.
P.P.C.L.I.
49th Cdn. Battalion.
42nd Cdn. Battalion.

The O/C 7th Cdn.T.M.Battery will be prepared to details two guns each to each of the above Battalions.

- (iii) The following probable situations with the consequent action of the 3rd Canadian Division, have been laid down by the 3rd Canadian Division.

(a) The enemy in full retreat and not holding the MARCOING LINE –
In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will continue to advance with the primary object of seizing a bridgehead in the N.E.corner of CAMBRAI.

(b) The enemy is holding the MARCOING LINE South of the CAMBRAI Road, but the 4th Canadian Division have succeeded in gaining a footing in RAILLENCOURT and SAILLY –
In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will work around through RAILLENCOURT and roll up the MARCOING LINE from the North, and then pro-

ceed as in (a) above.

(c) The enemy are holding the MARCOING LINE in strength, and 4th Canadian Division have been unable to gain a footing in RAILLENCOURT – In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will not advance against the MARCOING LINE till the Artillery situation permits of the advance being carried out under a proper barrage.

(d) The enemy are counter-attacking the 4th Canadian Division on the BLUE LINE –

In this case an immediate counter offensive by the 3rd Canadian Division through the 4th. Canadian Division would probably lead to our occupation of the MARCOING LINE on the heels of the enemy.

(e) It must be remembered, however, that the Corps is responsible for protecting the left flank of the Third Army, and therefore the 3rd. Canadian Division must keep in close touch with 57th Division on its right, and conform to the latter's movements.

- 3 -

3. MACHINE GUNS

No.2 Company 3rd Battalion C.M.G.C. has been allotted to the Brigade for the operation

One Battery will be allotted to each Battalion, and Battery Commanders have been instructed to get in touch with the Battalion to which they are allotted.

In the preparation of the Battalion schemes every advantage must be taken of the ability of Machine Guns to furnish direct covering fire.

Further instructions concerning Machine Guns will be issued later.

4. ARTILLERY

Instructions will be issued later.

5. TANKS

Instructions will be issued later.

6. ENGINEERS

Special parties are being detailed to assist Battalions in reconnaissance for land mines or other "booby" traps.

7. ROUTES

Instructions will be issued later covering the routes of advance from concentration area.

8. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Sgd. Major
7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Copies to –

- 1-4 O. A.B.C.D. Cos.
- 5. C.O.
- 6. 2 i/c
- 7. Adjutant
- 8-10 War Diary
- 11 File.



SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY

BY
GENERAL SIR H. S. RAWLINSON, BART.,
G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G.,
COMMANDING FOURTH ARMY.

I have much pleasure in forwarding the following message received from the Field-Marshal Commander-in-Chief for communication to all ranks.

H. S. Rawlinson
Genl.

HEADQUARTERS, FOURTH ARMY,
23rd August, 1918.

Commanding Fourth Army.

GENERAL SIR H. S. RAWLINSON, BT., G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G.,
Commanding Fourth Army.

My warmest congratulations and thanks to yourself, your Staff, and all ranks under your command for the magnificent success recently gained by the Fourth Army. The brilliant manner in which the operation was prepared and successfully carried out, with comparatively small losses, by the III., Australian and Canadian Corps in conjunction with the Cavalry Corps, R.A.F. and Tank Corps, pays striking tribute to the skill of the leaders of all ranks and the bravery of the individual soldier, as well as to the high state of efficiency of the staffs and departmental services concerned. The gallant and skilful co-operation of the armoured cars and motor machine-gun batteries is worthy of the highest praise. Please convey to all ranks my appreciation and thanks.

17th August, 1918.

D. HAIG, *Field-Marshal*,
Commander-in-Chief, British Armies in
France.

PRINTED IN FRANCE BY ARMY PRINTING AND STATIONERY SERVICES.

FORM A-6/18

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
Narrative of Operations 25th -30th September 1918.

On the evening of the 25th September 1918 orders were received from Brigade that the Battalion would move from DAINVILLE by train and route march to Concentration Area North of QUEANT on the following day, entraining at DAINVILLE at 8.15 pm. At 4 pm. on the 26th. word was received that on account of a break down on the railway, train arrangements were cancelled and the Battalion would be moved to the Concentration Area by busses, and that busses would probably report by 5 o'clock. All arrangements for the move were immediately made but it was not until after 9 pm. when the first busses reported. The Battalion was then marched to DAINVILLE Station on the ARRAS-DOULENS Road, embussed about 10 pm. and left immediately afterwards, debussing at the Western edge of BULLECOURT about 20'clock on the morning of the 26th. [*Changed to 27th*]

Guides which were sent forward with the Advance Party on the morning of the 25th. with instructions to meet the Battalion at QUEANT could not be advised in sufficient time of the change in arrangements and we consequently failed to meet them on arrival at BULLECOURT and were compelled to set out to find our Concentration Area without having made a reconnaissance. Two men of the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) pointed out an overland route which was followed. The night was very dark and wet and on account of the mud and hard travelling our Concentration Area in U.24.d. and V.19.c. and d. was not reached until 5 am.

At 5.20 on the morning of the 26th 27th the attack commenced along the line of the CANAL DU NORD. The Canadian Corps attacking from just North of MOEUVRES to a point about fifteen hundred yards South of the ARRAS CAMBRAI Road. The first attack was launched by the Qst. [*1st*] and 4th Canadian Divisions, the 1st. Division on the right and the 4th Division on the left, with the 3rd Canadian Division in Support.

The 4th Canadian Division had for its objectives the MARCOING LINE – BOURLON VILLAGE and BOURLON WOOD. and was to narrow its frontage to the left to permit the 3rd Canadian Division to advance in line with it to the capture of the MARCOING LINE, the villages of ST. OLLE – NEUVILLE ST REMY and TILLOY together with the bridge heads along the ST QUENTIN CANAL in A.4.?29 and a.30 and the exploitation of the country beyond.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was the first Brigade of the 3rd Canadian Division to be employed, and the attack was to be made with the R.C.R. on the right, the P.P.C.L.I. on then left, the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) in support, and the 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. in reserve.

If the 1st and 4th Canadian Divisions captured their objectives in schedule time the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to move forward from its Concentration Area according to time table but no moves were to be made without first receiving order from Brigade Headquarters.

Sheet No.2.

On the morning of the 25th all arrangements were made to go forward. Details, Specialists, and officers exempted were left at the Concentration Area And a Details Camp established there.

At 9.50 am. the ~~26th~~ 27th the Battalion left the Concentration Area with 22 officers and 619 O.R. and proceeded along the Northern edge of the HINDENBURG SUPPORT LINE to the first Assembly Position at D.5.c. At 11 am. we received orders to advance to the second Assembly position in E.9.c. The route followed was along the Northern side of the Hindenburg Support Line to the South of INCHE-EN-ARTOIS, and by overland route through E.7.d. and E.8.a. to the CANAL DU NORD at approximately E.8.b.2.6. The Canal was crossed on an Infantry Bridge which had just been constructed by the Engineers, and the Battalion arrived in the Second Assembly Area at 1.30 pm. Companies were distributed in the trenches in E.9.a. and c. where they remained for the afternoon. At 7 o'clock we received orders to move at once to the SUNKEN ROAD in E.6.a. Advance Parties of 1 officer and 4 O.R. per Company went forward to get the allotment of the Area, and Companies prepared to move. The Battalion set out immediately and arrived in the new position in the SUNKEN ROAD at 10.10 pm. The night was very cold There was no cover and the men had to lie in the open The area was also heavily shelled with gas and the men were compelled to sleep with their Box Respirators adjusted.

At 7 am on the morning of the 28th. the Battalion moved from the area in E.6.a. and took up a position in rear of the railway embankment East of BOURLON WOOD in E. F. 8.b. There was considerable shelling of the area but on account of the good cover behind the embankment we suffered only a few casualties There was no cover from the rain, however, and everybody got thoroughly wet.

Our orders were to follow the attacking battalions in close reserve and to be prepared to move in and occupy the MARCOING LINE, but owing to heavy opposition the R.C.R. and the P.P.C.L.I. were not able to get forward and we consequently remained behind the railway embankment during the day.

At 6 pm. orders were received to move forward into closer support and at 7 p.m. the Battalion moved, Companies occupying the following areas '-

A Company – Sunken Road in E.10.b.

B " Sunken Road in F.2.b.

C " Sunken Road in F.3.d.

D Company was left in reserve in rear of the railway embankment in F.8.b.

At 9.30 pm The Commanding Officer received orders to report to Brigade – Company Commanders were sent for and reported to Battalion Headquarters to wait for his return. The Commanding Officer reported back at 2 o'clock on the morning of the 29th. with instructions that the Battalion was to attack at 6 am. Zero was later changed to 8 am. Verbal information and instructions were given to Company Commanders. The attack was to take place along the whole Canadian Corps front

Sheet No.3.

and the tasks given to the 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. were to capture the railway embankment in S.20.b. and d. Northwest of TILLOY, then to advance and capture the high ground in S.18. and S.16. then to swing South east and seize the bridge heads on the ST QUENTIN CANAL in the neighbourhood of RAMILLES and PONT d'AVRE The 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) were attacking on our immediate right and the 4th Division on our left.

At 3 am. The Battalion commenced to move, going via 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Report Centre at F.4.d.3.3. where guides from the P.P.C.L.I. were picked up Companies had all passed the Report Centre by 4 am. and Battalion Headquarters moved to the MARCOING LINE at approximately F.5.c.V.4. Shelling in the vicinity of RAILLENCOURT was heavy but we fortunately sustained only a few casualties. The Battalion assembled for the attack in the low ground in rear of the HAYNECOURT-CAMBRAI Road in X.30.c. and were reported all in position at 7 am. The morning was fine with a heavy ground mist which prevented any visibility *but* as the ground had never been previously reconnoitred it was feared that direction might be difficult to maintain.

At 2 o'clock on the morning of September 29th. the Battalion jumped off from the light railway in X.30.a. and S.25.c. The attack was made on a two company front, A Company under Capt. H.B.Trout on the right and C Company under Capt. C.S.Martin, M.C. on the left, B Company under Major Pease, D.S.O. was in right support and D Company under Lieut. M.K.Craig in left support. Good progress was made until the Battalion reached the wire running in front of the dump in S.20.a. and S.26.a. This consisted of a broad low belt. It was not cut and the men were compelled to work their way through it which seriously delayed the advance. Some casualties from Machine Gun fire were suffered while going through.

When we had advanced about half way between the wire and the DOUAI-CAMBRAY Road a withering fire from Machine Guns at point blank range opened up from the road in front and from the right flank and caused very severe casualties.

In spite of this four parties succeeded in crossing the DOUAI-CAMBRAY Road and established posts in the dump in S.20.c. and S.20.b. Capt. H.B.Trout with a party of ten men established a post at approximately S.20.b.60.80. Although severely wounded he held on through the day and brought in the remnants of his party at dusk. Six of his men were wounded by Machine Guns and snipers during the day. Another small party under Lieut. B.C.Hutchison also established a post south of this and held it until dusk. On the following day the bodies of an officer and several O.R. were found well across the road near the railway embankment. It was evident that he had a very strong outpost line along the road in front of the railway.

Enemy machine gun fire was intense from the railway embankment in front and from both flanks. All Company Commanders, and all officers acting Second-in-Command of Companies, were casualties, and it was impossible to make any further advance. The slightest movement drew fire from all sides.

At 11 am. the enemy placed a heavy barrage along

Sheey [*Sheet*] No.4.

the line of the CAMBRAY DOUAI Road in S.20 and 26 and parties of Germans were seen coming over the high ground in S.15 towards the railroad. These were engaged by our Machine guns and by the artillery and they were forced to withdraw.

As it was impossible to capture the railway embankment without further artillery on account of the machine gun fire, it was arranged that half an hour bombardment with 4.5 Hows. be placed on the embankment, that patrols be sent out to investigate, and if successful in reaching the embankment that the Companies would advance and capture it. It was suggested that on account of it being almost impossible to attack the embankment frontally that Companies should work round to the Northern flank and go down the track. The bombardment commenced at 12.30 pm. Patrols attempted to move forward but machine guns engaged them from both flanks and they were unable to make any headway.

As it was seen that further advance was impossible arrangements were made to distribute the Battalion in depth. A very slight rearrangement could be made on account of the movement but advantage was taken of a certain amount of cover behind the various dumps in S.20.c. The Battalion was gradually reorganised into six platoons, Nos. 1 and 2 holding the front line from S.20.c.70.70

to road at S.20.c.10.90, Nos 3 and 4 Platoons from S.20.c.70.40 to road at S.19.c.10.90, and Nos 5 and 6 Platoons from S.20.c. 50.10 to road at S.19.c.10.90. Owing to casualties the attached machine gun section could only man six guns and they were placed with our reserve platoons. A disposition in greater depth was attempted but machine gun fire made it impossible. By 4.30 pm. we managed to get in touch with the 2nd. C.M.R. on the right but could not locate the 4th Canadian Division on the left.

Just at dusk three prisoners, apparently deserters came into our lines. They reported that the enemy were putting out strong battle patrols at night along the western edge of the railway in S.20, but that no counter attack was imminent.

It was requested that the artillery intermittently shell the embankment in S.20.b. and S.20.d. to prevent any assembly of troops in that area.

About [About] 7.30 pm. we got in touch with the 38th. Battalion on the left. A patrol was sent out and located them at approximately S.19.b. 20.55.

A further readjustment of platoons was made so as to organise the Battalion in greater depth.

On the morning of the 30th. the advance was continued. The P.P.C.L.I. attacked and mopped up the railway embankment in S.20.d. After the embankment was cleared up the R.C.R. were to advance over the railway and capture the high ground beyond. In accordance with orders at Zero plus 90 minutes a composite company under Captain E.B. Finley.-M.C. moved forward to occupy the Sunken Road in S.15.b. and d. and the other company under Lieut. G.S. Ryder, moved to the railway embankment. On reaching the embankment it was found that elements of the R.C.R. P.P.C.L.I., 2nd C.M.R. and 4th Division were occupying it. These units had made an attempt to push forward but owing to heavy casualties had to withdraw to the railway.

Sheet No.5.

Between 12 noon and 1 pm. a considerable amount of enemy movement was seen in the neighbourhood of the Mill and Farm in S.15 central. This was reported to Brigade with the request that this area be shot up. About 1.10 pm. the enemy attempted another counter attack on our positions on the railway embankment. As we were well established at that time and had a number of German machine guns in action the enemy were caught by our machine gun and artillery fire when coming over the crest of the hill and were forced to retire.

As soon as the enemy were seen retiring our men immediately pushed out

and occupied the SUNKEN ROAD in S. 20.b. and S.21.c. A Platoon of the R.C.R. under Lieut. Dion succeeded in establishing a position on the high ground in S.21.a. The 4th Division did not conform. Owing to intense Machine gun fire no further progress was made and at dusk the R.C.R. forward platoon returned to the sunken road.

No further change was made in the distribution of the Battalion that night, one company remaining in the Sunken Road in S.15.b. and d. and the other Company in the railway embankment.

On the morning of the 1st October the advance of the Division was continued by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade with the 4th Division on the left. The attack appeared to go well and about half an hour after zero troops were seen going over the crest of the high ground in front.

About noon detachments from the 13th, 14th, and 15th Battalions were seen retiring to the railway embankment across our front on the left flank. Lieut.Col.Ewing D.S.O., M.C. who was in the forward area at the time immediately took the matter in hand, turned them about and supplying them with officers from the 42nd Battalion sent them forward with orders to advance and to dig in if stopped. At the same time one platoon of the 42nd Bn and one platoon of the R.C.R. were sent forward to the high ground in the neighbourhood of the mill in S.15 central.

A Battery of the 2nd Divisional Machine gun Bn. was moved into position in rear. At 3.25 pm. Lieut.Col. Ewing reported that he had established a line from S.8.d.90.20 to S.15.d.20.75 thence along the crest of the hill in S.15.c. and d. and S.21.a. and S.21.b. The garrison was made up of elements of the 3rd and 11th. Brigade, one platoon of the R.C.R. and one platoon of the 42nd. The remainder of the 42nd were disposed in the SUNKEN ROAD in S.14.c. and S.20.b.between the SUNKEN ROAD and railway embankment and in the embankment. The front was well covered with machine guns. A battery of the 2nd Div. machine gun Bn. was placed in position well forward of the railway embankment and batteries of the 3rd Divisional Machine Gun Coy. on the left flank in S.21.a. and S.15.c. The men dug in in a commanding position and the situation on the left was restored.

At 6 pm. we received verbal instructions that the Brigade would be withdrawn the same night and about 8.30 pm. on orders from Brigade to withdraw the Battalion moved out and marched back to the area north of the QUARRY WOOD

CASUALTIES

		<u>Killed</u>	<u>Wounded</u>
Officers	.....	6	11
Other ranks	.....	<u>55</u>	<u>221</u>

	61	238	
Totals		<u>61</u>	<u>293</u>

NOTES Officer casualties include Lieut. W.G. Murray attached 7th T.M. Battery, wounded.

CAPTURES

Our captures included two large dumps (one engineer material and one ammunition) located in squares S.19.d. and S.20.a. and d.

The engineer dump contained enormous supplies of –

- Lumber
- Cement
- Engineers tools and material
- Wire and stakes
- One saw mill (complete)

The ammunition dump contained –

- Trench Mortars
- Ammunition of all calibres
- Bombs
- Grenades
- Signal Lights, etc.

A number of machine guns were captured in the dump and along the railway embankment. Owing to prevailing conditions numbers could not be checked. In one portion of the railway embankment alone from S.20.b.2.4. to S.20.d.7.4. which was garrisoned by our No.1 Composite Company after the attack of the P.P.C.L.I. on the morning of the 30th, 36 machine guns were picked up. In all probability a number of those were captured by the P.P.C.L.I.

LESSONS LEARNT FROM RECENT OPERATIONS

1. The desirability of getting troops to the Concentration Area with as little fatigue as possible. Owing to the unfortunate breakdown of the railway and ~~arrangements~~ changed arrangements, the men were "standing to" from 4.30 pm. on the afternoon of September 26th, and did not reach the Concentration Area until nearly 5 o'clock the following morning, and in a very tired condition being loaded down with

their battle equipment, extra rations etc.

2. The necessity of more time being given Battalion Commanders prior to an intended attack to go into the matter thoroughly with their Company Commanders, and the latter in turn with their Companies, and that ample time be given for the latter to get into position.
3. The desirability of an opportunity to make a reconnaissance before an attack if at all possible.
4. The necessity for more accurate information as to the existing line, and as to position from which the jump off is to be made, before attempting an attack, and the consequent impossibility of laying down a proper line for the artillery.
5. Faulty information, as in the attack of the 29th September when a belt of wire was run into which was not known to exist.
6. Had it been possible to delay the attack on the morning of the 29th in order to get full information as to conditions, I am of the opinion that with a bombardment by the heavies on the dumps and railway line, followed by a barrage, it would have been possible to have got forward without anything like as heavy casualties.
7. That for the best results the troops are being used too continuously without an opportunity to properly reorganize, which is particularly a necessity with regard to N.C.Os. amongst whom the casualties have been heavy.

MAPS

WAR DIARY

42ND CDN.INF.BATTALION

SEPTEMBER 1918

[FRANCE upper left.](#)

[FRANCE upper right](#)

[FRANCE lower left.](#)

[FRANCE lower right.](#)

51B SE

[FRANCE upper left.](#)

[FRANCE upper right.](#)

[FRANCE lower left.](#)

[FRANCE lower right.](#)

- 51.A S.W-

[FRANCE upper left.](#)

[FRANCE upper right.](#)

[FRANCE lower left.](#)

[FRANCE lower right.](#)

57 c N.E.

[FRANCE upper left.](#)

[FRANCE upper right.](#)

[FRANCE lower left.](#)

[FRANCE lower right.](#)

57 B N W

10

Tue., Oct 1, 1918

The Operations for the day are covered in the Narrative attached to the Diary for the month of September.

At 6 pm. we received verbal instructions that the Brigade would withdraw that night and at 8.30 pm. , on orders from the Brigade, the Battalion moved out and marched back to the area North of QUARRY WOOD, where it remained until the 10th October. The area contained little or no accommodation and much time was spent by the men in digging in and making themselves comfortable with the use of bivvies.

At midnight on the night of the 30th Sept./1st Oct. the Continental system of time was brought into use throughout the British Army.

Lieut. E. G. Shepherd was killed in action by shell fire early in the day.

Wed., Oct 2, 1918

Lieut. B. C. Salter, who had been slightly wounded in the attack of September 29th, re-joined the Battalion.

Thu., Oct 3, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Oct 4, 1918

A draft of 63 reinforcements was received by the Battalion.

Lieuts. M. McLaren and A. Knox reported and were taken on the strength of the Battalion.

On this date the funeral of the following officers who had been killed in action took place:-

Captain C. S. Martin, M. C.	Lieut. E. D. P. Hawkes,
Lieut. D. B. Gilmour,	" J. R. Hubbard,
" T. West,	" E. G. Sheperd,

They were buried in the Military Cemetery just East of the Canal in front of INCHY-EN-ARTOIS – Sheet 51.C. E. 3. c. 20. 60.

Sat, Oct 5, 1918

The Appointments and Commisions List No. 206 dated 22.9. 18 contained the following:-

" Temporary Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO, MC., 42nd. Canadian Battalion, to be Temporary Lieut. Colonel in command of the Battalion, vice Temporary Lieut. Colonel B. McLennan, DSO – 4th August, 1917.

On the night of the 5th/6th October winter time came into effect. At 01.00 hours (that is 1. am. summer time) on the 6th, all clocks and watches were put back one hour.

Sun, Oct 6, 1918

Lieut. C. J. Fletcher reported and was taken on the strength of the Battalion.

Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO,MC. proceeded on leave and command of the Battalion was taken over by Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, MC.

Mon., Oct 7, 1918

The following decorations were published in Divisional Routine Orders, awarded in connection with Operations on the Amiens front August 8th-13th :-

DISTINGUISHED SERVICEORDER

Captain (A/Major) C. B. Topp, MC.

BAR TO MILITARY CROSS

Lieut. J. M. Morris, MC.

MILITARY CROSS

Captain H. B. Trout, Captain J. D. MacLeod,
Lieut. A. F. Andrews, Lieut. W. G. Scott,
Captain S. G. Baldwin, (C.A.M.C.) attached as M.O. to the Battalion.

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

441179 Pte. Trowse, C. 418652 Cpl. Franklin, D. J. [G.J.]
145400 Cpl. (L/Sgt) Young, E. 418487 Sgt. Williamson, J

Tue., Oct 8, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Oct 9, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Oct 10, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade moved out to QUEANT and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion moved by route march to the QUEANT Area, remaining there until the 20th.

This area had been very badly devastated. There was no accommodation of any kind with the exception of an old and dilapidated system of trenches. Here again it was necessary for the men to dig in and construct bivvies for themselves.

General training was carried on during the period the Battalion stayed here and special-ists classes started. Special attention was paid to the reorganizing and bringing up to strength all the Lewis Gun crews of the Battalion which had suffered heavy casualties in the CAMBRAY Attack.

Fri., Oct 11, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sat, Oct 12, 1918

R.O. 399 of Headquarters, 1st Army dated O ctober 18th, [sic!] 1918, contained the following decorations awarded in connection with the Operations at MONCHY-LE-PREUX – JIGSAW WOOD – BOIRY-NOTRE-DAME, August 26th-27th-28th, 1918.

BAR TO DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER

Lieut. Col. R. L. H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.,

BAR TO THE MILITARY CROSS

Captain Wm. Hale, Jun. M.C. (C.A.M.C.)

THE MILITARY CROSS

Lieut. J. B. T. Montgomerie,

" W.J.M. Kavanagh,

" W.H. Molson,

" J. A. P. Haydon,

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

418286 Pte. K. O. [K.A.] Ritchie,

877647 „ J. Russell,

Sun, Oct 13, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Mon., Oct 14, 1918

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Tue., Oct 15, 1918

On the night of the 14th news was received of the death of Major General L. J. Lipsett, commanding the 4th Imperial Division, killed by a sniper in looking over the front on that date. His funeral took place on the 15th at the cemetery in QUEANT. 100 men from the Battalion and most of the officers attending. The address at the funeral service was made by our Chaplain – Major G. G. D. Kilpatrick, D.S.O.

Wed., Oct 16, 1918

The Brigade was inspected by the Corps Commander. The inspection took place in the field adjacent to the Battalion area. Each Battalion of the Brigade and its Transport was inspected in detail and after the inspection the Corps Commander addressed the Brigade. Proceedings closed with a march past.

Thu., Oct 17, 1918

On this date the Battalion had the honour of an informal visit from His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales who was temporarily attached to the Corps. He visited the Battalion parade ground in the morning and was met by the Officer Commanding. A number of the officers were presented to him and he conversed with several of the men.

Fri., Oct 18, 1918

Leave allotment for 20 O.R. for the next week was received. This is a considerable increase on the recent allotment which the Battalion had been receiving.

Sat, Oct 19, 1918

The following N.C.Os. proceeded to England to attend the Cadet School, Bexhill-on-Sea, for Infantry Commissions:-

132028 C.S.M. Hopkins, E. W. 418363 L/Sgt. Hodge, A.J.
145313 Sgt. Beasley, T. 418412 A/Cpl. McDonald, [*MacDonald*] D.J.
2075466 A/Cpl. Wilson, W.W. [?] 418038 Sgt. Hunter, J.

Sun, Oct 20, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade moved by bus from the QUEANT Area to the AUBERCHICOURT Area. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion proceeded by bus from its billets at QUEANT to AUBERCHICOURT and thence by route march to billets in SOMAIN.

Narrative of the Operations covering the period from the 20th when the Battalion arrived in SOMAIN until it subsequently arrived in HASNON is attached hereto.

Mon., Oct 21, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Tue., Oct 22, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Wed., Oct 23, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Thu., Oct 24, 1918

Lieut. Colonel R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC. returned from leave and assumed command of the Battalion.

Fri., Oct 25, 1918

A wire was received from the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade announcing the fact that 2075443 [2075467] Pte. T. Dinesen had been awarded the VICTORIA CROSS for extreme gallantry in action at PARVILLERS on August 11th/12th

Sat, Oct 26, 1918

Routine Orders of the 3rd. Canadian Division under date of October 25th announced the following decoration:-

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER

Hon. Major G. G. D. Kilpatrick,

Sun, Oct 27, 1918

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved in the line by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 2nd. C.M.R. The Battalion proceeded by route march from the line in front of CONDE to billets in HASNON.

Casualties for the tour were:-

KILLED:	3 OR. - 1 while on Command
DIED OF WOUNDS:	3 OR.
WOUNDED:	16 OR

Mon., Oct 28, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Tue., Oct 29, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

Wed., Oct 30, 1918

Readjustment of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade took place and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion proceeded from billets in HASNON to billets in FOSSE DE PRISSIEN. [*Fosse du Prussien*]

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Thu., Oct 31, 1918

[*Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.*]

<u>1</u> 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.	Secret
Operation Order [Order] No. 216	Copy No..19..
By	
Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock [Willcock], M.C.	

Reference Maps –

57.c. 1/40,000

31.b. 1/40,000

Valenciennes 12 1/100,000

27th October 1918

1. Information The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by bus to the AUBERCHICOURT Area on the 27th October
2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from billets in D.1.c. to billets in AUBERCHICOURT area embussing at Cross Roads D.1.d.8.6. QUEANT at 22.30 hours.
3. Parades [Parades] The Battalion will fall in ready to move off on Battalion parade [Parade] ground at ??:00 hours.
4. Advance Parties Scout Officer and three scouts will proceed by bus to AUBERCHICOURT Area embussing at C.6.d.?.1 at ??:?? hours.
5. Baggage etc. Officers bedrolls, mess boxes, orderly room supplies and bivvies will be piled alongside the road at C.8.d.?.1. at 23.45 hours.
6. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off at ??:?? hours
7. Transport Transport will proceed under Brigade convoy passing the starting point at Cross Roads V.20.b.33.98 at ??:21 hours.
8. Marching out State Marching out states will be handed into the Orderly [Orderly] Room at 08.30 hours.

D.C. Baber,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Issued by runner at ..0115....

Copies to	1. 7th C.I.B.	11. L.G.O.
	2. C.O.	12. B.O.
	3. 2 i/c	13. Quartermaster
	4. Adjutant	14. Transport O.
	5,6,7,8 O.Cs. A.B.C.D Cos	15. M.O.
	9 Sig. O.	16. R.S.M.
	10 Scout O.	17,18,19 War Diary
		20 File.

2

Operation Order No.215
by
Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, M.C.
Cmdg, 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET
Copy No....19

Reference Maps Sheet 44 1/40,000

31.A. 1/40,000

31st October 1918.

1. Information The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will march today to the area WANDIGNIES-HAMAGE-CATAINE and will be prepared to take over the front of the 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade on the 22nd inst.
2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion will move from billets in B.8.c. to billets in CATAINE by march route today.
3. Parades The Battalion will fall in ready to move off head of the column at the cross roads at entrance to present billets, facing east, at 09.15 hours.
4. Starting Point Starting point will be at cross roads B.10.a.7.7. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 10.10 hours. 500 yards distance will be maintained between units after passing the starting point and ??? yards distance will be maintained between Companies.
5. Advance Parties One officer and 2 O.R. per Company and Headquarters will report to Marie Office, SOMAIN at 07.?? hours to meet representative of the Brigad [*Brigade*] staff to proceed to billeting area.
6. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off at 06.45 hours.
7. Baggage etc Officers' bedrolls, mess boxes, orderly room supplies will be piled at the Q.M. stores at 08.30 hours.
8. Transport Transport will accompany Battalion on the march. Unless further orders are received it will not proceed in advance of the western edge of BOIS DES BOULU-SETTES and standings will be located in area T.12. central.
9. Marching out

States

Marching out states will be handed into the orderly room at 08.45 hours.

W.C.Baber,
Lieut.Asst.Adjt.

Issued by runner at ..0430..

Copies to	1	7th C.I.B.	11	L.G.O.
	2	C.O.	12	B.O.
	3	2 i/c	13	Quartermaster
	4	Adjutant	14	T.O.
	5,6,7,8	O.C A,B,C,D Cos	15	M.O.
	9	Sig. O.	16	R.S.M.
	10	Scout O.	17,18,19	War Diary
			20	File

3

Operation Order No. 216
by
Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
.....22nd.Oct. 1918.

SECRET

Copy No...19..

Ref. Maps. 44 S.E. 1/20,000
44 1/40,000

- Information The 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade is holding general line along Railway from P.14.c. to P.34.a. On 22nd October 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will pass through 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade on right will co-operate in the advance and pass through 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade objective will be RED LINE as shown on 44 S.E. 1/20,000 The advance will be conducted will be conducted by the R.C.R. on right sub section, and the 42nd Canadian Battalion on left sub section. The 49th. Canadian Battalion (E.R.) will be in Brigade support and the P.P.C.L.I. in Brigade reserve.
- Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. will leave billets in CATAINE and pass through 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade at 07.00 hours.

3. Route CATAINE-HASNON-LA COLINIERE to south of MONT des BRUYARES thence to final objective by route chosen by advance guard.
4. Advance Guard (a) Screen of Scouts. The Battalion Scouts under Battalion Scout officer will leave CATAINE at 06.00 hours:
(b) Van Guard. One platoon of 'B' Company will constitute van guard and will leave CATAINE at 06.30 hours:
(c) Support. 'B' Company less one platoon will constitute support and leave CATAINE at 06.45 hours.
5. Main Body Remainder of Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 06.45 hours, head of column at fork roads O.34.a.0.8.
6. Transport Transport will be divided into A and B Echelons-
A Echelon will accompany the Battalion;
B Echelon will remain in present area.
7. Attachments 1 Section 31 Battery C.F.A. will proceed in rear of Battalion,
2 Sections are at disposal of Bn. further in rear.
1 Battery No.2 Company C.M.G.C. will proceed in rear of main body. 8th Bn. C.E. are allotted to Brigade for operation.
1 Troop B Squadron C.L.H. will be allotted to Bn. 2 Stokes Guns will be attached to the Bn.

W.C.Baber,
Lieut.Asst.Adjt.

Copies to.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1. 7th C.I.B. | 11 L.G.O. |
| 2 C.O. | 12 Q.M. |

P.T.O.

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 3. 2 i/c | 13 T.O. |
| 4. Adj. | 14.M.O. |
| 5. 6 ³ / ₄ 7 ³ / ₄ 8.O.C.A,B,C,D, Cos. | 15. Chaplain. |
| 9. Sig. O. | 16. R. S. M. |
| 10. Scout O. | 17,18,19 War Diary |
| | 20. File. |

Operation Order No.217 SECRET
by Copy No.19...
Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Reference Map Sheet 44 1/40,000 October 27th 1918.

.....

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night 27th/28th October 1918.

2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will be relieved by the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion and on completion of relief will take over billets vacated by them in HASNON with Battalion Headquarters at Billet No.186.

3. Advance Parties. Advance Parties of one officer and six O.R. will report at approximately 09.00 hours 27th inst. to Town Major, HASNON, at Billet No.143 to take over new billets. This party will be arranged by Rear details.

4. Route. Companies will relieve by platoons and will assemble at the ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30 where one scout per company will meet them and guide Companies out. Company pipers will meet their Companies at the junction of the ST AMAND Road and railway in P.21.?.10.60.

5. Guides 2 guides per platoon will report to Lieut. Proven at ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30 to guide the platoons of the incoming Battalion to the line.

6. Lewis Guns Lewis Guns, trench kits and tools will be deposited at the
Trench kits following points where limbers will meet them –
etc. "B" Company, ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30.
 "A". "C". "D" Companies advanced Battalion
 Headquarters Q.10.d.70.60.
 Headquarters Company at Battalion Headquarters
 Q.14.c.10.70.

7. Transport. Transport will move under its own arrangement to HASNON and take over standings vacated by the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion.

8. Completion of Completion of relief will be notified these Headquarters by
Relief wire as follows – "Your O.O. No.217 received at"

9. Completion of Completion of move will be reported by runner to new Bat-
Move. talion Headquarters at Billet No.186, HASNON.

10. Acknowledge.

Copies to 1 7th C.I.B. W.C.Baber
2 C.O. Lieut. Asst. Adjt.
3 2 i/c 4 Adj. 5,6,7.8. Cos. 9. Sig.O.
10. Scout O. 11 L.G.O. 12. Q.M. 13. T.O.
14. M.O. 15. R.S.M. 16,17,18 War Diary 19 File.

5 Operation Order No.218 SECRET 18
by Copy No.....
Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Reference Map 44 1/40,000 October 30th 1918.

-
1. Information Redistribution of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will take place on the 30th inst.
 2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from its present billets in HASNON to billets in RAISNES.
 3. Advance Parties. Advance parties of one officer and 2 O.R. per Company and the Signal officer and 2 R.O. per Headquarters will report to the Brigade Billeting Officer at V.17.a. 8.8., RAISNES, at 10.00 hours to take over new billets.
 4. Move The Battalion will move independently by Companies, Companies passing the [the] passing point – The Square, HASNON – at the following Hours –
A Company 12.00 hours
B " 12.10 "
C " 12.20 "
H.Q. " 12.40 "
D " 12.30 "
 5. Route Square HASNON – LES CORBETS – RUE DE BOIS – RAISNES. Battalion Scouts will be posted at principal corners.
 6. Dress Dress will be heavy marching order – Great Coat carried in pack, blanket and rubber sheet rolled and carried in

bandolier round the pack. Steel helmet on pack.

7. Lewis Guns etc. Lewis Guns, officers' bedrolls etc. will be piled as follows at 11.00 hours –
A and B Cos. at A Cos. Headquarters.
C Company at C Co's Headquarters
D and B HQ. at D Co's Headquarters
Headquarters at Headquarters. [*Headquarters*]
Orderly Room at Headquarters.
8. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off at 12.00 hours.
9. Transport Transport will accompany the Battalion.
10. Rear Party Rear party of one N.C.O. and 4 O.R. per Company and in addition one officer from B Coy. will remain behind to hand over the present billets to the incoming Battalion of the 9th. Canadian Infantry Brigade.
11. Completion of Move Completion of move will be reported by runner to the new Battalion Headquarters, RAISNES.
12. ACKNOWLEDGE.

W.C.Baber.

Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Copies to 1. 7th C.I.B.	2. C.O.	3 2 i/c	4 Adjt.
5/8 Cos.	9 Sig. O.	10 Scout O.	11 L.G.O.
12 Q.M.	13 T.O.	14 M.O.	15 R.S.M.
	16,17,18, War Diary	16 File.	

MAP

WAR DIARY

42ND CDN.INF.BATTALION

OCTOBER, 1918

[Map](#) France upper left.

[Map](#) France upper right.

DISPOSITION

MAP# #

COPY FOR WAR DIARY

OCTOBER 1918

6 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
Narrative of Operations covering period from
October 20th - October 26th, 1918

Ref. Map :- Sheet 44 - 1/40,000.

-----oOo-----

The Battalion had arrived in SOMAIN at about 20.00 hours after travelling by bus from QUEANT to AUBERCHICOURT and thence by march route to SOMAIN.

At 01.00 hours on the 21st. orders were received from Brigade to proceed at 09.00 hours by march route to CATAINE. The route followed was: SOMAIN – ERRE – WANDIGNIES – HAMAGE – CATAINE.

The scenes en route were unique and interesting. These towns and the small villages between them had only been liberated from the enemy within the preceding forty- eight hours after four years of captivity, and the joy of the inhabitants was indescribable. The entire route was thronged by them and every possible visible demonstration of their joy at their release was given. CATAINE was reached at 17.00 and billets taken over from the 3rd. Canadian Bn.

At 01.30 hours on the 22nd. orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would advance and leap-frog the 1st. Brigade, the latter holding the general line on the railway in P.14.c. – P.34.a. The advance was to be conducted on the right by the Royal Canadian Regiment – on the left by the 42nd. Canadian Bn., R.H.C. ; the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) being in support, and the P.P.C.L.I. in reserve.

The Brigade objective was the Bridge Heads over the JARD Canal in VIEUX-CONDE and CONDE, the task of the Brigade, therefore, being to advance through and mop-up the FORET DE RAISMES. The Battalion had attached to it 1 Battery of C.F.A., 1 Battery of Machine Guns, and in addition "B" Squadron, Canadian Light Horse, less two Troops.

At 07.00 hours a start was made, the Scouts proceeding in advance of the Battalion followed by B.D. HQ A and C Companies at intervals of 200 yards. The route followed was CATAINÉ – HASNON and along the HASNON – LA COLINIÈRE Road until the fork roads in P.20.c. were reached. Here the Battalion divided into two forces, the right force, consisting of half the Battalion Scouts under Sergt. Smith, a vanguard of one platoon of B Company, followed by the main body – the balance of B Company and A Company. They proceeded along the road running through P.20.d. to its junction with the railway, thence along the railway, entering the forest in P.27.a. The left force consisting of the balance of the Battalion Scouts under Lieut. Cave, a vanguard of one platoon from D Coy., followed by the main body composed of C Company and the balance of D Company, proceeded along the road through P.20.a. across the railway and main ST. AMAND Road, thence along the road running through P.14.d. and P.15.c., entering the forest at MONT DES BRUYERES. Battalion Headquarters was established at Bill et 229 on the main ST. AMAND-RAISMES Road.

The village of MONT DES BRUYERES was reported clear of the enemy by 10.30 hours and both forces reached the road running North and South through P. 18. c. and P.24.a. & c. by noon, where a short halt of fifteen minutes was made. Up to this road no opposition on our immediate front had been encountered but an enemy machine gun firing from LA CROISSETTE caused D Company one casualty. One platoon of D Company remained in old trenches in P.16.d. to watch the left flank opposite LA CROISSETTE until relieved by a section of Machine Guns by Noon.

From the road in P.24.a. & c. the right force advanced through the forest until the road in Q.20.a. & d. was reached, and then followed the roads to the first night's objective in Q.15.a. & d. and Q.22.a.

The left force followed the railroad track and when they reached Q.14.a. were on the enemy's tail and received considerable rifle and machine gun fire from the open ground between the edge of the forest in Q.8.d. and the village of ODOMÉZ. The progress of the left force from Q.14.a forward was slow but by 16.00 hours the

- 2 -

Battalion occupied the general line on the road running S.E. through Q.15.central and Q.22.a.

Owing to the failure of the Imperial Brigade on our left to advance during the day beyond the road running through P.14.b., 15.c. and 9.c. the left flank of the Battalion was in the air. The Machine Gun Battery attached to the Battalion was therefore established on the high ground in MONT DES BRUYERES, facing North, to protect this flank. At the request of Division a patrol of 1 Officer and 3 O.R. was sent out to ST. AMAND and vicinity to try and get in touch with the troops on our left, and to ascertain as far as possible the disposition of their line. The patrol reported on return that their approximate line was along the road as given above.

Orders were received from Brigade that night that the R.C.R. and 42nd.

Battalions would continue to advance on the morning of the 23rd. with the object of securing the Bridge Head crossing the canal. Further orders were given that the main body was not to cross the canal without definitive orders to this effect from Brigade.

At 06.00 hours on the 23rd. A Company continued the advance on the right and C Company on the left with D Company in support and B Company in reserve. After many interesting skirmishes between our Scouts and enemy machine guns and snipers during the day, our line was advanced to LA HTE. VILLE, road running through Q.10.d. and Q.11.a. and LE BOUT DU TRIHIX by the evening of the 23rd.

On the morning of the 24th the advance was again continued and by the evening of the 24th the line ran from LA HTE. VILLE along Eastern edge of BOIS LE PRINCE to a post in Q.12.c.3.1. The enemy rearguard were at this time holding the railway line through R.14.c. – 13.a.b.d. – 17.c. and Q.12.a.b. & d.

On the night of the 24th instructions were received from Brigade that a Policy of defence would be adopted. The railway line through R.14.c. – 13.a.b. & d - 17.c. Q.12.a.b. & d. to be made good.

On the morning of the 25th the Scouts again went forward and by noon the railway was reported clear of the enemy. Further advance on our front was impossible as the area North-east of the Railway had been flooded by the ESCAUT RIVER. The width of the flooded area varied from 600 to 1,000 yards on our Battalion front.

On the night of the 25th orders were received that on the 26th the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would be relieved by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 2nd. C.M.R.

On the 26th at 17.00 hours this relief took place, and the Battalion marched out independently by Companies from the line to HASNON, there taking over the billets vacated by the 2nd. C.M.R., the route used being the railway through P. 18. – 23 – 22 and the LA COLINIERE-HASNON Road. The Battalion was settled in billets in HASNON by 21.00 hours.

Casualties during the Operation:		<u>KILLED</u>	D. of <u>W.</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>
# 1 while on Command	Officers	Nil	Nil	Nil
	Other Ranks	# 3	3	16
	TOTALS	3	3	16
		TOTAL		22

Ground captured included:

FORET DE RAISMES
BOIS LE PRINCE
VILLAGE MONT DE BRUYERES
„ LE HTE VILLE
„ LE BOUT DU TRIEUX

The advance of the Battalion during the first days operations covered a distance of 6,500 yards; the total advance of the Battalion during the entire operation being approximately 10,000 yards.

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Fri., Nov 1 to Tue., Nov 5, 1918

The Battalion in billets at FOSSE DE PRUSSIEN, VICOIGNE. Usual training was carried on.

Orders were received that the 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade would take over the front of the 8th Canadian Inf. Brigade on the night of the 6th/7th November.

The Battalion moved by Route March from its billets in FOSSE DE PRUSSIEN, to billets in ONNAING via ANZIN – VAKENCIENNES, the move being complete at 12.00 Hours.

In the afternoon orders were received that the Brigade would take not over from the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade on the night of the 6th/7th but but would move on the 7th to the QUIEVRECHAIN-CRESPIN Area and take over from the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade at dusk on the 7th.

Wed., Nov 6, 1918

[Note transcriber: There is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Nov 7, 1918

The Battalion moved from its billets in ONNAING by Route March to billets in QUIEVRECHAIN, the move being complete at 14.45 hours.

Fri., Nov 8, 1918

The Battalion moved forward to billets in THULIN, arriving there at dusk.

Four casualties (wounded) occurred from enemy shell fire immediately after the Battalion had arrived.

Sat., Nov 9, 1918

The Battalion was ordered again to move forward by Route March to JEMAPPES which was reached at 19.00 Hours. The route was via BOUSSU – HORNU – QUAREGNON. Throughout the whole march the streets were lined with cheering civilians who gave the Battalion a tremendous reception.

Sun., Nov 10, 1918

On the morning of the 10th the Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. and took over a Company of the R.C.R. The area extended from the CONDE-MONS Canal to the HYON-QUESMES Road in Q.13.c. As soon as this was completed the Battalion commenced to press the attack on MONS from the Western and Southern outskirts and penetrated the city and the neighbourhood of the Railway Station at 01.00 Hours on the 11th – A full report of these Operations is attached.

During the afternoon, while the enemy were shelling JEMAPPES, the Battalion suffered most unfortunate casualties in its Transport Lines. An H.V. shell burst in the Farrier's workshop killing two men outright and wounding ten others, four of whom afterwards died. cont. of wounds. The majority of these men had come with the Battalion from Montreal and had been with it for thirty-seven months in France.

Mon., Nov 11, 1918

By daybreak on the 11th the whole city of MONS had been mopped-up and we had established outposts on the high ground on the Eastern outskirts. Battalion Headquarters were established in the Hotel de Ville in the Grand Place. The Pipe Band played itself into the city about 07.00 Hours and created tremendous enthusiasm. Thousands of civilians lined the streets and the Grand Place, and the Battalion was given such a welcome as it had never seen before. Men, women and children vied with one another in expressing their hospitality – hot coffee, cognac and wines were distributed with the utmost generosity. Soldiers were everywhere embraced and kissed. In a few moments the whole city was bedecked with flags, flying from every window.

Lieut. L. H. Biggar and Lieut. J. W. Cave were the first officers of the Battalion to actually enter the Hotel de Ville, where they went forward to establish Headquarters and to install telephone communication. As soon as they entered the "Gold Book" was taken from the vaults where it had lain for over four years and they had the honour of being the first British troops to sign it, the only other entry in this book up to that time was that of King Albert of Belgium who had signed it in 1913, on his first visit to MONS after ascending the Throne.

At about 9. O'clock official word was received that the Armistice had been signed, and that hostilities would cease at 11.00 Hours. Instructions were immediately sent out to Companies that no further offensive operations would take place but all precautions would be taken to defend the line then held, outposts would be established and the Companies distributed in depth.

At 11. O'clock – the hour of "Cease Fire" – in the Grand Place, the Mayor presented Brigadier-General J.A.Cark, DSO, G.O.C., 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, with the Keys of the City in honour of its capture by units of his Brigade. Such elements of the Brigade as could be withdrawn from the line were formed up en masse and after the celebrations were completed there was a formal march past which was led by our Pipe Band. We were only able to have one Company and part of Headquarters on this parade as three of our Companies were still holding

the Outpost Line and had not at that time been relieved. The great square was filled with civilians and the troops got tremendous applause as they marched out.

Cont. At 3.30 in the afternoon Lieut.General Sir Arthur Currie, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., commanding the Canadian Corps, rode into the city with his Staff, escorted by a body of the 5th Lancers – men who had fought at MONS in 1914. Formed up in the Grand Place was a half-Company of troops from every Unit in the 3rd. Canadian Division. General Currie's appearance provoked the wildest enthusiasm from the civilians who were packed solidly on the four sides of the Square and crowded on the balconies and windows. The Bands played the Belgian National Anthem which the people sang with great fervour.

The Corps Commander was met by the Mayor, the City Fathers and other prominent citizens. He was formerly welcomed and presented with an Address. Through [*Through*] an interpreter he conveyed congratulations of the Corps to the Citizens and then presented the City with a Canadian Flag.

During the afternoon the Companies holding the Outpost Line were relieved by Units of the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade, brought into the City; and the whole Battalion was billeted in the Caserne d'Infanterie. The Officers had their quarters on the Rue de la Grand Triperie.

The day was the most ~~historie~~ memorable in the history of the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion by virtue of the fact that it was our good fortune to have the honour to capture the most historic City in the annals of the war.

Tue., Nov 12, 1918

During the fighting about MONS on the afternoon of the 10th four Other Ranks:-

418571 L/Cpl. Jones, B.R.	793792 Pte. Daigle, J.A.
228792 Pte. Mills, T.	466663 „, Brigden, B.
[228973]	

were unfortunately killed while attempting to surround and capture enemy machine gun posts which were operating on the Eastern edge of the Canal. All funeral arrangements were taken over by the City, and it may safely be stated that no other British soldiers had such an elaborate and memorable funeral as these. Very fine oak coffins were provided. The bodies lay in state in the Hotel de Ville from 10. am to 2.pm. and the citizens of MONS paid their respects by presenting many beautiful floral tributes. The funeral procession left the Hotel de Ville at 2.30 and proceeded by the Rue d'Havre to the Cemetery. The Services were conducted by Major G.G.D. Kilpatrick, DSO., our former Chaplain., and a Firing Party of 25 O.R. was Cont.

furnished by the Battalion. Addresses were given by the Burgomaster and the Parliamentary Representative of the City. Major-General F. O. W. Loomis, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. commanding the 3rd. Canadian Division, responded to the Addresses and extended to the people of MONS the thanks of the Division.

Their graves are placed in a commanding position on the right of the heroic men of the First Imperial Division who gave their lives in an effort to stem the German advance in the first days of the war. The City is erecting a marble monument in their memory.

Wed., Nov 13 & Thu., Nov 14, 1918

Usual cleaning up parades were held. Pay Parades were held in the afternoon of the 13th and Bath Parades on the 14th.

In the afternoon of the 14th the Officers attended a Divisional 5 O'Clock Tea and Theatre Party in the Hotel de Ville. A number of prominent citizens were invited as the Division's guests and after Tea the party attended the Theatre when "The Dumbells" presented "H.M.S. Pinafore."

Fri., Nov 15, 1918

General Sir H. S. Horne, [*Very smudged letter, possibly a K*] C.B., K.C.M.G., commanding the First Army, entered the City and was met by the Mayor and City Fathers, and formally welcomed. A Guard of Honour was furnished by the 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, each Battalion providing 125 Other Ranks.

After receiving the Freedom of the City there was a march past in which Units of every Division in the first Army participated.

Sat, Nov 16, 1918

Thanksgiving Service was held in the Theatre. All Units in the 3rd. Canadian Division were represented and the Battalion furnished sixty Other Rank s.

Sun, Nov 17 to Tue., Nov 26, 1918

The Battalion remained in MONS during this period. Parades were held daily and the Syllabus of Training included Route Marches in Heavy Marching Order and Smartening-Up Drill, with special classes for men deficient in Arm and Squad drill.

During this period all Steel Helmets and Small Box Respirators were packed and turned in to Quartermaster's Stores, from where they were shipped to the 3rd. D.M.T. [Company for Transportation, to accompany us on the march.

Football matches were played with teams from the 2nd. C.M.R., P.P.C.L.I., and the 58th Battalion, all of which we won.

On the 21st. Lieut.Col. R.L.H. Ewing, D,S,O., M.C. was present at the celebrations in BRUSSELS when the King of Belgium made his triumphal entry.

It was expected that the Brigade would move on its march to Germany on the 20th but this was postponed until the 23rd, when the move was again cancelled. It was originally intended that thirty-two British Divisions should march to the Rhine but this was later changed and and only eleven Divisions were sent forward, including the 1st. and 2nd. Canadians.

On the 24th. the 3rd. Canadian Division was transferred from Canadian Corps to the 4th Corps.

In the afternoon of the 26th the Battalion moved from the Caserne d'Infanterie to the following billets:-

H.Q. & B Company	–	Ecole Moyenne, Rue de Fetis
A Company	–	Ecole de Frere, Rue de Gades
C "	–	Ecole de Frere, Rue Notre Dame de Debonaire
D "	–	Ecole Cour de Bailly, do do

Wed., Nov 27, 1918

The King of Belgium paid an official visit to the City of MONS. A Guard of Honour was furnished by the 3rd. Canadian Division , one Battalion in each Brigade providing 100 men. Our Battalion was accorded the honour of representing the 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade.

During the month of November the following Decorations were awarded to Other Ranks:- for the Operations near CAMBRAI 29th/30th September.

2ND. BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL

132241 Sergt. G. Smith, MM. & Bar

BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL

418412 Pte. G [G.]J. McDonald, MM.

Wed., Nov 27, 1918 to Sat, Nov 30, 1918 Cont

THE MILITARY MEDAL

136638 Pte. Hopley, E.[F.]R.	3080161 Pte. Brandon, T.V.	838579 Pte. Jackson, M.T. [282579]
418073 Sgt. McTavish, N. [418072] [MacTavish]	1030366 " Lavis, C.	164150 " MacKinnon, N.B.
454751 Pte. Forrester, J.	193560 L/C. Duggan M.J. [193520]	123980 Cpl. Chase, A.
436536 Cpl. Lewison, R. 3075441 Pte. McDonald, F.D. [2075441] [MacDonald] [192225]	408079 Sgt. Fordham, A.G. 458227 Pte. King, G. 192226 Pte. Gibson, A.	418043 Sgt. Adamson, D.
418107 " Manley, W. [877647]	877640 " Russell, W.J. 2075446 " Wilson, W.W.	135773 " Lainson, A.
901405 Cpl. Leithead, D. [901406]		419099 " Fairbairn, E.
144349 Pte. McDonald, D. [192778]	193788 Sgt. Studholme F.R. [192778]	418578 Cpl. Freeman, J. [418570]
685014 " LeBuffe, R.W.	133131 Cpl. Herron, J.A.	

During the month the undermentioned reinforcements reported to the Battalion.

Lieut. W. A. Wooley,
,, A. W. MacMinn,
,, R. Holmden,
,, L. H. Benskin,

Capt. D. W. Christie,
 Capt. L. H. Black, MC, and 126 Other Ranks.

Casualties for the month were:-	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>DIED OF WOUNDS</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>
Officers			1
Other Ranks	6	4	22

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
 Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn, R. H. C.

2324 SECRET

'A'

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. COPY NO. 17
 OPERATION ORDER # 219

Ref.Maps/ Sheet 44 – 1/40,000
 51a. do

1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade will take over the Eastern front of the 8th Canadian Inf. Brigade on the night of the 6/7th November, 1918. The Brigade and # 2 Company, 3rd C.M.G. Battalion will move to the ONNAING Area on November 6th 1918.
 Further instructions regarding taking over the line from the 8th C.I.Brigade to be issued.
2.
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Bn. will move from billets in VICOIGNE to billets in ONNAING Area on the morning of the 6th November.
3.
ADVANCE PARTIES Advance Parties will proceed as follows:
 Lieut. A.B. Proven will proceed on horseback to ONNAING at 06.00 hours and make details of billeting arrangements in the Area X14.d. and X.20.b. Aftermaking arrangements he will report to Brigade Billeting Officer at Bittet 176, opposite Church in X.21.b. at 9.30 hours, when any necessary adjustments will be made.
 1 NCO and 4 OR per Company and H.Q. will proceed at 06.00 hours to ONNAING and report to Lieut. Proven on arrival there at junction of the roads in X.21.a.0.2.
- 4.

- PARADE The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off at 06.45 hours, head of column opposite Quartermaster's Stores, facing South.
5.
ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters – A – B – C – D Companies – Intervals of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies.
6.
STARTING POINT & TIME The Battalion will pass the Starting Point – V.4.d.4.0. at 07.10 hours.
7.
ROUTE VALENCIENNES to ONNAING via main VALENCIENNES-MONS Rd.
8.
DRESS, OFFS. BED ROLLS KITCHENS MESS BOXES ETC. As per instructions already issued.
9.
TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion
10.
WATCHES Watches will be synchronised with the Bn. Orderly Room at 06.00 hours.
11.
MARCHING OUT STATES Marching Out Stated will be turned in to Orderly Room at 06.00 hours.
12.
REPORTS Completion of move will be reported by runner to new Battalion H.Q., ONNAING.

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT.....

		W. C. BABER,	
Copy # 1	7th C.I.Bde.	10.11	LG.O & LG. Sgt.
2& 2	O.C. & 2 i/c	12	QM. Lieut. Asst. Adjt.
3	Adjutant	13	TP
4.5.6.7.	O. Cs. Coys.	14	MO.
8.	Scout O	15	RSM.
9. Sig. O.	16. 17. 18	War Diary	
	19	File.	

NARRATIVE OF OPERATIONS
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
NOVEMBER 9th – 11th (both inclusive), 1918

1. Preliminary Operations

Nov. 9th.

The Battalion in billets in THULIN. Working Parties of 300 OR. Were supplies to fill mine craters and repair roads.

At 12.00 hours orders were received to move to BOUSSU. Working Parties were immediately recalled and the Battalion moved off at 13.50 hours.

During the march instructions were issued that the Battalion would continue to JEMAPPES, where it arrived at 16.30 hours and went into billets for the night.

Noc. 10th.

Reconnaissance of the Forward Area was made by the Commanding Officer and Scout Officer. At 08.30 hours orders were received that the Battalion would move forward and relieve the P.P.C.L.I. South of the CONDE-MONS CANAL. A Company of the R.C.R. UNDER Captain Home, M.C. was attached to the Battalion and placed under orders of the Commanding Officer.

Number of Officers engaged:- 22

Number of O.R. engaged 485

11. Offensive Operations

At 09.00 hours "A" Company under Lieut. J.B.T. Montgommerie, MC., MM., and "C" Company under Captain E. B. Finley, MC., left JEMAPPES to relieve the P.P.C.L.I. "A" Company were on the right and had orders to work around to the South of MONS and effect an entrance to the city over the Bridge Heads in Q.13.b. and Q.14.a. In the event of these Bridges being destroyed they were to push further forward and work in on the Eastern outskirts of the city.

"C" Company were kept in Support along the Railway Embankment in P.11.c.17.2

At 10.30 hours "D" Company under Captain W. A. Grafftey, were ordered to relieve a Company of the P.P.C.L.I. immediately South of the CONDE-MONS CANAL, and to force an entrance into MONS in the vicinity of the Railway Station.

At 09.00 hours Battalion Headquarters moved to Billet 44 in QUESMES at approximately P.24.a.4.7. "B" Coy. under Lieut. W. H. Molson, MC., was left in reserve and with Headquarter Details remained at JEMAPPES.

"A" Company on relieving the P.P.C.L.I. immediately pushed forward a screen of Scouts to reconnoitre the Bridge Heads in 13.b. They were met with very heavy machine gun fire from the Canal Bank which swept all approaches to the Bridge Heads. An O.P. was established on the slag heap and two of the machine guns were definitely located firing from houses on the Northern bank of the Canal. These were engaged by the 24th Battery, C.F.A., but no concentrated barrage was put down as it was desired to cause as little damage as pos-

sible to Civilian property. The shrapnel barrage, however, proved ineffective and the machine guns continued active, making further progress in this direction impossible during daylight.

It was then decided to attempt an entrance by the Bridge Head in Q.14.a. One Platoon worked its way in the rear of the houses through Q.13.b. and Q.13.d., reaching the road running through Q.13.d. and Q.14.b. Scouts were sent out but heavy machine gun fire was encountered from the Canal Bank in 14.a. Owing to the flatness of the country progress was very slow. Under cover of occasional bursts of artillery fire this platoon worked forward but were unable to reach the Bridge Head during daylight. At dusk the platoon was in position along the road with outposts in front.

Several machine guns were located firing from MONT PANISEL and the high ground in Q.15.b. and d. These were engaged with 6" Hows and 60 Pounders. The shoot was apparently very effective as the fire from these very greatly diminished.

Arrangements were made with Brutinel's Brigade to send forward four motor lorries with 6" Newtons, to be put in position after dusk on the roads in Q.13.b. and Q.14.a., for the purpose of engaging machine guns operating from the Northern bank of the Canal. It was also arranged with the 24th Battery that two of their guns would be man-handled into position on these roads in order that the enemy machine gun posts could be shot up at point blank range *Point Blank*

At 12.30 hours "B" Company on the left relieved a Company of the P.P.C.L.I. in P.12.a. The Company frontage extended from the River running East and West through P.12.c. & d. on the South of the CONDEMONS CANAL through P.12.a. & b. on the North. This Company advanced on a two platoon front and was held up at 13.30 hours on the road running North and South through P.12.a. & c. by enemy machine guns and rifle fire from P.12.d.75.65 – P.12.d.50.30 and P.12.b.60.40. The progress from this road forward was slow and was only possible working through gardens and climbing over the walls in the rear of the houses on both sides of the road running in a South Easterly direction towards the enemy post in P.12.d.75.65. By 17.00 hours posts were established on either side of the road at P.12.d.35.95. Lieut. M. McLaren was wounded by machine gun fire while establishing these posts.

As the majority of the machine guns were located on the right flank and the heaviest opposition was coming from this quarter it was decided to force an entrance on the extreme left along the Southern edge of the CONDEMONS CANAL, to work through the city and cut off the machine gun operating on the Southern Canal bank. Instructions were accordingly issued and at 19.00 Lieut. D. M. Handy with No. 14 Platoon started up the Canal Bank. After careful manoeuvring under enemy fire he made good a post at P.12.b.60.60. This post was established at 21.00 hours.

At 22.00 hours Capt. W. A. Grafftey and Lieut. D. M. Handy with No. 16 Platoon left the post at P.12.b.60.60 and under cover of two Lewis

Guns which engaged the enemy post on the right, passed through the MONS Railway Yard and entered the city at a point near the Station at 23.00 hours. The enemy Machine Guns were still covering the approaches to the city at P.12.d.9.5. and the remaining two platoons of the Company were immediately sent for and by 01.00 hours on the morning of the 11th the whole Company had entered the city

Lieut. J. C. Stewart, MC. with No. 14 Platoon was sent through the centre of the city and made good a position on the Eastern outskirts in Q.18.c.8.8. This cut off the enemy who had not left the machine gun post at P.12.d.9.5. Another platoon attacked the enemy machine gun post from the rear, and after a sharp exchange of Machine Gun fire and grenades the crew was captured. The third platoon was sent round the Northern outskirts of the town and joined up with Captain Stewart's platoon at Q.18.c.8.8.

At 02.00 hours Capt. E. B. Finley, MC. with C Company entered the town passing through the centre of the city and took up a position in Q.9.a. and K.22 central.

At 03.00 hours Capt. White with a Company of the P.P.C.L.I. arrived in the city and were held in Support.

"B" Company of the 42nd. under Lieut. W. H. Molson, MC. were also placed in position in Support near the Hotel de Ville.

While these Operations were being carried out on the left, "A" Company worked its way under very heavy Machine Gun fire to the Bridge Heads in Q.13.b. and Q.14.a. Both these Bridges were destroyed and the Canal could not be crossed.

At about 02.30 hours on the morning of the 11th the machine guns which had been guarding the Canal Bank on the South of MONS were cut off and the right Company immediately constructed a foot bridge in Q.14.a. and entered the city about 03.00 hours.

By 06.00 hours the city was completely mopped-up and posts were established East of the outskirts in Q.4.a. & c. and 19.b. & d.

Battalion Headquarters moved to MONS and was established in the Hotel de Ville, at 06.30 hours, at 06.30 hours.

Fifteen prisoners were captured during the Operation.

The 24th and 39th Batteries, C.F.A. who were attached to the Battalion did excellent work.

The Pipe Band played through the City just after daybreak and reated tremendous enthousiasm.

CASUALTIES	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>
Officers	-	1
Other Ranks	6	24

TOTAL

6

25

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn, R. H. C.

Sun., Dec 1, 1918

The Battalion in billets at MONS. Usual parades carried on.
Capt. L.G. Black, M.C. was appointed O.C. Headquarters Company.
Working parties for scraping and painting steel helmets were supplied.

Mon., Dec 2, 1918

Major R. Willcock, M.C. O.C. Educational training issued instructions and syllabus in connection with the proposed educational work.
Usual parades were carried out and working parties for steel helmets were supplied.

Tue., Dec 3, 1918

Assembly of instructors and students for educational training was held at 21 Rue de Fétis.
About 400 students enrolled and classes were organised in reading, writing, bookkeeping and business training, elementary arithmetic, French, motormechanics, electricity and agriculture.

Wed., Dec 4, 1918

The officers of the Battalion gave a dance to the citizens of MONS in the Salon, Hotel de Ville, on the night of the 4th. The Hotel de Ville was very kindly given to the Battalion by the Burgomaster for this purpose. The dance was largely attended.

Thu., Dec 5, 1918

His Majesty, King George the Fifth, passed through the city about 11.00 hours. He was accompanied by the Prince of Wales and Prince Albert. There was no official parade but the Battalion lined both sides of the Grand Place. The King received a rousing reception.

Fri., Dec 6, 1918

In the early afternoon orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would move to LA HESTRE on the following day. These orders were later cancelled and advice was received we would not move before the 10th.

Sat., Dec 7, 1918

All Units of the Brigade carried out a route march., leaving MONS about 09.00 hours. The Brigade marched via Grande ~~Place~~ Rue and Place de Flandres through HYON and St. SYMPHORIEN returning by the main ST SYMPHORIEN-MONS Road, arriving back about 12.30 hours.

Sun., Dec 8, 1918

Church service was held in the Church Place du Parc.

Mon., Dec 9, 1918

Parades and educational classes were held in the morning. Sports in the afternoon. The undermentioned awards were published in Divisional Routine Orders issued on that day. for operations near CAMBRAI.

Bar to the Military Cross

Capt. (A/Major) C.B. Topp, DSO. MC.
Lieut. (A/Capt.) H.B. Trout, M. C.

The Military Cross

Lieut. J. W. Cave
Lieut. L. H. Biggar

The Distinguished Conduct Medal.

418363 Sgt. Hodge A.J. (S.O.S. to England)
418818 Sgt. Wardleworth, J.
902249 Cpl. Kiely, (MM) J.J.

Tue., Dec 10, 1918

Orders were received that move to LA HESTRE Area would take place on the 11th.

Wed., Dec 11, 1918

The Battalion left MONS at 08.30 hours and marched to BOIS D'HAINES, a distance of about 25 kilometres. A halt was made between 12.00 and 13.00 hours for dinner. On arrival the Battalion went into billets.

The Brigade had spent exactly one month in MONS, having captured the city on the morning of the 11th November.

Thu., Dec 12, 1918

The Battalion marched to NIVELLE, 15 kilometres, leaving BOIS D'HAINES at 08.15 hours and arriving at NIVELLES at 12.30 where they went into billets.

Fri., Dec 13, 1918

Training and educational classes were carried on. The undermentioned decorations were published In Divisional Routine Orders for operations in or about BOIS DES RAISMES.

Bar to the Military Medal.

2075441 L/Cpl. S.B. Macdonald.

The Military Medal.

102601 [192601] Sgt. A. E. Smith
132599 Cpl. P. Odell.
127511 Pte. E. E. Robinson.
132581 Pte. D. Ferguson
198987 Sgt. J.J.Gibson.
901522 Cpl. W.R.Bird.
902123 Cpl. W.H. Barron.
418918 L/Cpl.M. [W.] Brown.
749212 Pte. A.B. Dunsmore

In the afternoon of the 13th. the officers annual Bottle Race took place. Col. Ewing's bottle received first prize.

Sat., Dec 14, 1918

The usual training and educational classes were carried on in the morning. In the afternoon orders were received to stand to, ready to move to GENVAL on receipt of further instructions. At a later hour move for that day was cancelled. In the afternoon permission was received from Brigade to hold a Battalion Bottle Race. An excellent course was located on the LASNE River and the race proved most exciting. No. 1 platoon won first place.

Sun., Dec 15, 1918

The Battalion marched from NIVELLE to GENVAL, about 22 kilometres. On the march up we passed through the historical battle field of Waterloo.

Mon., Dec 16 & Tue., Dec 17, 1918

The usual training [*training*] and educational classes were carried out.

Lieut. H.A.Sewell, Lieut. C.G.Heward and Lieut. J.B.T. Montgomerie received permission to wear the badges of Captain pending confirmation.

Wed., Dec 18 to Tue., Dec 24, 1918

The Battalion in billets in GENVAL. Parades were carried out. Classes in elementary Algebra and German and officers classes in German and French were organised.

During this period the Battalion received allotments for two days leave to BRUSSELS for officers and O.R. These passes were very popular and quite a large percentage of the members of the Battalion were able to avail themselves of this privilege.

Wed., Dec 25, 1918

Christmas dinners were held for all Companies with the exception of "C" Company. Two large halls were very kindly loaned to the Battalion by the owners and turkey was purchased for the whole Battalion and dinners were exceptionally good. "A" Company and Headquarters had their dinner at 12.30 hours and "B" and "D" Companies at 15.30 hours. The Burgomaster attended the evening dinners and addressed the troops.

Thu., Dec 26, 1918 The usual parades and educational classes were carried on. "C" Company's Christmas dinner was held at 12.30 hours.

Fri., Dec 27, 1918

The Battalion commenced its march to the TOURNAI-LILLE Area for demobilization and moved from GENVAL to BOITSFORT. The route followed was a very beautiful one being almost entirely through the Foret de SOIGNES.

Sir Henry Rawlinson Bart, G.C.V.O., K.C.B. K.C.M.G. Commanding 4th Army took a march past en route.

Sat., Dec 28, 1918

The Battalion marched from BOITSFORT to VLESENBEEK, a distance of 16 kilometres. The march was made in a steady downpour of rain.

Sun., Dec 29, 1918

Marched from VLESENBEEK to DENDERWINDEKE- about 17 kilometres – and arrived in billets about 12.30 hours. The weather continued wet.

Mon., Dec 30, 1918

Marched from DENDERWINDEKE to NEDERBRAKEL a distance of 24 kilometres and arrived in billets about 15.30 hours. Dinner was served en route. The march was commenced in a drizzling rain but the weather cleared by noon.

Tue., Dec 31, 1918

In NEDERBRAKEL – the Division having been given one day's halt.

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Col.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

'A'

OPERATION ORDER NO.220

42nd. Canadian Battalion. R.-H. C.

Ref.Maps/ Valenciennes 1/100,000

COPY NO 15

Namur

do

TUESDAY, DEC, 10TH, 1918

1

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade and attached Units will move
To LA HESTRE on the 11th instant.

2.

INTENTION The 42nd.Battalion,R.H.C. will march from MONS to Billets
in LA HESTRE on the 11th instant.

3.

PARADE The Battalion will fall in – ready to move off – with head of
column facing East, on Rue Gados opposite "A" Company's Billet,
at 07.45 Hours.

4.

ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters – A – B – C – D Companies.

5

STARTING POINT AND TIME The Battalion will pass the Starting Point – Road Junction South
of "A" in BARTHELEMEY, [?] ¾ Mile East of MONS, at 08.30 Hours.

6.

ROUTE ST.SYMPHORIEN - HAINE-ST.PAUL – LA HESTRE.

7

DRESS Heavy Marching Order – Greatcoats in packs Steel Helmets carried
on the pack – Mess Tins in Packs.

8

OFFICERS' Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M.Stores

BEDROLLS at 06.45 Hours.

MESS BOXES BLANKETS to be rolled by Companies in budles of ten and
BLANKETS properly marked, and piled outside H.Q. Company Billet Rue Fetis by
ETC. 06.30hrs.

9

KITCHENS Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.00 Hours.

10

TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11

BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left in a
thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12

MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned in to Orderly Room by 07.30 Hours.

13

HALTS Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each Clock Hour to each
Clock hour.

A Halt from 11.30 Hours to 13.00 Hours will be observed for Lunch.

14

TIME Watches will be synchronized by all Companies with the Battalion
Orderly Room, at 22.00 Hours this date.

J. D. MACLEOD,

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT 6.50 pm.

COPY No.1 to HQ. 7th C.I.Bde.

Captain/Adjutant

2,3,4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.

5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ. Coys.

10.11. 12 QM. TO. MO.

-- -- 13 R.S.M.

14.15.16 War Diary

- - 17 File.

Operation Order No.221

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref./Namur 1/100,000

COPY NO. 15

Maps/Brussels- do

WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 11TH, 1918

1.

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade and attached Units will
move to NIVELLES on the 12th instant.

2

INTENTION The 42nd. Battalion, R.H.C. will march from LA HESTRE
Area to billets in NIVELLES on the 12th instant.

3

PARADE The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, with head of co-

lumn facing North East opposite H.Q. Billet – The Monastery – at
08.15 Hours tomorrow.

4

ORDER OF MARCH HEADQUARTERS –A – B – C – D Companies

5

STARTING POINT AND TIME MANAGE where the railway crosses the main FAYTE-LES-
SENEFFE-NIVELLES-Road,
Battalion to pass Starting Point at 09.13 Hours

6

ROUTE FAYTE-LES-SENEFFE – NIVELLES Road

7

DRESS Heavy Marching Order – Greatcoats in packs – Steel Helmets
carried on the pack – Mess Tins in Packs.

8

OFFICERS' BEDROLLS Officers Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc., will be piled at Q.M.Stores
at 7.15 Hours.

MESS BOXES BLANKETS to be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and
BLANKETS and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. Stores at 07.00
ETC.

9

KITCHENS Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.30 Hours.

10

TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11

BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left in
a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12

MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned in to Orderly Room by 07.45 Hours to-
morrow.

13

HALTS Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each Clock Hour

14

TIME Watches will be synchronized by all Companies with the Battalion
Orderly Room by 07.30 Hours to-morrow.

J. D. MACLEOD,

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT 20.15

Copy No.1 to 7th C.I.Bde.

Captain/Adj.

2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c Adj.

5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs.A.B.C.D.HQ Coys.

10. 11. 12 QM TO MO

-- -- 13 R.S.M.

14 15 16 War Diary

-- -- 17 File.

Operation Order No.222
42nd. Canadian Battalion, -R.- H. C.

Ref. COPY NO. 15
Map/ Brussels 1/100,000 SATURDAY, DECEMBER 14TH, 1918

1
INSTRUCTION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Group will move to the
 CHAINE-GENVAL Area on the 15th instant.

2
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Bn., R.H.C. will march to billets in GENVAL.

3
PARADE The Battalion will fall in – ready to move off – at 08.45 Hours,
 with head of column facing Church and opposite Orderly Room.

4
ORDER OF MARCH Pipe Band – H.Q. – A – B – C – D Coys.

5
STARTING POINT Railway Crossing main NIVELLES BRUSSELS Rd. between
 points 27 and 28.

6
TIME The Battalion will pass Starting Point at 09.25 Hours.

7
ROUTE LILLOIS-WITTERZEE – MONT ST.JEAN BAS RANS-BEQUE.[?]

8
DRESS Heavy Marching Order – Greatcoats in Packs – Steel Helmets
 carried on Packs.

9
OFFICERS' BEDROLLS Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc, will be piled at Q.M.
MESS BOXES BLANKETS Stores by 07.45 Hours.
ETC. BLANKETS will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and
 properly marked, and piled at Q.M.Stores by 07.45 Hours.

10
KITCHENS will be ready to move off by 08.00 Hours.

11
TRANSPORT will accompany the Battalion.

12
BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left
 in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

13
MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.15 Hours to-
 morrow 15th instant.

14
HALTS Usual Halts will be observed – Noon Hour halt one hour ten
 minutes from 11.50 to 13.00 Hours.

15
 ISSUED BY RUNNER AT _____ J. M. MACLEOD,

COPY NO. 1 7th C.I.Bde. Captain/Adjt.
 2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
 5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D. HQ Coys.
 10.11.12 QM TO MO
 - - - -13 R.S.M.
 14 15 16 War Diary
 - - 17 File

15

Operation Order No. 223
 by SECRET
 Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, DSO. MC.
 Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Ref. Map Brussels 1/100,m000 26th December 1918

1. Information P.P.C.L.I. and 42nd Canadian Battalion,R.H.C. will move to BOITSFORT on the 27th inst.
2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. will march from GENVAL to billets in BOITSFORT.
3. Parades. Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 09.15 hours. Head of column opposite YMCA. facing north.
4. Order of march Half of pipe band – HQ – A.B. – half of pipe band C. D.
5. Starting point MARIE GENVAL.
6. Time The Battalion will pass starting point at 09.30 hours.
7. Route. GENVAL – LA HULPE – HOEYLAERT – BOITSFORT.
8. Dress. Heavy marching order, great coats in packs, steel helmets carried on packs. Mess tins in packs.
9. Bed rolls,
 Mess boxes,
 Blankets etc. Officers' bed rolls, Mess boxes etc. piled in front of Company Headquarters at 08.00 hours Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M stores at 07.30 hours.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 10. Kitchens | Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.15 hours. |
| 11. Billets. | Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition. |
| 12. Marching out States. | Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.30 hours. |
| 13. Halts. | Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour. |

Issued by runner at	J. D. MacLeod, Captain Adjutant
1.	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adj.
5.6.7.8.9.	O.C. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
10.11.12	Q.M. T.O. M.O.
13.	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17.	File.

15
Operation Order No. 223A
by
Secret
Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO.MC.
Cmd. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Ref. Map Brussels 1/100,000 27th December 1918.

- | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|---|
| 1. | Intention. | The 42nd Canadian Battalion, RHC, will march from BOITSFORT t [to] billets in VLESENBEEK on the 28th inst. |
| 2. | Parades.
[Parades] | The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 08.50 hours. Head of column opposite Battalion Headquarters, facing West. |
| 3. | Order of march | Half of pipe band, HQ. A.B. half of pipe band C and D. |
| 4. | Starting point | Where roads crosses railway at BOITSFORT Station. |
| [5] | Time | The Battalion will past starting point at 09.15 hours. |
| [6] | Route. | VIVIER d'OIE – DREOGENBOSCH [?]- to BIGARD |

- Stn. To main Brussels – Hal Road thence west to ZUCH-
thence North to 3 D.25.55 – INN – VLESENBECK.
7. Dress. Heavy marching order, great coats in packs, steel helmets carried on packs.
 8. Bed Rolls, Mess boxes Blankets etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. HQ, *D* and B will be piled at Q.M. stores at 07.30 hours, A and C Cos. bed rolls mess boxes etc. will be piled in fr nt [*front*] of Company Headquarters at 07.15 hrs. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M. stores by 07.30 hours.
 9. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 hours.
 10. Transport. Transport will accompany Battalion.
 11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.
 12. Marching out States Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.00 hours.
 13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

J.D. MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.

Issued by runner at
Distribution –

1	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
[5].6.7.8.9.	O.C. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
[10].11.12	Q.M. T.O. M.O.
[13]	R.S.M.
[14].15.16	War Diary.
[17]	File.

Operation Order No. 224	Copy No..15
by	SECRET
Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, DSO, MC.	
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.	
Reference Map Brussels 1/100,000	28th December 1918.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Bde. Group will continue the march to 'B' Area on December 29th.
2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from VLESEN-BEEK to billets in DENDERKINDEKE. on the 29th inst.
3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 08.20 hours. Head of column opposite Chateau, Headquarters, facing west.
- [?] Order of march Half of pipe band, HQ A.B. Cos, half of pipe band C and D Companies.
4. Starting point Cross roads south of P in OPBEEK.
5. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 08.30 hours.
6. Route. OPBEEK – GAESBEEK – LENNICK – ST QUENTIN – STUIVENBERG – NEYGHEM – LINKENBEEK – DENDERWINDEKE.
7. Dress. Heavy marching order greatcoats in packs, steel helmets on packs.
8. Bed rolls Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled in front of Company Headquarters at 07.15 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.30 hours.
- Mess boxes
- Blankets etc.
9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.45 hours.
10. Transport. Transport will accompany Battalion.
11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.
12. Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.00 hours.
13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour. Noon day halt from 11.50 - 13.00 hours.

J.D. MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.

Issued by runner at

Distribution-

[1.] 7th C.I.B.

[2.3.] 4. C.O. 2 i/c Adj.

5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ. Cos.

10.11.12. Q.M. T.O. M.O.

13. R.S.M.

14.15.16 War Diary

17. File.

SECRET Operation Order No. 225 COPY NO_15__

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref. Brussels – 1/100,000

Maps Tournai do SUNDAY, DECEMBER 29TH. 1918

1

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march to-morrow December 30th.

2

INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from DENDERKINDEKE to billets in NEDERBRAKEL on the 30th instant.

3

PARADES The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 08.30 hours, head of column opposite Q.M. Stores – Richoud Van Ongeval, facing North.

4.

ORDER OF MARCH Half of PipeBand – HQ – A B Coys – Half of Pipe Band – C – D – Companies.

5

STARTING POINT Junction of main NINOVE–BRUSSELS, NINOVE-ENGHIEN Roads.

6

TIME The Battalion will pass the Starting Point at 9.40 hours.

7

ROUTE NINOVE – OPHASSELT – NEDERBRAKEL.

8

OFFICERS' BEDROLLS Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.30 Hours.

MESS BOXES BLANKETS will be rolled by Companies in bundles of
BLANKETS ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M.Stores by 07.30
ETC. Hours.

9

KITCHENS Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 Hours.

10

TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11

BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12

MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned in to Orderly Room by 08.00 Hours.

13

HALTS Usual Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

Noon day halt from 11.30 to 13.00 Hours.

Issued by Runner at 16.15 Hours, J. D. MACLEOD,

Copy No. 1 HQ 7th C.I.Bde.

2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.

5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ Coys.

10.11.12. QM TO MO.

13. R.S.M.

14.15.16. War Diary

17. File.

Operation Order No. 226

by

Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Copy No...15...

SECRET

Ref. Map Tournai 1/100,000

Tuesday December 31st 1918.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march tomorrow, January 1st 1919 to RENAI [*RENAIX*]Area.
2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. will march on 1st January 1919 from NEDERBRAKEL to billets in RENAI.
3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 08.40 hours, head of column opposite Battalion Orderly Room facing south west.
4. Order of march. Half of pipe band – HQ – A – B Coys, - Half of pipe band – C – D Companies.
5. Starting point. Cross roads half a kilometre South of P in OPBRAKEL.
6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 09.20 hours.
7. Route. Main roads to destination.
8. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled at Company Headquarters by 07.00 hours, except H.Q Coy. who will pile at Q.M. stores at 07.45 hours Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. stores by 07.30 hours.
9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 hours.

- 10.Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.
- 11.Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.
- 12.Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.00 hours.
- 13.Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.
Noon day halt from 11.50 – 13.00 hours.

J.D.MacLeod.

Issued by runner at 16.15 hours

Captain Adjutant.

Distribution –

- | | |
|------------|------------------------|
| No.1 copy | 7th C.I.B. |
| 2.3.4. | C.O. 2 i/c Adj. |
| 5.6.7.8.9. | C.Os. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos. |
| 10.11.12. | M.O. Q.M. T.O. |
| 13 | R.S.M. |
| 14.15.16 | War Diary. |
| 17. | File. |

1919

Wed., Jan 1, 1919

The Battalion marched from DENDERBRAKEL to RENAIX where it went into billets for the night.

Work on demobilization commenced.

Thu., Jan 2, 1919

Left RENAIX at 08.30 Hours, arriving at HERRINES [*HERINNES*], arriving there at 14.00 Hours where the Battalion went into Billets.

Fri., Jan 3, 1919

The Battalion marched from HERRINES [*HERINNES*] to NECHIN, arriving there at 12. noon, and went into billets.

Fri., Jan 3 to Fri., Jan 31, 1919

The Battalion remained in NECHIN during this period. Educational Classes were carried on daily in the Convent which was very kindly placed at our disposal. Parades were held daily between the hours of 09.00 and 12.00. Work consisted principally of Inspection – P.T. and Games – Smartening-up Drill and Route Marches. In the afternoons sports were carried on and inter-Company and inter-Battalion Hockey and Football Games played.

25 Passes per day were granted to men of the Unit to visit LILLE.

4th. Difficiency [*Deficiency*] and Pay Parades were held.

The following congratulatory message was received from Sir John Maxell, Colonel of the Black Watch, Royal Highlanders:

December 28th, 1918

Dringthorpe, York.

"General Sir John Maxwell thanks the Officer Commanding and Officers of the Royal Highlanders of Canada for their good wishes and takes this opportunity as Colonel of the Black Watch to congratulate the 42nd. Canadian Battalion on the magnificent results achieved by them during this War. He regrets very much that he has not had an opportunity of making the acquaintance of the Regiment and hopes he may yet find an occasion to do so. He wishes one and all every good wish and prosperity. "

9th- 10th. Medical Board and Dental Inspection was carried out in connection with Demobilization – about 700 being examined,

11th – Colour Party, composed as under, proceeded to England to escort the King's and Regimental Colours to the Battalion:

	Captain J. D. MacLeod, MC.
	Captain C. G. Heward,
132241 CSM Smith, G. (MM)	441179 Sgt. Trowse, C. (DCM)
192421 Pte. Gibson, A. (MM)	902249 Cpl. Kiely, J.J. (DCM. MM)
[192225]	
132421 Pte. Stapley, F.C. (MM)	754441 Cpl. Hanes, M.E.

15th – All English leave – with the exception of leave for men with dependents in England – was cancelled in view of the move to England by the Division.

17th – The Brigade was inspected by Lieutenant-General Sr Arthur Currie, K. C.B. K. C.M.G.

29th – The Colours were consecrated and presented to the Battalion, the presentation being made by Major-General F.O.W. Loomis, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. , Brigadier-General J. A. Clark, D.S.O. was also present.

Award of the following decorations was published during the month:

THE MILITARY CROSS

Captain W. A. Grafftey,

THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

418784 C.S.M. Davies, J.L. (M.M.) 3rd. Cdn. Div. R.O. 5.1.19

BELGIAN CROIX DE GUERRE

418877 Sergt. Haslett, J. 3rd. Cdn. Div. R.O. 3847 17.1.19

Following are the total casualties from November 16th, 1915 to November 11th, 1918:

	<u>KILLED IN ACTION</u>	<u>DIED OF WOUNDS</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>	<u>TOTALS</u>
OFFICERS	20	6	87	113
OTHER RANKS	546	174	2,077	2,797
	566	180	2, 164	2, 910

E. R. Pease MajorCol

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C.

Operation Order No. 227
by
Lieut. Col.R.L.H.Ewing,DSO, MC, Secret
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Ref. Map TOURNAI 1/100,000 Wednesday 1st January 1919.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march tomorrow January 2nd 1919 to '?' Area.
2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march on 2nd January from RENAIX to billets in HERINNES.
3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off,at 08.15 hours, head of column opposite Battalion Orderly Room, facing south west.
- 4.Order of march. Half of pipe band – HQ – A – B Coys. – Half of pipe band – C – D – Companies.
- 5.Starting point. Cross roads on TOURNAIX [*TOURNAI*]– RENAIX Road south of M in MEULREEK [?] River.
6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 09.00 hours.
7. Route. GLIEST[?] – MOLE?RAIX – Chemin VERT – HERINNES.
- 8.Officers' Bed rolls,mess boxes etc. Officers bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.15 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of two and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. stores by 07.15 hours.
- 9.Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.45 hours.
- 10.Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.
11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.
- 12.Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into the Orderly Room by 07.45 hours.
- 13.Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.
Noon day halt from 11.50 – 13.00 hours.

Distribution :- J.D.MacLeod.
No.1 Copy 7th C.I.B. Captain/Adjutant.

2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9	C.Os. – A.B.C.D. HQ. Cos.
10.11.12	M.O. T.O. Q.M.
13	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17.	File.

Operation Order No. 238.

by

Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, DSO, MC. Copy No.....
 Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. SECRET

Reference Map TOURNAI 1/100,000 Thursday 2nd January 1919.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will march tomorrow January 3rd 1919 to 'F' Area.
2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from HERINNES to NECHIN.
3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 09.50 hours, head of column facing south, opposite 'B' Company's Headquarters, about one kilo. south of the Battalion Orderly Room.
4. Order of march. Half of pipe band – HQ – A – B Cos. Half of pipe band – C – D Companies.
5. Starting point. Pecq Station.
6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point 10.00 hours.
7. Route. PECQ Station, PECQ, NECHIN.
8. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes for HQ. A, C, and D Cos. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 08.45 hours, B Company's will be piled in front of Company Headquarters by 08.30 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M. stores by 08.30 hours.
9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off 09.00 hours.
10. Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.
11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets

are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into the Battalion Orderly Room by 09.00 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

J.D. MacLeod,
Capt. Adjt.

Issued by runner at 23.30 hours.

Distribution :-

No. 1 Copy	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9.	O.Cs. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
10.11.12	M.O. T.O. Q.M.
13	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17	File.

Sat., Feb 1, 1919

The 3rd. Canadian Division started entraining from BASSIEUX [*BASIEUX*] for England via LE HAVRE.

Sun., Feb 2, 1919

13 Officers and 300 Other Ranks proceeded on 8 days demobilization Leave to England, under instructions to report to BRAMSHOTT at its expiration and meet the rest of the Battalion there.

Mon., Feb 3, 1919

4 Officers and 64 Other Ranks proceeded to England on 8 days demobilization Leave. The remainder of the Battalion entrained at BASSIEUX [*BASIEUX*] for LE HAVRE. The journey took over forty eight hours, the Unit arriving at LE HAVRE on the 5th, and the train was composed entirely of box cars.

Tue., Feb 4, 1919

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Wed., Feb 5, 1919

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Thu., Feb 6, 1919

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Fri., Feb 7, 1919

The Battalion proceeded from LE HAVRE to WEYMOUTH arriving there in the early morning of the 8th, and entraining about 11.00 Hours for BRAMSHOTT which was reached at 17.00 Hours.

The various Divisional Wings in France had preceded the Corps to England with their staffs and were in charge of the Bramshott Camp. "A" Wing had charge of North Camp where the Battalion was located.

Sat., Feb 8, 1919

[Note transcriber: there is no entry for this date.]

Sun., Feb 9 to Fri., Feb 28, 1919

9th. Medical boarding of the Battalion commenced.

The general plan was – All men who had arrived in Camp with the Unit were medically boarded and all their documents for demobilization completed, after which they were despatched on 8 days demobilization leave. As soon as those who had proceeded from France on leave returned to Camp they went through boarding and documentation.

The boarding of the Unit took considerable more time than was anticipated owing to the delay and difficulty in obtaining the men's papers. The Casualty Forms of a large number were still in France, the Attestation Papers and Medical History Sheets at the Records Office in London, and great difficulty was experienced in tracing and obtaining these.

The boarding of the Unit was not finally completed until the 28th of the month the day before the Unit left Camp.

Training was carried on for two or three hours each morning as far as weather conditions would allow. These during the entire stay of the Unit in Bramshott were most unfavourable.

22nd. The following farewell message to the Brigade was received from Major-General Sir Archibald Cameron Macdonell, K.C.B. :-

1st. Canadian Division

February 6th, 1919

My Dear Clark,

Forgiveme for bothering you, but I cannot let the dear old Brigade be demobilized without a word from myself. Will you please convey to each and every Unit of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade my heartfelt wishes for their welfare, success and happiness on being demobilized. It is a proud boast for me to be able to say that at one time I commanded such a Brigade. I have no fear but that they will succeed in civil life if they exhibit the same qualities of courage, initiative, thorough-

ness, and tenacity of purpose that they showed to such a large degree in the battle field.

The best of good luck attend you and the Old Brigade in all your undertakings,

I am,

Yours sincerely,

(Signed) Archibald Cameron Macdonell.

23rd. The Adjutant – Captain J. D. Macleod, MC- who was on leave in London was admitted to hospital where it was discovered that he was suffering from Diphtheria.

25th. Brig. General Hugh M. Dyer, C.M.G., D.S.O. visited BRAMSHOTT and a Brigade Parade was held at which he said farewell to the Brigade.

26th. A special investiture for Officers of the 3rd. Canadian Division was held by the King at Buckingham Palace, at which the undermentioned Officers were invested with decorations set forth:-

		<u>INVESTED WITH</u>	<u>INVESTED WITH</u>
Lieut. Col.	R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC.	DSO & MC	Capt. W.A. Grafftey MC, MC
Major	R. Willcock, MC	MC & Bar to MC	Capt. J. K. Beveridge, MC, MC
"	S.J. Mathewson, MC	Bar to MC	Capt Wm. Hale, MC. Bar to MC
			Lieut. J. W. Cave, MC. MC

The following Officers left the Battalion and proceeded on two weeks leave at the expiration of which they were to report to the Quebec Regimental Depot, South RIPON, and proceed from there to Canada with their wives:

Captain J. B. T. Montgomerie, MC.

Lieut. A. B. Proven, MM

" P. Ackerley, DCM

" D. B. Macaskill, MC

" G. S. Ryder,

27th Lieuts. F. C. Nobell, J.M. Kavanagh, MCR. N. Munroe joined the Unit from the 20th Canadian Reserve Bn.,

28th Boarding and Documentation of the Unit was completed and orders were issued that the Battalion would entrain at LIPHOOK Station on the morning of the 1st. for LIVERPOOL to sail on that date on the R.M. S. ADRIATIC.

The men of the Dispersal Areas of MONCTON, ST. JOHN and QUEBEC, numbering 45 were to remain under command of Lieuts. A. C. Baldwin and A. W. MacMinn and proceed by the next boat.

The strength of the Unit on this date was as follows:-

	OFFICERS	OTHER RANKS
REMAINING IN BRAMSHOTT SAILING ON NEXT BOAT	2	45
A.W.L.		7
IN HOSPITAL		26
DISPATCHED TO RIPON FOR VARIOUS REASONS		37

	2	115
PROCEEDED WITH UNIT TO LIVERPOOL	<u>31</u>	<u>606</u>
	33	721

The following statistics concerning the Unit are of interest:-

Cont

	<u>KILLED IN ACTION</u>	<u>DIED OF WOUNDS</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>	<u>TOTAL</u>
OFFICERS	20	6	87	113
OTHER RANKS	<u>546</u>	<u>174</u>	<u>2077</u>	<u>2797</u>
	566	180	2164	2910

BATTALION STRENGTH

<u>ON ARRIVAL IN FRANCE</u>	<u>INCREASE BY REINFORCEMENTS OR RETD. CASUALTIES</u>	<u>TOTAL</u>	<u>TOTAL STRENGTH 31.12.18</u>	<u>STRENGTH DECREASE</u>
OFFICERS 33	173	206	39	167
OTHER RANKS 974	3675	4649	1037	3612

Royal L. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.